

Bilingual - (દ્વિભાષીય)

અંગ્રે*Grammar*

Ashish Patel

અંગ્રે*Grammar*

VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM



The Gujarati English Publication

અંગ્રે**Grammar**

Printing Copyright © Reserved by the Author (Ashish Patel)
Publication, Distribution and Promotion rights reserved by the Publisher.

Seventh Edition : May 2017

જાહેર ચેતવણી : આ પુસ્તકનાં લખાણનો એટલે કે તેના કોઈપણ મુદ્દાઓની ગોઠવણી તેમજ રજૂ કરવાની શૈલી વગેરેનો કોઈપણ પ્રકારે પ્રકાશક-લેખકની પૂર્વ મંજૂરી વગર ઉપયોગ કરવો નહીં. તેમ કરનાર સામે કાનુની કાર્યવાહી કરવાની ફરજ પડશે.



અંગ્રે**Grammar**



Dedication

This book is dedicated
with love and affection to my daughter (Mishita)
&
to all those people,
who throughout the long past ages,
have contributed to the joys of life
through their inspiration.



Contents

Page

1

1. Basic Words Meaning (He, She, It, I, We, You, They)	4
2. Am / Is / Are	5
3. Was / Were	5
4. Have / Has / Had	6
5. Do / Does / Did	7
6. WH Questions	10
7. Tenses	18
8. Should	46
9. Would	48
10. Can / Could	50
11. Must	52
12. Has to / Have to / Had to	54
13. May / Might	57
14. If	59
15. Prepositions - (In, Into, With, Without, By, Of, Behind, Under, On, Over, Above, Through, Between, From, For)	61
16. Infinitive	65
17. Active Voice & Passive Voice	67
18. Indefinite Pronouns - (All, Many, Someone, Something, Much, None, Nothing, Each, Any, Anything, Every, Everything)	86
26. To be able to	90
27. To be going to	92
28. Either or	95
29. Neither nor	97
30. Direct - Indirect Speech	98
31. Already/Yet/Still	125
32. A/An/The	127
33. As if	131

Contents

2

Page

34. Causal Verb	132
35. Connectives	140
36. Degrees of Comparison	143
37. Double Comparison	155
38. Reciprocal Pronouns (Each...other / One...another)	157
39. Enough to	158
40. Exclamatory Sentences	160
41. In order that / So that	162
42. As soon as / No sooner..Than / Hardly...when	164
43. Not only...But also / Both...and	170
44. Apostrophe 's / of	171
45. Perfect Modal Auxiliaries	172
46. Relative Pronouns	182
47. So / Therefore	184
48. Same...as / Such...as	186
49. Though / Although / Eventhough / Even if	188
50. Till / Until	190
51. To be used to	191
52. Used to	193
53. Get used to	194
53. With a view to / in order to	195
54. How many / How much	197
55. Question Tags	200
56. Remove or Use "Too...To"	204
57. Reflexive Pronouns	207

Contents

Page

3A

Self Practice

1. Am/is/are	209
2. Have/has/had	209
3. Was/were	210
4. Do/does/did	211
5. WH Question	212
6. How many/How much	212
7. Fill in the blanks (verb-10th)	213
8. Function words part-I	220
9. Function words part-II	224
10. Similar words	236
11. WH Question (New paper style)	240
12. Direct - Indirect (Sentences)	242
13. Direct - Indirect (Conversation)	246
14. Direct - Indirect (Conversation-New paper style)	249
15. Jumbling	253
16. Either...or/Neither...nor	255
17. Apostrophe 's / of	256
18. Prepositions	257
19. If	258
20. Unless	259
21. Exclamatory	260
22. Indefinite Pronouns	261
23. Question Tag	263
24. Modal Auxiliaries	264
25. Who/whom/whose/that/which	265
26. So / therefore	267
27. Though/Although/Eventhough/Evenif	268
28. To be able to	269
29. To be going to	270

Contents

Page

3B

30. Already/Yet/Still	270
31. Use to / To be use to	271
32. Reciprocal pronoun	272
33. Not only.....but also	273
34. Both....and	274
35. Change the degree (8th-9th-10th)	274
36. Active voice / Passive voice	276
37. Modal perfect auxiliaries	279

11th & 12th

38. Fill in the blanks (verbs)	280
39. Complete the sentences Part-I	286
40. Complete the sentences Part-II	289
41. Jumbling	290
42. Direct-Indirect (Conversation)	293
43. Such as / Same as	297
44. Remove to	297
45. In order to / In order that . With a view to	298
46. Hardly.....had / as soon as	299
47. Causal verb	300
48. Change the degree	301
49. Reflexive pronouns.	302

Answer Keys : 304 to 362

Basic Words

I	હું
Me	મને
Myself	મારી જાતે

We	અમે
Us	અમને

He	તે (છોકરો/પુરુષ)
His	તેનું/તેની/તેનો/તેના
Him	તેને (ફક્ત તેને)
Himself	તેની જાતે

They	તેઓ
Their	તેમનો/તેમનું/તેમની/તેમના
Them	તેઓને (ફક્ત તેઓને)
Themselves	તેમની જાતે

She	તે (છોકરી/સ્ત્રી)
Her	તેનું/તેની/તેનો/તેના/તેને
Herself	તેની જાતે

Our	આપણે
Ours	આપણું/અમારું
Ourselves	અમારી જાતે/આપણી જાતે

It	તે (વસ્તુઓ/પ્રાણીઓ)
Its	તેનું/તેની/તેનો/તેના/તેને
Itself	તેની જાતે

You	તું/તમે
yours	તારું/તમારું
Yourself	તારી જાતે/તમારી જાતે

Am / Is / Are

5

Am / Is / Are નો મતલબ 'છે' એવો થાય છે. અલગ અલગ કર્તા સાથે તેનો ઉપયોગ નીચે દર્શાવેલ છે.

<i>I</i>	→	<i>am</i>
<i>He</i>	→	<i>is</i>
<i>She</i>	→	<i>is</i>
<i>It</i>	→	<i>is</i>
<i>We</i>	→	<i>are</i>
<i>You</i>	→	<i>are</i>
<i>They</i>	→	<i>are</i>

Examples :

1. *I am a boy.* (હું છોકરો છું.)
2. *He is Sunil.* (તે સુનિલ છે.)
3. *She is Anita.* (તે અનિતા છે.)
4. *It is a table.* (તે ટેબલ છે.)
5. *We are happy.* (અમે ખુશ છીએ.)
6. *You are a girl.* (તું છોકરી છે.)
7. *They are animals.* (તેઓ પ્રાણીઓ છે.)

Was / Were

Was / Were નો મતલબ 'હતો/હતી/હતું' એવો થાય છે. અલગ અલગ કર્તા સાથે તેનો ઉપયોગ નીચે દર્શાવેલ છે.

<i>I</i>	→	<i>was</i>
<i>He</i>	→	<i>was</i>
<i>She</i>	→	<i>was</i>
<i>It</i>	→	<i>was</i>
<i>We</i>	→	<i>were</i>
<i>You</i>	→	<i>were</i>
<i>They</i>	→	<i>were</i>

Examples :

1. *I was there.* (હું ત્યાં હતો.)
2. *He was a man.* (તે માણસ હતો.)
3. *She was Dhara.* (તે ધારા હતી.)
4. *It was a toy.* (તે રમકડું હતું.)
5. *We were at home.* (અમે ઘરે હતા.)
6. *You were not tall.* (તું ઊંચો ન હતો.)
7. *They were children.* (તેઓ બાળકો હતા.)

Have / Has / Had

Have / Has / Had નો મતલબ ‘પાસે હોવું’ એવો થાય છે. **Have / Has** વર્તમાનમાં અને **Had** ભૂતકાળમાં વપરાય છે. અલગ અલગ કર્તા સાથે તેનો ઉપયોગ નીચે દર્શાવેલ છે.

કર્તા		વર્તમાન	ભૂતકાળ
I	→	Have	Had
He	→	Has	Had
She	→	Has	Had
It	→	Has	Had
We	→	Have	Had
You	→	Have	Had
They	→	Have	Had

Examples :

1. I have a pen. / I had a pen. (મારી પાસે પેન છે. / હતી.)
2. He has a ball. / He had a ball. (તેની પાસે બોલ છે. / હતો.)
3. She has a bat. / She had a bat. (તેની પાસે બેટ છે. / હતું.)
4. It has a tail. / It had a tail. (તેની પૂંછડી છે. / હતી.)
5. We have food. / We had food. (અમારી પાસે ખાવાનું છે. / હતું.)
6. You have a computer. / You had a computer. (તારી પાસે કમ્પ્યુટર છે. / હતું.)
7. They have photos. / They had photos. (તેમની પાસે ફોટો છે. / હતા.)

Do / Does / Did

Do/Does/Did સહાયક ક્રિયાપદો છે.

સાદા વર્તમાનકાળ અને સાદા ભૂતકાળમાં વાક્યોને નકાર અથવા પ્રશ્નાર્થ બનાવવા માટે વપરાય છે.

Do / Does	→	વર્તમાન
Did	→	ભૂતકાળ

અલગ અલગ કર્તા સાથે તેનો ઉપયોગ નીચે દર્શાવેલ છે.

કર્તા		વર્તમાન	ભૂતકાળ
<i>I</i>	→	<i>Do</i>	<i>Did</i>
<i>He</i>	→	<i>Does</i>	<i>Did</i>
<i>She</i>	→	<i>Does</i>	<i>Did</i>
<i>It</i>	→	<i>Does</i>	<i>Did</i>
<i>We</i>	→	<i>Do</i>	<i>Did</i>
<i>You</i>	→	<i>Do</i>	<i>Did</i>
<i>They</i>	→	<i>Do</i>	<i>Did</i>
એકવચન (એક જ કર્તા)	→	<i>Does</i>	<i>Did</i>
બહુવચન (બે અથવા બે થી વધારે કર્તા)	→	<i>Do</i>	<i>Did</i>

ઉપયોગની રીત

પ્રશ્નાર્થ

Do/Does/Did (જે જરૂરી હોય તે) + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

નકાર

કર્તા + **Do/Does/Did** (જે જરૂરી હોય તે) + **not** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ
+ અન્ય શબ્દો

- યાદ રાખો કે જ્યારે વાક્યમાં **Do/Does/Did** નો ઉપયોગ થાય ત્યારે ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ જોઈએ.
- નીચે આપેલ ઉદાહરણોમાં તે સરળતાથી સમજી શકાશે.

———— વર્તમાનકાળના વાક્યો ————

1. *He goes to school everyday.* તે દરરોજ શાળાએ જાય છે.

Does he go to school everyday ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
He does not go to school everyday. (નકાર) → **(goes - go)**

2. *I walk in the garden.* હું બગીચામાં ચાલુ છું.

Do I walk in the garden ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
I do not walk in the garden. (નકાર) → **(walk - walk)**

3. *We like to eat ice cream.* અમને આઈસક્રીમ ખાવો ગમે છે.

Do we like to eat ice cream ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
We do not like to eat ice cream. (નકાર) → **(like - like)**

4. *You read English.* તું અંગ્રેજી વાંચે છે.

Do you read English ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
You do not read English. (નકાર) → **(read - read)**

5. *She listens songs.* તે ગીતો સાંભળે છે.

Does she listen songs ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
She does not listen songs. (નકાર) → **(listen - listen)**

- યાદ રાખો કે જ્યારે વાક્યમાં **I / We / You / They** અથવા બહુવચન કર્તા હોય ત્યારે પ્રશ્નાર્થ અને નકાર વાક્યમાં ક્રિયાપદમાં કોઈ ફેરફાર થતો નથી. જે વાક્ય **No. 2, 3, 4** માં જોઈ શકાય છે. (ફક્ત વર્તમાનકાળ માટે)

1. *I went to garden yesterday.* હું ગઈકાલે બગીચામાં ગયો (હતો.)
Did I go to garden yesterday ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
I did not go to garden yesterday. (નકાર) → (*went - go*)
2. *He loved his children.* તે તેના બાળકોને પ્રેમ કરતો (હતો.)
Did he love his children ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
He did not love his children. (નકાર) → (*loved - love*)
3. *We played cricket last week.* અમે છેલ્લા અઠવાડિયે ક્રિકેટ રમ્યા (હતા.)
Did we play cricket last week ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
We did not play cricket last week. (નકાર) → (*played - play*)
4. *You came late.* તું મોડો આવ્યો (હતો.)
Did you come late ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
You did not come late. (નકાર) → (*came - come*)
5. *They wanted to see film.* તેઓને ફિલ્મ જોઈ (હતી.)
Did they want to see film ? (પ્રશ્નાર્થ) ←
They did not want to see film. (નકાર) → (*wanted - want*)

WH Questions

WH Questions નો ઉપયોગ પ્રશ્નો પૂછવા માટે થાય છે. નીચે દરેક **WH Questions** નો મતલબ આપેલ છે.

Who ?	→	કોણ ?
When ?	→	ક્યારે ?
Where ?	→	ક્યાં ?
What ?	→	શું ?
Which ?	→	કયો/કઈ/કયુ/કયાં ?
Why ?	→	શા માટે ?
Whom ?	→	કોને ?
Whose ?	→	કોનું/કોના/કોની/કોનો ?
How ?	→	કેવી રીતે/કઈ રીતે/કેમનું ?

ઉપયોગની રીત

સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ

- **Who + s કે es** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો.
- **What/When/Where/Which/Why/Whom + Do/Does** + કર્તા + **To** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ.

ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ

- **Who + am/is/are + ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો.
- **What/When/Where/Why/How + am/is/are** + કર્તા + **ing** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ.

પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ

- **Who + has + past participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત) + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો.
- **What/When/Where/Why/How + have/has + કર્તા + past participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત) + અન્ય શબ્દો .

સાદો ભૂતકાળ

- **Who + d કે ed** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો.
- **What/When/Where/Which/Why/Whom + Did + કર્તા + To** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ.

ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ

- **Who + was/were + ing**વાળું ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો.
- **What/When/Where/Why/How + was/were + કર્તા + ing**વાળું ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો.

પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ

- **Who + had + past participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત) + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો.
- **What/When/Where/Why/How + had + કર્તા + past participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત) + અન્ય શબ્દો .

સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ

- **Who + will +** ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો.
- **What/When/Where/Why/How + will/shall + કર્તા +** ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો.

Examples :

13

સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ

1. *Sunil saves trees.*

Who saves trees ? (વૃક્ષો કોણ બચાવે છે ?) (**s, es** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

2. *I like ice cream.*

What do you like ? (તમને શું ગમે છે ?) (**do** + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ)

3. *She learns in evening.*

When does she learn ? (તે ક્યારે ભણે છે ?) (**does** + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ)

4. *He lives in Ahmedabad.*

Where does he live ? (તે ક્યાં રહે છે ?) (**does** + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ)

5. *They read books.*

Why do they read books ? (તેઓ પુસ્તકો કેમ વાંચે છે ?)
(**do** + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ)

ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ

1. *Shweta is reading a book.*

Who is reading a book ? (પુસ્તક કોણ વાંચી રહ્યું છે ?)
(**am + ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

2. *He is reading a novel.*

What is he doing ? (તે શું કરી રહ્યો છે ?)
(**is** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

3. *You are working in Ahmedabad.*

Where are you working ? (તમે ક્યાં કામ કરી રહ્યા છો ?)
(**Are** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

4. *You are asking to know the fact.* (સત્ય)

Why are you asking ? (તું કેમ પૂછી રહ્યો છે ?)

(**Are** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

5. *Your friends are coming soon.*

When are your friends coming ? (તમારા મિત્રો ક્યારે આવી રહ્યા છે ?)

(**Are** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

6. *They are reading loudly.* (મોટેથી)

How are they reading ? (તેઓ કઈ રીતે વાંચી રહ્યા છે ?)

(**Are** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ

1. *Suresh has come today.*

Who has come today ? (આજે કોણ આવ્યું છે ?)

(**Has** + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

2. *You have done bad work.*

What have you done ? (તે શું કર્યું છે ?)

(**Have** + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

3. *She has gone to Baroda.*

Where has she gone ? (તે ક્યાં ગઈ છે ?)

(**Has** + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

4. *Ramesh has put my book to read.*

Why has Ramesh put my book ? (રમેશે મારું પુસ્તક કેમ મૂક્યું છે ?)

(**Has** + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

5. *They have played wonderfully today.*

How have they played today ? (તેઓ આજે કેવી રીતે રમ્યા છે ?)

(**Have** + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

1. **Manish called me yesterday.****Who called you yesterday ?** (તમને કાલે કોણે બોલાવ્યા હતા ?)

(called - d, ed વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

2. **You made project last week.****What did you do last week ?** (તમે છેલ્લા અઠવાડિયે શું કર્યું હતું. ?)

(did + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ do)

3. **They came back from Ahmedabad yesterday.****When did they come back from Ahmedabad ?**

તેઓ અમદાવાદથી ક્યારે પાછા આવ્યા હતા ? (did + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ come)

4. **We played cricket on the ground.****Where did we play ?** અમે ક્યાં રમ્યા હતા ?

(did + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ Play)

5. **She failed in exam because she was ill.****Why did she fail in exam ?** તે પરીક્ષામાં કેમ નાપાસ થઈ હતી ?

(did + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ Fail)

6. **Anil went there by bus.****How did Anil go there ?** અનિલ ત્યાં કઈ રીતે ગયો હતો ?

(did + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ Go)

1. **Niral was coming at that time.****Who was coming at that time ?** (તે સમયે કોણ આવી રહ્યું હતું ?)

(was + ing વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

2. *You were reading magazine.*

What were you reading ? (તું શું વાંચી રહ્યો હતો ?)
(**were** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

3. *Your friend was going to Bombay.*

Where was your friend going ? (તારો મિત્ર ક્યાં જઈ રહ્યો હતો ?)
(**was** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

4. *Neha was crying because she wanted a toy.*

Why was Neha crying ? (નેહા કેમ રડતી હતી ?)
(**was** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

5. *Sunil was driving in the evening.*

When was Sunil driving ? (સુનિલ ક્યારે ડ્રાઈવ કરી રહ્યો હતો ?)
(**was** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

6. *They were flying the kites wonderfully.*

How were they flying the kites ? (તેઓ પતંગ કેવી રીતે ઉડાડી રહ્યા હતા ?)
(**were** + કર્તા + **ing** વાળું ક્રિયાપદ)

પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ

1. *Students had completed homework.*

Who had completed homework ? (ઘરકામ કોણે પૂરું કરી લીધું હતું ?)
(**Had** + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

2. *Sunil had got good marks.*

What had Sunil got ? (સુનિલે શું મળ્યું હતું ?)
(**Had** + કર્તા + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

3. *Anita had gone to garden.*

Where had Anita gone ? (અનિતા ક્યાં ગઈ હતી ?)
(**Had** + કર્તા + **Past Participle** (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

4. *We had got bad result because we did not work hard.*

Why had we got bad result ? (આપણે ખરાબ પરિણામ કેમ મળવ્યું હતું ?)

(*Had* + કર્તા + *Past Participle* (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

5. *They had done it beautifully.*

How had they done it ? (તેમણે તે કેવી રીતે કર્યું હતું ?)

(*Had* + કર્તા + *Past Participle* (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

6. *Amit had seen that cap in morning.*

When had Amit seen that cap ? (અમિતે તે ટોપી ક્યારે જોઈ હતી ?)

(*Had* + કર્તા + *Past Participle* (ક્રિયાપદનું પૂર્ણરૂપ/ભૂતકૃદંત))

સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ

1. *Rahul will come tomorrow.*

Who will come tomorrow ? (આવતીકાલે કોણ આવશે ?)

(*will* + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ)

2. *We shall collect more books to finish this work.*

What shall we collect to finish this work ?

(આપણે આ કામ પૂરું કરવા શું ભેગું કરવું પડશે ?) (*shall* + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ)

3. *They will become honest some day.*

When will they become honest ? (તેઓ ક્યારે પ્રમાણિક બનશે ?)

(*will* + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ)

4. *Kishan will go to school.*

Where will Kishan go ? (કિશન ક્યાં જશે ?)

(*will* + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ)

5. *You will write this essay because it is easy.*

Why will you write this essay ? (તમે આ નિબંધ કેમ લખશો ?)

(*will* + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ)

6. *I shall complete this form by giving details.*

How shall I complete this form ? (હું આ ફોર્મ કેવી રીતે પૂરું કરીશ ?)

(*will* + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ)

Simple Present Tense / સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- રોજની ટેવ બતાવવા અથવા રોજ થતી ક્રિયાઓ માટે.
- સનાતન સત્ય અને વિજ્ઞાનના નિયમો દર્શાવવા.
- કહેવતો દર્શાવવા માટે.

સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

Always, Daily, Everyday, Each week, Each month

Each night, Sometimes, Often.

સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ કઈ રીતે બને

I / We / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) +
ક્રિયાપદનું *To* વિનાનું રૂપ (*play / go*) + અન્ય શબ્દો

OR

He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + ક્રિયાપદનું *s / es* વાળું રૂપ
(*plays / goes*) + અન્ય શબ્દો

OR

I / We / You / They / He / She / It + Am / Is / Are + અન્ય શબ્દો

મતલબ કે જો તમારા વાક્ય નો કર્તા **he/she/it** હોય તો ક્રિયાપદ **s** કે **es** લગાવો
પણ જો કર્તા **he/she/it** ના હોય તો ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ મૂકો.

→ ઘણીવાર વાક્યમાં ક્રિયાપદની જરૂર પડતી નથી. જેમ કે,

- **I am a boy.**
- **She is clever.**
- **He is a tall person.**
- **We are happy.**
- **They are fat.**

ઉપરના વાક્યોમાં કોઈ ક્રિયાપદ નથી જેવું કે ખાવું, પીવું, જોવું, ચાલવું વગેરે તેથી
કર્તા પછી સીધો **Am/Is/Are** નો ઉપયોગ કરવામાં આવ્યો છે.

→ યાદ રાખો કે :

He → મતલબ કોઈ છોકરાનું કે પુરૂષનું નામ (**Suresh**)

She → મતલબ કોઈ છોકરી કે સ્ત્રીનું નામ (**Neha**)

It → મતલબ કે કોઈ નિર્જીવ વસ્તુ અથવા પ્રાણીનું નામ.
(**a table / a dog**)

Examples :

1. Sunil teaches us English.

વાક્યનો કર્તા **Sunil** છે એટલે ક્રિયાપદનું **es** વાળું રૂપ (**Teaches**)

2. Ankit knows four languages.

વાક્યનો કર્તા **Ankit** છે એટલે ક્રિયાપદનું **s** વાળું રૂપ (**Knows**)

3. The sun rises in the east.

વાક્યનો કર્તા **The sun** છે એટલે ક્રિયાપદનું **s** વાળું રૂપ (**rises**)

4. We drink milk everyday.

વાક્યનો કર્તા **We** છે એટલે ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**drink**)

5. You always come late.

વાક્યનો કર્તા **You** છે એટલે ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**come**)

6. She is a tall girl.

આ વાક્યમાં કર્તા પછી કોઈ ક્રિયાપદ નથી એટલે **is** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

7. Mamta is beautiful.

આ વાક્યમાં કર્તા પછી કોઈ ક્રિયાપદ નથી એટલે **is** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

8. We are healthy.

આ વાક્યમાં કર્તા પછી કોઈ ક્રિયાપદ નથી એટલે **are** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

9. This lion eats vegetable.

વાક્યનો કર્તા **This lion** છે એટલે ક્રિયાપદનું **s** વાળું રૂપ (**eats**)

10. Raju and Sanju sing film songs.

વાક્યમાં બે કર્તા (**Raju and Sanju**) છે એટલે ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**sing**)

Present Continuous Tense/ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- હાલ (સમયમાં) ચાલી રહેલી ક્રિયાઓ માટે.
- નજીકના ભવિષ્યમાં થનાર ક્રિયાઓ માટે (જે નક્કી જ હોય).
- જ્યારે આપણે ગુજરાતીમાં વાક્યના અંતે રહો છે, રહી છે, રહ્યું છે અથવા રહ્યા છે, એવું બોલીએ ત્યારે આ કાળનો ઉપયોગ થાય.

ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

Now, Listen, See, Watch, Look, Hear, Run, At present.

ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ કઈ રીતે બને ?

I / We / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) + are +
ક્રિયાપદનું **ing** વાળુ રૂપ (**playing / going**) + અન્ય શબ્દો.

OR

He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + is +
ક્રિયાપદનું **ing** વાળુ રૂપ (**playing / going**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

I	am	ing ક્રિયાપદ (reading)
He	is	ing ક્રિયાપદ (eating)
She	is	ing ક્રિયાપદ (watching)
It	is	ing ક્રિયાપદ (going)
We	are	ing ક્રિયાપદ (riding)
You	are	ing ક્રિયાપદ (driving)
They	are	ing ક્રિયાપદ (singing)
એકવચન કર્તા	is	ing ક્રિયાપદ (working)
બહુવચન કર્તા	are	ing ક્રિયાપદ (coming)

Examples :

- 1. He is teaching English now.** (તે અત્યારે અંગ્રેજી ભણાવી રહ્યો છે.)
કર્તા **He** છે એટલે **is** અને **teach + ing**.
- 2. Run, the bus is coming.** (દોડો, બસ આવી રહી છે.)
કર્તા **the bus** છે એટલે **is** અને **come + ing**. (**ing** લગાવો એટલે **come** માંથી **e** નીકળી જાય.)

3. **See, birds are flying.** (જુઓ, પક્ષીઓ ઉડી રહ્યા છે.)

કર્તા **birds** છે એટલે **are** અને **fly + ing**.

4. **I am going to school.** (હું શાળાએ જઈ રહ્યો છું.)

કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **am** અને **go + ing**.

5. **They are playing cricket.** (તેઓ ક્રિકેટ રમી રહ્યા છે.)

કર્તા **They** છે એટલે **are** અને **play + ing**.

6. **We are reading books.** (અમે પુસ્તકો વાંચી રહ્યા છીએ.)

કર્તા **We** છે એટલે **are** અને **read + ing**.

7. **We are visiting Baroda next week.**

(અમે આવતા અઠવાડિયે બરોડાની મુલાકાત લઈ રહ્યા છીએ.)

કર્તા **We** છે એટલે **are** અને **visit + ing**.

(આ પરિસ્થિતીમાં બરોડા જવાનું નક્કી છે. એટલે ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ વાપરી શકાય.)

8. **Anita and Ankit are marrying next month.**

(અનિતા અને અંકિત આવતા મહિને લગ્ન કરી રહ્યા છે.)

કર્તા **Anita and Ankit** છે (બહુવચન) એટલે **are** અને **marry + ing**.

(આ પરિસ્થિતીમાં અનિતા અને અંકિતના લગ્ન નક્કી છે. એટલે ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ વાપરી શકાય.)

9. **I am laughing now.** (હું અત્યારે હસી રહ્યો છું.)

કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **am** અને **laugh + ing**.

10. **Some girls are washing clothes.** (કેટલીક છોકરીઓ કપડાં ધોઈ રહી છે.)

કર્તા **Some girls** છે એટલે **are** અને **wash + ing**.

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- થોડા સમય પહેલા પૂરી થઈ ગયેલી ક્રિયાઓ માટે.
 - મે હમણાં જ વાંચી લીધું છે.
 - તેણે ચા પી લીધી છે.
- અમુક પ્રશ્નો પૂછવા જેવા કે,
 - શું તમે તે ફિલ્મ જોઈ ?
 - તમે આ સરનામું જોયું છે ?
 - તમે તાજમહલ જોયો છે ?
- યાદ રાખો કે પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળમાં "છે" નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. ઉપરના તમામ વાક્યોમાં તે જોઈ શકાય છે. જો વાક્યમાં હતો, હતી, હતું કે હતા એવું વપરાય તો તે ભૂતકાળ બની જાય છે.

પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ સૂચવતાં શબ્દો

Yet, Ever, Never, Just, Already.

- **Yet** (હજુ સુધી) નકાર અને પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્યોમાં વપરાય છે. જેમ કે,
 - ***I have not received invitation yet.***
 - ***My father has not returned from the office yet.***
- **Ever** નો ઉપયોગ પ્રશ્નો પૂછવા માટે થાય છે. જેમ કે,
 - ***Have you ever visited the Taj Mahal ?***
 - ***Has she ever tasted Gujarati dish ?***

→ **Never** નો ઉપયોગ જવાબ આપવા માટે થાય છે. જેમ કે,

- **I have never visited the Taj Mahal.**
- **She has never tasted Gujarati dish.**

પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ કઈ રીતે બને.

I / We / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) + Have
+ ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played / gone**) + અન્ય શબ્દો.

OR

He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + has
+ ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played / gone**) + અન્ય શબ્દો.

I	have	ભૂતકૃદંત (read)
He	has	ભૂતકૃદંત (eaten)
She	has	ભૂતકૃદંત (watched)
It	has	ભૂતકૃદંત (done)
We	have	ભૂતકૃદંત (gone)
You	have	ભૂતકૃદંત (driven)
They	have	ભૂતકૃદંત (sung)
એકવચન કર્તા	has	ભૂતકૃદંત (worked)
બહુવચન કર્તા	have	ભૂતકૃદંત (come)

Examples :

1. **The postman has brought letters for you.** (ટપાલી તમારા માટે પત્રો લાવ્યો છે.)
કર્તા **The postman** છે એટલે **has** અને **bring** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **brought**.

2. ***I have just finished my homework.*** (મે હમણાં જ મારું ઘરકામ પુરું કર્યું છે.)
કર્તા ***I*** છે એટલે ***have*** અને ***finish*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***finished***.
3. ***She has not bought apples yet.*** (તેણે હજુ સફરજન ખરીદ્યા નથી.)
કર્તા ***She*** છે એટલે ***has*** અને ***buy*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***bought***.
4. ***He has already read three magazines.*** (તેણે ત્રણ સામાયિકો વાંચી લીધા છે.)
કર્તા ***he*** છે એટલે ***has*** અને ***read*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***read***.
5. ***They have played very well.*** (તેઓ સારું રમ્યા છે.)
કર્તા ***They*** છે એટલે ***have*** અને ***play*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***played***.
6. ***We have seen the Taj Mahal.*** (અમે તાજ મહલ જોયો છે.)
કર્તા ***We*** છે એટલે ***have*** અને ***see*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***seen***.
7. ***You have brought books with you.*** (તમે તમારી સાથે ચોપડીઓ લાવ્યા છો.)
કર્તા ***You*** છે એટલે ***have*** અને ***bring*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***brought***.
8. ***I have not completed work yet.*** (મેં મારું કામ હજુ પૂરું કર્યું નથી.)
કર્તા ***I*** છે એટલે ***have*** અને ***complete*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***completed***.
9. ***Hardik has gone to the market.*** (હાર્દિક બજાર ગયો છે.)
કર્તા ***Hardik*** છે એટલે ***has*** અને ***go*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***gone***.
10. ***Dhara has told stories.*** (ધારાએ વાર્તાઓ કહી છે.)
કર્તા ***Dhara*** છે એટલે ***has*** અને ***tell*** નું ભૂતકૃદંત ***told***.

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

ચાલુ પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ

જ્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- જે ક્રિયાઓ ભૂતકાળમાં શરૂ થઈ અને હજુ સુધી પૂરી થઈ નથી તેવી ક્રિયાઓ માટે. જેમ કે,
 - સુનિલ છેલ્લા ચાર વર્ષથી ભણી રહ્યો છે. (એટલે કે સુનિલે ચાર વર્ષ પહેલા ભણવાનું શરૂ કર્યું હતું અને હજુ સુધી પુરું કર્યું નથી.)
 - અનિતા બે કલાકથી વાંચી રહી છે. (એટલે કે અનિતાએ બે કલાક પહેલા વાંચવાનું શરૂ કર્યું અને હજી પણ વાંચી રહી છે.)
- યાદ રાખો કે થતું હતું અને થાય છે અથવા હતું અને છે, એમ દર્શાવવું હોય તો આ કાળનો ઉપયોગ કરવો પડે છે.
- આ કાળમાં સમય બતાવવો પડે છે જેના માટે **Since, For** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

Since

જ્યારે તમે સમયને લઈ ચોક્કસ હોવ ત્યારે નો ઉપયોગ થાય. એટલે કે ચોક્કસ સમય, દિવસ, મહિનો, વર્ષ અને તારીખ જેમ કે,

Since 1998, since last night, since 1st August, since December, since last Monday.

For

જ્યારે તમે સમયને લઈ ચોક્કસ ના હોવ ત્યારે **For** નો ઉપયોગ થાય મતલબ કે આશરે કહેવું હોય. જેમ કે,

For the last one night, for the last two months, for the last one month, for the last three days.

**I / We / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) + have + been
+ ing ક્રિયાપદ (playing / going) + Since / For + અન્ય શબ્દો.**

OR

**He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + has + been
+ ing ક્રિયાપદ (playing / going) + Since / For + અન્ય શબ્દો.**

OR

**I / We / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) /
He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + has/have + been
+ Since / For + અન્ય શબ્દો.**

→ ઘણીવાર આ કાળમાં ક્રિયાપદની જરૂર પડતી નથી તેથી **ing** ક્રિયાપદ મૂકવું પડતું નથી. જેમ કે,

- **He has been ill since last Sunday.** (તે છેલ્લા રવિવારથી માંદો છે.)
- **They have been here for the last one hour.**
(તેઓ અહીયા છેલ્લા એક કલાકથી (બેઠા) છે.)
- **They have been famous since 2010.**
(તેઓ ૨૦૧૦ થી પ્રખ્યાત છે.)

ઉપરના વાક્યોમાં ક્રિયાપદની જરૂર નથી એટલે **ing** ક્રિયાપદ પણ મૂક્યું નથી.

I	have	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (reading)
He	has	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (eating)
She	has	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (watching)
It	has	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (going)
We	have	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (riding)
You	have	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (driving)
They	have	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (singing)
એકવચન કર્તા	has	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (working)
બહુવચન કર્તા	have	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (coming)

Examples :

1. I have been living in Ahmedabad since 1998.

(હું અમદાવાદમાં ૧૯૯૮ થી રહું છું.)

કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **have + been** અને **live** નું **ing** ક્રિયાપદ **living**.

2. She has been reading for the last two weeks.

(તે છેલ્લા બે અઠવાડિયાથી વાંચી રહી છે.)

કર્તા **She** છે એટલે **has + been** અને **read** નું **ing** ક્રિયાપદ **reading**.

3. He has been going since last Monday.

(તે છેલ્લા સોમવારથી જઈ રહ્યો છે.)

કર્તા **he** છે એટલે **has + been** અને **go** નું **ing** ક્રિયાપદ **going**.

4. We have been seeing this lion for the last one hour.

(અમે છેલ્લા એક કલાકથી આ સિંહને જોઈ રહ્યા છીએ.)

કર્તા **We** છે એટલે **have + been** અને **see** નું **ing** ક્રિયાપદ **seeing**.

5. *They have been buying apples since 2010.*

(તેઓ ૨૦૧૦ થી સફરજન ખરીદી રહ્યા છે.)

કર્તા *They* છે એટલે **have + been** અને *buy* નું **ing** ક્રિયાપદ **buying**.

Simple Past Tense / સાદો ભૂતકાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- થઈ ગયેલી, બની ગયેલી અથવા વીતી ગયેલી ક્રિયાઓ માટે.
- ભૂતકાળની આદત દર્શાવવા માટે.
- જ્યારે વાક્યમાં હતો, હતી, હતું અથવા હતા એવું કહેવું હોય તો આ કાળનો ઉપયોગ થાય.

સાદો ભૂતકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

Yesterday, last month / day / night / week, Two months ago, three days ago.

સાદો ભૂતકાળ કઈ રીતે બને ?

I / We / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) +
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકાળનું રૂપ (**played / went**) + અન્ય શબ્દો.

OR

He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) +
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકાળનું રૂપ (**played / went**) + અન્ય શબ્દો.

OR

I / We / You / They / He / She / It + **was/were** + અન્ય શબ્દો.

→ ઘણીવાર આ કાળમાં ક્રિયાપદની જરૂર પડતી નથી જેમ કે,

- *I was a boy.*
- *She was clever.*
- *He was a tall person.*
- *We were happy.*
- *They were fat.*

ઉપરના વાક્યોમાં કોઈ ક્રિયાપદ નથી જેવું કે ખાવું/પીવું/જોવું/ચાલવું વગેરે તેથી કર્તા પછી સીધો **was/were** નો ઉપયોગ કરવામાં આવે છે.

Examples :

1. They returned very late last night.

(તેઓ ગઈ રાત્રે ખૂબ મોડા આવ્યા હતા.)
કર્તા (**they**) + **return** નું ભૂતકાળ **returned**.

2. I saw lion two months ago.

(મેં બે મહિના પહેલાં સિંહ જોયો હતો.)
કર્તા (**I**) + **see** નું ભૂતકાળ **saw**.

3. He walked three kilometers yesterday.

(તે ગઈકાલે ત્રણ કિલોમીટર ચાલ્યો હતો.)
કર્તા (**He**) + **walk** નું ભૂતકાળ **walked**.

4. She wanted to buy computer last month.

(તેણે ગયા મહિને કોમ્પ્યુટર ખરીદવું હતું.)
કર્તા (**She**) + **want** નું ભૂતકાળ **wanted**.

5. We played cricket yesterday.

(અમે ગઈકાલે ક્રિકેટ રમ્યા હતા.)
કર્તા (**We**) + **play** નું ભૂતકાળ **played**.

6. Last week, I posted this letter.

(મેં આ પત્ર ગયા અઠવાડિયે પોસ્ટ કર્યો હતો.)
કર્તા (I) + **post** નું ભૂતકાળ **posted**.

7. She was beautiful in her childhood.

(તે બાળપણમાં સુંદર હતી)
વાક્યમાં ક્રિયાપદ નથી એટલે **was** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

8. They were clever students.

(તેઓ હોશિયાર વિદ્યાર્થીઓ હતા.)
વાક્યમાં ક્રિયાપદ નથી એટલે **were** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

9. He was strong and honest.

(તે મજબૂત અને પ્રામાણિક હતો.)
વાક્યમાં ક્રિયાપદ નથી એટલે **was** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

10. You drank 2 liter milk yesterday.

(તે ગઈકાલે ૨ લિટર દૂધ પીધું હતું.)
કર્તા (You) + **drink** નું ભૂતકાળ **drank**.

Past Continuous Tense / ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- ભૂતકાળમાં કોઈ ક્રિયા કોઈ ચોક્કસ સમયે ચાલુ હતી તે દર્શાવવા માટે.
- ભૂતકાળમાં કોઈ ક્રિયા ચાલુ હતી ત્યારે બીજી ક્રિયા બની તે દર્શાવવા માટે.

ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

Yesterday evening, Yesterday noon, Yesterday 3 pm,
ભૂતકાળ દર્શાવતો શબ્દ + ચોક્કસ સમય.

ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ કઈ રીતે બને ?

We / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) + **were** +
ક્રિયાપદનું **ing** વાળુ રૂપ (**playing / going**) + અન્ય શબ્દો.

OR

I / He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + **was** +
ક્રિયાપદનું **ing** વાળુ રૂપ (**playing / going**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

I	was	ing ક્રિયાપદ (reading)
He	was	ing ક્રિયાપદ (eating)
She	was	ing ક્રિયાપદ (watching)
It	was	ing ક્રિયાપદ (going)
We	were	ing ક્રિયાપદ (riding)
You	were	ing ક્રિયાપદ (driving)
They	were	ing ક્રિયાપદ (singing)
એકવચન કર્તા	was	ing ક્રિયાપદ (working)
બહુવચન કર્તા	were	ing ક્રિયાપદ (coming)

→ આ કાળના વાક્યમાં **When / While** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

→ **When** સાથે સાદા ભૂતકાળનું વાક્ય હોય અને પછી ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ.

- **When guests arrived, we were singing songs.**
- **When I came, she was going.**

→ **While** સાથે ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ વપરાય છે અને પછી સાદો ભૂતકાળ.

- **While I was driving, I saw Amit.**
- **While we were taking dinner, door bell rang.**

Examples :

1. We were going to cinema yesterday at 12 pm.

(અમે ગઈકાલે ૧૨ વાગે સિનેમા જઈ રહ્યા હતા.)

કર્તા **We** છે એટલે **were** અને **go + ing**.

2. He was driving yesterday evening.

(તે ગઈ સાંજે ડ્રાઈવ કરી રહ્યો હતો.)

કર્તા **He** છે એટલે **was** અને **drive + ing**.

3. She was crying last night at 8 pm.

(તે ગઈ રાત્રે ૮ વાગે રડી રહી હતી.)

કર્તા **She** છે એટલે **was** અને **cry + ing**.

4. The tiger was running very fast.

(વાઘ ખૂબ ઝડપથી દોડી રહ્યો હતો.)

કર્તા **The tiger** છે એટલે **was** અને **run + ing**.

5. They were talking when the postman came.

(જ્યારે ટપાલી આવ્યો ત્યારે તેઓ વાતો કરી રહ્યા હતા.)

કર્તા **They** છે એટલે **were** અને **talk + ing**. (**when** સાથે સાદો ભૂતકાળ.)

6. Julie was waiting when I saw her.

(જ્યારે મેં જુલીને જોઈ ત્યારે તે રાહ જોતી હતી.)

કર્તા **Julie** છે એટલે **was** અને **wait + ing**. (**when** સાથે સાદો ભૂતકાળ.)

7. I met with an accident while I was going to school.

(જ્યારે હું શાળાએ જઈ રહ્યો હતો ત્યારે મારો અકસ્માત થયો.)

કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **was** અને **go + ing**. (સાદો ભૂતકાળ + **while**.)

8. Sunita was dancing in the party.

(સુનિતા પાર્ટીમાં નાચી રહી હતી.)

કર્તા **Sunita** છે એટલે **was** અને **dance + ing**.

9. They were flying the kites yesterday night.

(તેઓ ગઈ રાત્રે પતંગો ઉડાડી રહ્યા હતા.)

કર્તા **They** છે એટલે **were** અને **fly + ing**.

10. Anita and Anil were reading magazines last night at 12 pm.

(અનિતા અને અનિલ ગઈકાલે રાત્રે ૧૨ વાગ્યે સામયિકો વાંચી રહ્યા હતા.)

કર્તા **Anita and Anil** (બહુવચન) છે એટલે **were** અને **read + ing**.

Past Perfect Tense / પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

→ ભૂતકાળમાં આગળ પાછળ બનેલી અથવા આગળ પાછળ પૂરી થયેલી ક્રિયાઓ દર્શાવવા માટે.

→ જે ક્રિયા પહેલા પૂરી થઈ હોય તેની સાથે પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ અને જે ક્રિયા પછી પૂરી થઈ હોય તેના માટે સાદો ભૂતકાળ.

પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

ભૂતકાળ દર્શાવતો શબ્દ + **after or before**

પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ કઈ રીતે બને ?

I / We / You / They / He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) /
બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) + **had** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત
(**played / gone**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

I	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (read)
He	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (eaten)
She	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (watched)
It	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (done)
We	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (gone)
You	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (driven)
They	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (sung)
એકવચન કર્તા	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (worked)
બહુવચન કર્તા	had	ભૂતકૃદંત (come)

→ ભૂતકાળમાં થયેલી ક્રિયાઓનો ક્રમ દર્શાવવા **When/Before/After** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

- **Before** (પહેલા) - બીજી બનેલી ક્રિયા સાથે મુકાય.
- **After** (પછી) - પ્રથમ બનેલી ક્રિયા સાથે મુકાય.
- **When** (જ્યારે) - બીજી બનેલી ક્રિયા સાથે મુકાય.

Examples :

1. **She had gone before I reached there.**

(હું પહોંચ્યો તે પહેલા તે જતી રહી હતી.)

કર્તા **She** + **had** અને **go** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **gone**.

2. **Anil had prepared lunch before we came to home.**
(અમે ઘરે પહોંચ્યા તે પહેલા અનિલે જમવાનું બનાવી લીધું હતું.)
કર્તા **Anil + had** અને **prepare** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **prepared**.
3. **When we reached the station, bus had come.**
(અમે સ્ટેશન પહોંચ્યા તે પહેલા બસ આવી ગઈ હતી.)
કર્તા **We + had** અને **reach** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **reached**.
4. **They had started dinner, before Sunita came.**
(સુનિતા આવી તે પહેલા તેમણે જમવાનું શરૂ કરી દીધું હતું.)
કર્તા **They + had** અને **start** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **started**.
5. **When he arrived, students had sung prayer.**
(તે આવ્યો એ પહેલાં વિદ્યાર્થીઓએ પ્રાર્થના ગાઈ લીધી હતી.)
કર્તા **Students + had** અને **sing** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **sung**.
6. **We reached home after the Sun had set.**
(અમે સૂર્યાસ્ત પછી ઘરે પહોંચ્યા.)
કર્તા **Sun + had** અને **set** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **set**.
7. **When the bell rang, we had entered the classroom.**
(જ્યારે બેલ વાગ્યો ત્યારે અમે વર્ગખંડમાં પ્રવેશી ગયા હતા.)
કર્તા **We + had** અને **enter** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **entered**.
8. **The servant went home after he had finished the work.**
(નોકરે કામ પૂરું કર્યું પછી તે ઘરે ગયો.)
કર્તા **The servant + had** અને **finish** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **finished**.
9. **When I reached the bank, the manager had gone.**
(જ્યારે હું બેંક ગયો ત્યારે મેનેજર જતાં રહ્યા હતાં.)
કર્તા **Manager + had** અને **go** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **gone**.
10. **Before he came to me, I had posted the letter.**
(તે આવ્યો એ પહેલા મેં પત્ર પોસ્ટ કરી દીધો હતો.)
કર્તા **I + had** અને **post** નું ભૂતકૃદંત **reached**.

Past Perfect Continuous Tense / ચાલુ પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- ભૂતકાળમાં કોઈ એક ક્રિયા થાય એ પહેલાં બીજી કોઈ ક્રિયા ચાલુ હતી તે દર્શાવવા એટલે કે કોઈ ક્રિયા ભૂતકાળમાં થઈ અને અમુક સમય સુધી ચાલી.
- ભૂતકાળની કોઈ ક્રિયાનું કારણ દર્શાવવા.
- યાદ રાખો કે સમયનો ઉલ્લેખ ના હોય તો તે ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ બની જાય કારણ કે સમય વિના નક્કી ના કરી શકાય કે ક્રિયા ભૂતકાળમાં ક્યારે શરૂ થઈ અને અમુક સમય સુધી ચાલી.

ચાલુ પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

ભૂતકાળ દર્શાવતો શબ્દ + **after or before, when**

ચાલુ પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ કઈ રીતે બને

I / We / You / They / He / She / It / એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) + Had + Been + ing ક્રિયાપદ (playing / going) + અન્ય શબ્દો

I	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (reading)
He	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (eating)
She	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (watching)
It	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (doing)
We	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (going)
You	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (driving)
They	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (singing)
એકવચન કર્તા	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (working)
બહુવચન કર્તા	had	been	ing ક્રિયાપદ (coming)

1. The boys had been quarreling for half an hour when we arrived home.

(અમે ઘરે પહોંચ્યા ત્યારે બાળકો અડધો કલાકથી ઝઘડી રહ્યા હતા.)

→ કર્તા **the boys + had + been + quarreling.** (*quarrel* નું *ing-quarreling*)

→ ઘરે પહોંચવાની ક્રિયા વખતે બાળકોની ઝઘડવાની ક્રિયા ચાલુ હતી.

2. The road was wet because it had been raining.

(રસ્તો ભીનો હતો કારણ કે વરસાદ પડી રહ્યો હતો.)

→ કર્તા **it + had + been + raining.** (*rain* નું *ing-raining*)

→ આ વાક્યમાં ભૂતકાળમાં રસ્તો ભીનો હોવાનું કારણ આપેલું છે જે વરસાદ પડવું છે તેથી **had been raining.**

3. We had been trying to open the door five minutes when Anita found her key.

(જ્યારે અનિતાને તેની ચાવી મળી ત્યારે અમે પાંચ મિનિટથી દરવાજો ખોલવાનો પ્રયત્ન કરી રહ્યા હતા.)

→ કર્તા **We + had + been + trying.** (*try* નું *ing-trying*)

→ જ્યારે અનિતાને ચાવી મળી ત્યારે દરવાજો ખોલવા પ્રયત્ન કરવાની ક્રિયા ચાલુ હતી.

4. They had been buying fruits for fifteen minutes when Sunita came.

(જ્યારે સુનિતા આવી ત્યારે તેઓ પંદર મિનિટથી ફળો ખરીદી રહ્યા હતા.)

→ કર્તા **They + had + been + buying.** (*buy* નું *ing-buying*)

→ સુનિતા આવવાની ક્રિયા વખતે ફળો ખરીદવાની ક્રિયા ચાલુ હતી.

Simple Future Tense / સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

→ જે ક્રિયાઓ ભવિષ્યમાં બનવાની છે તે ક્રિયાઓ દર્શાવવા માટે.
(હવે પછી બનવાની ક્રિયાઓ.)

સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

**Tomorrow, Next day / week / month / year, shortly,
in a few minutes,** ભવિષ્યની કોઈ તારીખ **(01-01-2050)**

સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ કઈ રીતે બને ?

I / We + Shall + ક્રિયાપદનું to વિનાનું રૂપ (play / go) + અન્ય શબ્દો

OR

**He / She / It / You / They / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) / એકવચન કર્તા
(એક જ કર્તા) + will + ક્રિયાપદનું to વિનાનું રૂપ (play / go) + અન્ય શબ્દો**

I	shall	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (read)
He	will	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (eat)
She	will	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (watch)
It	will	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (go)
We	shall	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (ride)
You	will	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (drive)
They	will	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (sing)
એકવચન કર્તા	will	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (work)
બહુવચન કર્તા	will	મૂળક્રિયાપદ (come)

1. He will go to Bombay tomorrow.

(તે આવતીકાલે બોમ્બે જશે.)

કર્તા **He** છે એટલે **will** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **go**.**2. I shall drink juice in a few minutes.**

(હું થોડી વાર પછી જ્યુસ પીશ.)

કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **shall** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **drink**.**3. She will read three books next week.**

(તે આવતા અઠવાડિયે ત્રણ પુસ્તકો વાંચશે.)

કર્તા **She** છે એટલે **will** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **read**.**4. They will come back next month.**

(તેઓ આવતા મહિને પાછા આવશે.)

કર્તા **They** છે એટલે **will** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **come**.**5. We shall complete this work tomorrow.**

(આપણે આ કામ આવતીકાલે પૂરું કરીશું.)

કર્તા **We** છે એટલે **shall** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **complete**.**6. Anil and Sunil will eat apples.**

(અનિલ અને સુનિલ સફરજન ખાશે.)

કર્તા **Anil and Sunil** છે એટલે **will** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **eat**.**7. Sunita will join the college next week.**

(સુનિતા આવતા અઠવાડિયે કોલેજ શરૂ કરશે.)

કર્તા **Sunita** છે એટલે **will** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **join**.**8. I shall finish this project within three days.**

(હું આ પ્રોજેક્ટ ત્રણ દિવસમાં પૂરો કરીશ.)

કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **shall** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **finish**.

9. Students will do their lessons next Sunday.

(વિદ્યાર્થીઓ તેમના પાઠ આવતા રવિવારે કરશે.)

કર્તા **Students** છે એટલે **will** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **do**.

10. They will take tea after some time.

(તેઓ થોડા સમય પછી ચા લેશે.)

કર્તા **They** છે એટલે **will** અને મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ **take**.

future Continuous Tense / ચાલુ ભવિષ્ય કાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

- જે ક્રિયાઓ ભવિષ્યમાં ચાલુ હશે તે દર્શાવવા ચાલુ ભવિષ્યકાળનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- યાદ રાખો કે ક્રિયા શરૂ થયા પછી અમુક સમય સુધી ચાલે જેમ કે :
 - હું આવતીકાલે સવારે મેરેથોન દોડમાં દોડી રહ્યો હોઈશ.
 - (દોડવાની ક્રિયા શરૂ પછી અમુક સમય સુધી ચાલશે.)
 - અમે આવતીકાલે સાંજે ફળો ખરીદી રહ્યા હોઈશું.
 - (ફળો ખરીદવાની ક્રિયા શરૂ થયા પછી અમુક સમય સુધી ચાલશે.)
- ભવિષ્યમાં જે ક્રિયાઓ થવાની છે તેનું અનુમાન અથવા ધારણા કરવા માટે પણ ચાલુ ભવિષ્યકાળનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમ કે :
 - બચુને કાલે સવારે ૮ વાગ્યા પહેલા કોલ કરતાં નહીં, તે કદાચ સૂતો હશે.
 - (અહીં બચુની સૂઈ જવાની ધારણા છે.)
 - તેઓ આવતા વર્ષે ઘર બદલી કરી રહ્યા હશે.
 - (ઘર બદલી કરવાની ધારણા છે.)

ચાલુ ભવિષ્યકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

42

Tomorrow, Next day / week / month / year, shortly, in a few minutes.

ચાલુ ભવિષ્ય કાળ કઈ રીતે બને

I / We / You / They / He / She / It / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) /
એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + will + be +
ક્રિયાપદનું ing રૂપ (playing / going) + અન્ય શબ્દો

<i>I</i>	<i>shall be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>reading</i>)
<i>He</i>	<i>will be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>eating</i>)
<i>She</i>	<i>will be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>watching</i>)
<i>It</i>	<i>will be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>doing</i>)
<i>We</i>	<i>shall be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>going</i>)
<i>You</i>	<i>will be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>driving</i>)
<i>They</i>	<i>will be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>singing</i>)
એકવચન કર્તા	<i>will be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>working</i>)
બહુવચન કર્તા	<i>will be</i>	<i>ing</i> ક્રિયાપદ (<i>coming</i>)

Examples :

1. He will be flying a kite tomorrow.

(અમે ઘરે પહોંચ્યા ત્યારે બાળકો અડધો કલાકથી ઝંઘડી રહ્યા હતા.)

→ કર્તા **He** છે એટલે **will + be + ing** ક્રિયાપદ **flying**.

2. It will be raining tomorrow.

(આવતીકાલે વરસાદ પડી રહ્યો હતો.)

→ કર્તા **It** છે એટલે **will + be + ing** ક્રિયાપદ **raining**.

3. She will be driving her new car next week.

(તે આવતા અઠવાડિયે તેની નવી ગાડી ચલાવી રહી હશે.)

→ કર્તા **She** છે એટલે **will + be + ing** ક્રિયાપદ **driving**.

4. Kanu will be waiting for Manu next friday.

(કનુ આવતા શુક્રવારે મનુની રાહ જોઈ રહ્યો હતો.)

→ કર્તા **Kanu** છે એટલે **will + be + ing** ક્રિયાપદ **waiting**.

5. Students will be competing their homework tomorrow 5 pm.

(વિદ્યાર્થીઓ આવતીકાલે ૫ વાગ્યે તેમનું ઘરકામ પુરું કરી રહ્યા હશે.)

→ કર્તા **Students** છે એટલે **will + be + ing** ક્રિયાપદ **completing**.

Future Perfect Tense / પૂર્ણ ભવિષ્ય કાળ

ક્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય ?

→ જે ક્રિયાઓ ભવિષ્યમાં અમુક સમયે પૂર્ણ થઈ જશે તે દર્શાવવા માટે

પૂર્ણ ભવિષ્યકાળનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમ કે :

- આવતીકાલે રમેશે આ સમયે તેનું કામ પતાવી લીધું હશે.
- કાલે સાંજે અનુએ તેની ખરીદી પૂરી કરી લીધી હશે.

ઉપરનાં બંને વાક્યોમાં ભવિષ્યમાં ક્રિયાઓ પૂર્ણ કરવાનો અર્થ છે.

(કામ પતાવી લીધું હશે / ખરીદી પૂરી કરી લીધી હશે.)

ચાલુ ભવિષ્યકાળ સૂચવતા શબ્દો.

Tomorrow, Next day / week / month / year

I / We / You / They / He / She / It / બહુવચન કર્તા (બે કે વધારે કર્તા) /
એકવચન કર્તા (એક જ કર્તા) + will + have +
ing ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (played / gone) + અન્ય શબ્દો

I	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (reading)
He	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (eating)
She	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (watching)
It	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (doing)
We	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (going)
You	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (driving)
They	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (singing)
એકવચન કર્તા	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (working)
બહુવચન કર્તા	will have	ing ક્રિયાપદ (coming)

Examples :

- 1. I will have moved into my new office by the end of this month.**
 (હું આ મહિનાનાં અંત સુધીમાં મારી નવી ઓફિસમાં જતો રહ્યો હોઈશ.)
 → કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **will + have +** ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **moved**.
- 2. Raman will have finished his studies by this time tomorrow.**
 (આવતીકાલે આ સમય સુધી રમણે તેનો અભ્યાસ પતાવી લીધો હશે.)
 → કર્તા **Raman** છે એટલે **will + have +** ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **finished**.
- 3. The train will have left by the time you reach the station.**
 (તમે સ્ટેશન પહોંચો તે પહેલા ટ્રેન જતી રહી હશે.)
 → કર્તા **The train** છે એટલે **will + have +** ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **left**.

4. **Suresh will have completed his report by this time next week.**

(સુરેશે આવતા અઠવાડિયે આ સમય સુધી તેનો રીપોર્ટ પૂરો કરી લીધો હશે.)

→ કર્તા **Suresh** છે એટલે **will + have +** ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **completed**.

5. **Jitendra will have reached the bank by this time tomorrow.**

(આવતીકાલે આ સમય સુધી જીતેન્દ્ર બેંક પહોંચી ગયો હશે.)

→ કર્તા **Jitendra** છે એટલે **will + have +** ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **reached**.

Modal Auxiliaries

→ **Modal Auxiliaries** એટલે સહાયકારક ક્રિયાપદ.

→ અલગ અલગ પરિસ્થિતીમાં અલગ અલગ **Modal Auxiliaries** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

Modal Auxiliaries

1. **Should**

4. **Must**

2. **Would**

5. **Have to / Has to / Had to**

3. **Can / Could**

6. **May / Might**

→ બધા **Modal Auxiliaries** એક સરખી રીતે વપરાય છે.

- **Active Form**

કર્તા + **Modal** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

- **Passive Form**

કર્તા + **Modal** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો

1. Should

- **Should** નો ઉપયોગ ફરજ દર્શાવવા થાય છે.
- યાદ રાખો આપણે ઘણી વખત વાક્યમાં 'જોઈએ' નામ ના શબ્દનો ઉપયોગ કરીએ છીએ ત્યાં આપણે **Should** નો ઉપયોગ કરી શકીએ. જેમ કે,
- આપણે વૃક્ષો ના કાપવા જોઈએ.
 - સરકારે ગરીબોની મદદ કરવી જોઈએ.

ઉપરના વાક્યોમાં જોઈએ નામનો શબ્દ વાપરવામાં આવ્યો છે અને ફરજ પણ બતાવે છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત / *How to use ?*

- **Active Form**

કર્તા + **should** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**play / go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

- **Passive Form**

કર્મ + **should** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played / gone**)
+ **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active form Examples

1. He should not cut trees.

(તેણે વૃક્ષો કાપવા જોઈએ નહીં.)

કર્તા (**He**) + **should** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**cut**)

2. We should go to the garden.

(આપણે બગીચાએ જવું જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **should** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**go**)

3. Anil should work hard to get good marks.

(અનિલે સારા માર્ક્સ મેળવવા સખત મહેનત કરવી જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**Anil**) + **should** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**work**)

4. Sunita should watch this movie.

(સુનિતાએ આ મુવી જોવું જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**Sunita**) + **should** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**watch**)

5. They should read this magazine.

(તેઓએ આ સામયિક વાંચવું જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**They**) + **should** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**read**)

Passive form Examples

1. Trees should be planted by us.

કર્મ (**Trees**) + **should** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**planted**) + **by**
+ કર્તા **We** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**us**)

2. Essay should be written by students.

કર્મ (**Essay**) + **should** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**written**) + **by**
+ કર્તા **students** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**students**)

3. Computers should be used in study by us.

કર્મ (**Computers**) + **should** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**used**) + **by**
+ કર્તા **We** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**us**)

4. Prizes should be given by chief guest.

કર્મ (**Prizes**) + **should** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**given**) + **by**
+ કર્તા **chief guest** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**chief guest**)

5. Car should be driven by Amit.

કર્મ (Car) + **should** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (driven) + **by**
+ કર્તા **Amit** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (Amit)

2. Would

→ **Would** નો ઉપયોગ નીચેની સ્થિતિઓ દર્શાવવા થાય છે.

- કાલ્પનિક પરિસ્થિતિ. / **Imagined situation.**
- ઈચ્છા વ્યક્ત કરવા. / **Desire/Wish.**
- નમ્ર વિનંતી કરવા. / **Polite request.**
- મત અથવા આશા રજૂ કરવા. / **Opinion / hope.**
- ભૂતકાળની આદત બતાવવા. / **Past habit**

ઉપયોગની રીત / **How to use ?**

- **Active Form**

કર્તા + **would** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**play / go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

- **Passive Form**

કર્મ + **would** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played / gone**)
+ **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active form Examples

1. I would like to request you to stop the payment.

(અહીંયા વિનંતી છે.)

કર્તા (I) + **would** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**like**)

2. We would say that we are happy.

(આ વાક્યમાં મત રજૂ કરવામાં આવ્યો છે.)

કર્તા (I) + **would** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**say**)

3. Dhruv would desire to go to Canada.

(આ વખતે ઈચ્છા રજૂ કરાઈ છે.)

કર્તા (I) + **would** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**desire**)

4. Ramesh would smoke when he was in college.

(આ વાક્યમાં રમેશની ભૂતકાળની આદત બતાવેલ છે.)

કર્તા (I) + **would** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**smoke**)

5. Anil would buy new computer.

(અહીં કાલ્પનિક પરિસ્થિતિ છે.)

કર્તા (**Anil**) + **would** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**Buy**)

Passive form Examples

1. Cash payment would be stopped by bank.

કર્મ (**Cash payment**) + **would** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**stopped**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Bank** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**bank**)

2. The bus would be driven by Rameshbhai.

કર્મ (**Bus**) + **would** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**driven**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Rameshbhai** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Rameshbhai**)

3. The prize would be won by him.

કર્મ (**Prize**) + **would** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**won**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **He** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**him**)

4. Songs would be sung by Lata.

કર્મ (**Songs**) + **would** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**sung**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Lata** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Lata**)

5. Clothes would be chosen by Dhara.

કર્મ (**Clothes**) + **would** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**chosen**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Dhara** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Dhara**)

3. Can / Could

- **Can / Could** નો ઉપયોગ શક્તિ દર્શાવવા થાય છે.
- આપણે ગુજરાતીમાં જ્યાં શકવું, શકે અથવા શકશે એવું બોલીએ ત્યારે **Can / Could** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમકે,
- અનિલ પાણીમાં તરી શકે છે.
 - પોપટ બોલી શકે છે.
 - **Could** એ **Can** નું ભૂતકાળનું ફોર્મ છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત / **How to use ?**

- **Active Form**

કર્તા + **Can / Could** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**play / go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

- **Passive Form**

કર્મ + **Can/Could** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played / gone**)
+ **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active form Examples

1. Birds can fly.

(પક્ષીઓ ઊડી શકે છે.)

કર્તા (**Birds**) + **Can** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**fly**)

2. Amit can cook many food items.

(અમિત ઘણી ખાવાની વસ્તુઓ બનાવી શકે છે.)

કર્તા (**Amit**) + **Can** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**cook**)

3. They can work for long hours.

(તેઓ લાંબા સમય સુધી કામ કરી શકે છે.)

કર્તા (**They**) + **Can** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**work**)

4. Sunil could write history books.

(સુનિલ ઇતિહાસના પુસ્તકો લખી શકતો નથી.)

કર્તા (**Sunil**) + **Can** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**write**)

5. We can walk faster than animals.

(આપણે પ્રાણીઓ કરતાં વધારે ઝડપથી ચાલી શકીએ છીએ.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **Can** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**walk**)

Passive form Examples

1. Apples can be cut with knife by him.

(સફરજન તેના દ્વારા ચપ્પાથી કપાઈ શકાયા.)

કર્મ (**Apples**) + **can** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**cut**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **He** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**him**)

2. Three liter of milk can be drunk by her.

(તેના દ્વારા ત્રણ લીટર દૂધ પી શકાયું.)

કર્મ (**Three liter of milk**) + **can** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**drunk**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **she** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**her**)

3. Dozen bananas can be eaten by Rahul.

(રાહુલ દ્વારા ડઝન કેળાં ખવાઈ શકાય છે.)

કર્મ (**Dozen bananas**) + **can** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**eaten**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Rahul** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Rahul**)

4. A poem can be sung by Sangita.

(સંગીતા દ્વારા કવિતા ગાઈ શકાય છે.)

કર્મ (**A poem**) + **can** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**sung**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Sangita** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Sangita**)

5. The party could be attended by them.

(તેમના દ્વારા પાર્ટીમાં જોડાઈ શકાયું હતું.)

કર્મ (**Party**) + **can** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**attended**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **They** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**them**)

4. Must

- **Must** નો ઉપયોગ એવી ક્રિયા માટે થાય છે કે જે કરવી અનિવાર્ય છે એટલે કે ફરજિયાત છે જેને કર્યા વિના ચાલે નહીં.
- વાક્યમાં જ જોઈએ, નામના શબ્દનો ઉપયોગ કરીએ ત્યારે **Must** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.
- **Must** દરેક કર્તા સાથે વપરાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત / How to use ?

- **Active Form**

કર્તા + **Must** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**play / go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

- **Passive Form**

કર્મ + **Must** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played / gone**)
+ **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active form Examples

1. He must work hard to get good marks.

(તેણે સારા ગુણ મેળવવા સખત મહેનત કરવી જ પડશે.)

કર્તા (**He**) + **must** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**work**)

2. She must go to school.

(તેણે શાળાએ જવું જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**She**) + **must** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**go**)

3. We must walk faster to catch the bus.

(આપણે બસ પકડવા ઝડપથી ચાલવું જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **must** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**walk**)

4. They must not attend that party.

(તેમણે પાર્ટીમાં હાજરી/આપવી ન જ કરવી જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**They**) + **must** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**attend**)

5. Sunil and Anil must visit the Taj Mahal.

(સુનિલ અને અનિલે તાજમહલની મુલાકાત લેવી જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**Sunil and Anil**) + **must** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**visit**)

Passive form Examples

1. Trees must not be cut by people.

(વૃક્ષો લોકો દ્વારા ન જ કપાવા જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Trees**) + **must** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**cut**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **people** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**people**)

2. Money must be paid by Ramesh.

(રમેશ દ્વારા પૈસા ચૂકવવા જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Money**) + **must** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**paid**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Ramesh** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Ramesh**)

3. Exam must be given by him.

(તેના દ્વારા પરીક્ષા અપાવી જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Exam**) + **must** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**given**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **He** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**him**)

4. Clothes must be bought by her.

(તેના દ્વારા કપડાં ખરીદાવા જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Clothes**) + **must** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**bought**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **she** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**her**)

5. Apples must be eaten by them.

(તેમના દ્વારા સફરજન ખવાવા જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Apples**) + **must** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**eaten**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **they** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**them**)

5. Have to / Has to / Had to _____

- **Have to / has to** નો ઉપયોગ એવી ક્રિયા માટે થાય છે કે જે કરવી અનિવાર્ય છે એટલે કે ફરજિયાત છે જેને કર્યા વિના ચાલે નહીં.
- **Had to** એ **Have to** અને **Has to** નું ભૂતકાળનું **Form** છે.
- **Had to** દરેક કર્તા સાથે વપરાય છે પણ **Have to / has to** નો ઉપયોગ વાક્ય ના કર્તા પ્રમાણે થાય છે. જે નીચે દર્શાવેલ છે.

I	Have to	He	Has to
We		She	
You		It	
They		એકવચન કર્તા	
બહુવચન કર્તા		કોઈ છોકરા/પુરુષનું નામ	
		કોઈ છોકરી/સ્ત્રીનું નામ	

- **Active Form**

કર્તા + **Have to / Has to / Had to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**play / go**)
+ અન્ય શબ્દો

- **Passive Form**

કર્મ + **Have to / Has to / Had to** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત
(**played / gone**) + **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active form Examples

1. She has to join this course.

(તેણે આ કોર્સમાં જોડાવું જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા(**She**) + **Has to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**join**)

2. They have to go to the library.

(તેમણે ગ્રંથાલય જવું જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા(**they**) + **have to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**go**)

3. Sunil had to read many books.

(સુનિલે ઘણા પુસ્તકો વાંચવા જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા(**Sunil**) + **had to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**read**)

4. Sunita and Anita have to sing poems.

(સુનિતા અને અનિતાએ કવિતાઓ ગાવી જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા(**Sunita and Anita**) + **Have to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**sing**)

5. You have to contact doctor.

(તમારે ડોક્ટરનો સંપર્ક કરવો જ જોઈએ.)

કર્તા(**You**) + **have to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**contact**)

1. This work has to be done by us.

(આપણા દ્વારા આ કામ કરાવું જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**This work**) + **has to** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**done**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **We** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**us**)

2. Computers have to be bought by Kaushal.

(કૌશલ દ્વારા કોમ્પ્યુટર ખરીદાવા જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Computers**) + **have to** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**bought**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **Kaushal** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Kaushal**)

3. Books had to be read by students.

(વિદ્યાર્થીઓ દ્વારા પુસ્તકો વંચાવા જ જોઈતા હતા.)

કર્મ (**Books**) + **had to** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**read**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **students** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**students**)

4. Help has to be given by people.

(લોકો દ્વારા મદદ કરાવી જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Help**) + **has to** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**given**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **people** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**people**)

5. Answers have to be written again by Samir.

(સમીર દ્વારા જવાબો ફરીથી લખાવા જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Answers**) + **have to** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**written**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **Samir** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Samir**)

5. May / Might

57

→ **May/ Might** નો ઉપયોગ સંભાવના, શક્યતા, પરવાનગી અથવા આશીર્વાદ દર્શાવવા થાય છે.

- આજે કદાચ વરસાદ પડશે. (સંભાવના)
- ભગવાન તમારું ભલું કરે. (આશીર્વાદ)
- હું અંદર આવી શકું ? (પરવાનગી)

→ આપણે જ્યારે કદાચ શબ્દનો ઉપયોગ કરીએ ત્યારે **May/ Might** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

→ યાદ રાખો કે **Might** એ **May** નું ભૂતકાળ નું ફોર્મ છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત / How to use ?

• Active Form

કર્તા + **May/Might** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**play / go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

• Passive Form

કર્મ + **May/Might** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played / gone**)
+ **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active form Examples

1. Rahul may come today.

(રાહુલ કદાચ આજે આવશે.)

કર્તા(**Rahul**) + **May** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**come**)

2. We may go to Bombay next week.

(અમે કદાચ આવતા અઠવાડિયે બોમ્બે જઈશું.)

કર્તા(**We**) + **May** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**go**)

3. Sunita may read two books.

(સુનિતા કદાચ બે પુસ્તકો વાંચશે.)

કર્તા(**Sunita**) + **May** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**read**)

4. May I take this pencil ?

(શું હું પેન્સિલ લઈ શકું ?)

કર્તા(**I**) + **May** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**take**)

5. They might listen to songs.

(તેમણે કદાચ ગીતો સાંભળ્યા હશે.)

કર્તા(**They**) + **May** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**listen**)

Passive form Examples

1. The computer may be bought by Amit.

(અમિત દ્વારા કદાચ કોમ્પ્યુટર ખરીદાશે.)

કર્મ (**Computer**) + **may** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**bought**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Amit** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Amit**)

2. Garden might be visited by Anil last night.

(અનિલ દ્વારા કદાચ ગઈ રાતે બગીચાની મુલાકાત લેવાઈ હશે.)

કર્મ (**Garden**) + **might** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**visited**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **Anil** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**Anil**)

3. The Taj Mahal may be seen by him.

(તેમના દ્વારા તાજ મહલ જોવાયો હશે.)

કર્મ (**Taj Mahal**) + **may** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**seen**)

+ **by** + કર્તા **they** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**them**)

4. Chinese may be eaten us.

(અમારા દ્વારા કદાચ ચાઈનીઝ ખવાશે.)

કર્મ (**Chinese**) + **may** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**eaten**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **We** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**us**)

5. New mobile may be purchased by her.

(તેના દ્વારા કદાચ નવો મોબાઈલ ખરીદાશે.)

કર્મ (**New mobile**) + **may** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**purchased**)
+ **by** + કર્તા **She** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ (**her**)

If

- **If** નો મતલબ જો...તો થાય છે. (હકાર)
- **If** માં બે વાક્યોનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. પહેલા વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ (,) મૂકવું પડે. (બે ક્રિયાઓ હોય છે.)
- પહેલા વાક્યમાં સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ અને પછી સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ વપરાય છે. જેમકે,
 - જો સુનિલ મહેનત કરે, તો તે સારા ગુણ મેળવશે.
 - જો વરસાદ પડે, તો હું ખુશ થઈ જઈશ.
- બીજા વાક્યમાં શક્યતા, શક્તિ અથવા પરવાનગી દર્શાવવા **Can** અથવા **May** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમકે,
 - જો તું કામ પુરું કરી લે, તો ટીવી જોઈ શકે છે. (પરવાનગી)
 - જો અનિતા પ્રયત્ન કરે, તો તે ચેસ રમી શકે છે. (શક્તિ)
 - જો આપણે ઝડપથી ચાલીએ, તો કદાચ બસ મળી જશે. (શક્યતા)

Examples :

60

1. If Kaushal works hard, he will get success.

(જો કૌશલ સખત મહેનત કરે તો તેને સફળતા મળશે.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**works**) + સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will get**).

2. If Sunita goes to market, she will buy clothes

(જો સુનિતા બજાર જશે તો તે કપડાં ખરીદશે.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**goes**) + સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will buy**).

3. If you drink milk everyday, you will remain healthy.

(જો તમે દરરોજ દૂધ પીશો, તો તમે તંદુરસ્ત રહેશો.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**drink**) + સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will remain**).

4. If I do not walk fast, I will miss the train.

(જો હું ઝડપથી નહીં ચાલુ તો ટ્રેન ચૂકી જઈશ.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**walk**) + સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will miss**).

5. If they read books, they will learn history.

(જો તેઓ પુસ્તકો વાંચશે તો તેઓ ઈતિહાસ શીખશે.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**read**) + સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will learn**).

6. If we play carefully, we can win this match easily.

(જો આપણે કાળજીપૂર્વક રમીશું તો આપણે આ સ્પર્ધા સરળતાથી જીતી શકીશું.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**play**) + શક્તિ (**can win**).

7. If you wait for half an hour, you may meet Ankit.

(જો તમે અડધો કલાક રાહ જુઓ તો તમે કદાચ અંકિતને મળશો.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**wait**) + શક્યતા (**may meet**).

8. If I finish my homework, I can play cricket.

(જો હું મારું ઘરકામ પૂરું કરું તો હું ક્રિકેટ રમી શકું.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**finish**) + પરવાનગી (**can play**).

9. Anita will get admission in college if she works hard.

(જો અનિતા સખત મહેનત કરે તો તેને કોલેજમાં દાખલો મળશે.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**works**) + સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will get**).

10. Hardik and Kishan will drive car if they buy it.

(જો હાર્દિક અને કિશન ગાડી ખરીદે તો તેઓ ગાડી ચલાવશે.)

If + કર્તા + સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ(**buy**) + સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will drive**).

Prepositions

→ **Prepositions** એટલે નામયોગી અવયવો થાય છે.

→ **Prepositions** નામ સાથે સ્થળ, સમય, દિશા વગેરેનો સંબંધ નક્કી કરે છે.

● **Anita is in the garden.**

→ ઉપરના વાક્યમાં અનિતા અને બગીચાનો સંબંધ **in** વડે દર્શાવેલ છે.

એટલે કે **Preposition (in)** એ સ્થળ બતાવે છે.

→ **Prepositions** પછી કર્તાનું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ આવે છે. જેમ કે, કર્તા **I** હોય તો **Me** અને કર્તા **He** હોય તો **Him** અથવા **His**.

Prepositions નો અર્થ અને ઉપયોગ

1. In - માં, ની અંદર (સ્થિર વસ્તુઓ કે વ્યક્તિઓ માટે)

Sunil is in the classroom. (સુનિલ વર્ગખંડની અંદર છે.)

The knife is in the kitchen. (ચપ્પુ રસોડામાં છે.)

2. Into - માં, ની અંદર (ગતિ દર્શાવવા માટે, બહારથી અંદર)

Kamlesh is coming into classroom. (કમલેશ વર્ગખંડમાં આવી રહ્યો છે.)

Hardik came into restaurant. (હાર્દિક રેસ્ટોરન્ટમાં આવ્યો હતો.)

3. **With** - વડે (કોઈ સાધન અથવા ઓજાર માટે), ની સાથે
He cuts an apple with a knife. (તે ચપ્પા વડે સફરજન કાપે છે.)
I went to cinema with my friends. (હું મારા મિત્રો સાથે સિનેમા ગયો હતો.)
4. **Without** - વિના
She will not eat bread without butter. (તે બ્રેડ માખણ વિના ખાશે નહીં.)
I cannot write without a pen. (હું પેન વિના નહીં લખી શકું.)
5. **Of** - નો, ની, નું, અથવા ના (સંબંધ અથવા માલિકી દર્શાવવા/રોગથી થયેલ મૃત્યુ દર્શાવવા)
Ankita died of cancer. (અંકિતા કેન્સરથી મરી ગઈ હતી.)
Amit wanted to eat a piece of cake. (અમિતને કેકનો ટુકડો ખાવો હતો.)
6. **For** - ને માટે, કિંમત દર્શાવવા.
Bhavana bought that dress for Rs. 300/-.
(ભાવનાએ તે ડ્રેસ ૩૦૦ રૂપિયાની કિંમતે ખરીદ્યો હતો.)
Sunil wanted a computer for his study.
(સુનિલને તેના અભ્યાસ માટે કોમ્પ્યુટર જોઈતું હતું.)
7. **From** - થી, (કોઈ સ્થળેથી અથવા સમયેથી) અને કોઈ રોગથી થતી પીડા દર્શાવવા માટે
I am suffering from fever. (હું તાવથી પીડાઈ રહ્યો છું.)
He works from 9 am to 9 pm.
(તે સવારના ૯ થી રાતના ૯ વાગ્યા સુધી કામ કરે છે.)
She went from America to London. (તે અમેરિકાથી લંડન ગઈ હતી.)
8. **By** - દ્વારા (વાહન અથવા વ્યક્તિ દ્વારા)
Dhara went there by bus. (ધારા બસ દ્વારા ત્યાં ગઈ હતી.)
This book is written by Mr. Dinesh.
(આ પુસ્તક શ્રીમાન દિનેશ દ્વારા લખાયું છે.)

9. Between - વચ્ચે (ફક્ત બે વ્યક્તિ અથવા વસ્તુઓ માટે.)

There is a photo between AC and Cooler.

(એસી અને કુલરની વચ્ચે ફોટો છે.)

Yash is standing between Mitesh and Mita.

(યશ મીતા અને મિતેશની વચ્ચે ઉભો છે.)

10. Among - વચ્ચે (ફક્ત બે થી વધારે વ્યક્તિઓ અથવા વસ્તુઓ માટે)

Gandhiji stood among people. (ગાંધીજી લોકો વચ્ચે ઉભા હતા.)

There is one pencil among pens. (ત્યાં પેનો વચ્ચે એક પેન્સિલ છે.)

11. Under - નીચે, હેઠળ

The book is under the table. (પુસ્તક ટેબલ નીચે છે.)

The tiger is under a tree. (વાઘ ઝાડ નીચે છે.)

We work under his guidance.

(અમે તેના માર્ગદર્શન હેઠળ કામ કરીએ છીએ.)

12. Behind - પાછળ

There is a bus stand behind the school. (શાળા પાછળ બસ સ્ટેન્ડ છે.)

The cat is behind that chair. (ખુરશી પાછળ બિલાડી છે.)

13. To - નિશ્ચિત સ્થળ દર્શાવે (જે સ્થળ હોય તેના નામ પહેલા મુકાય)

He went to school. (તે શાળાએ ગયો હતો.)

Anita has gone to market. (અનિતા બજારે ગઈ છે.)

14. At - તરફ (મોટાભાગે સ્થળ અને સમય દર્શાવવા માટે)

He will meet you at Baroda. (તે તને બરોડા મળશે.)

Kishan will come at 9 O'clock. (કિશન ૯ વાગ્યે આવશે.)

15. Towards - ની તરફ

She has gone towards market. (તે બજાર તરફ ગઈ છે.)

Anil went towards that tree. (અનિલ પેલા ઝાડ તરફ ગયો હતો.)

16. On - ઉપર (એક વસ્તુને અડીને બીજી વસ્તુ હોય ત્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય)

Computer is on the table. (કોમ્પ્યુટર ટેબલ ઉપર છે.)

Mobile is on the sofa. (મોબાઈલ સોફા ઉપર છે.)

17. Over - ઉપર (બે વસ્તુ વચ્ચે જગ્યા હોય ત્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય.)

Wires are over the road. (વાયર રોડ ઉપર છે.)

There is a bridge over the river. (નદી ઉપર પુલ છે.)

18. Above - ઉપર (એક વસ્તુની ઉપર બીજી વસ્તુ અડચા વિના હોય એટલે કે લટકાવેલી હોય, હોદામાં કોઈ ઉપર હોય, કોઈ લખાણમાં ઉપર મુજબ કહેવું હોય ત્યારે ઉપયોગ થાય.)

The photo is above AC. (ફોટો એસી ઉપર છે.)

Address is as above. (સરનામું ઉપર મુજબ છે.)

He is above me in the office. (તે ઓફિસમાં મારી ઉપર છે.)

19. Beside - બાજુમાં

She lives beside café coffee day. (તે કાફેમાં કોફી ડે ની બાજુમાં રહે છે.)

I walked beside the road. (હું રોડની બાજુએ ચાલ્યો હતો.)

20. Through - માંથી (માંથી પસાર થવાના અર્થ માટે)

We walked through big crowd. (અમે મોટા ટોળામાંથી પસાર થયા હતા.)

Sunil passed through the tunnel. (સુનિલ ટનેલ માંથી પસાર થયો હતો.)

→ **Infinitive** એટલે અપૂર્ણ ક્રિયાપદ થાય છે.

→ **Infinitive** નો ઉપયોગ ત્રણ પરિસ્થિતિમાં થાય છે.

1. ક્રિયાનો હેતુ દર્શાવવા માટે :

- **We watch TV to learn new language.**

ટીવી જોવાની ક્રિયા નવી ભાષા શીખવાનો હેતુ
ઉપરના વાક્યમાં ટીવી જોવાની ક્રિયાનો હેતુ નવી ભાષા શીખવાનો છે.
તેથી **to learn** નો ઉપયોગ **Infinitive** તરીકે કરેલ છે.

2. ઈચ્છાઓ / પસંદગી / આશા દર્શાવવા માટે

- **I want to study science.**

ઈચ્છા વિજ્ઞાન ભણવાની
ઉપરના વાક્યમાં વિજ્ઞાન ભણવાની ઈચ્છા છે
તેથી **to study** નો ઉપયોગ **Infinitive** તરીકે કરેલ છે.

3. વિશેષણ પછી વાક્યનો અર્થ

- **He is ready to help her.**

વિશેષણ વાક્યનો અર્થ
ઉપરના વાક્યમાં **ready** વિશેષણ છે અને **to help her** વાક્યનો અર્થ છે.
તેથી **to help** નો ઉપયોગ **Infinitive** તરીકે કરેલ છે.

તે તૈયાર છે પણ શેના માટે ? જવાબ છે તેને મદદ કરવા.

એટલે કે **to help her**, વાક્યનો આ ભાગ પૂરા વાક્યનો મતલબ રજૂ કરે છે.

Infinitive સૂચવતા શબ્દો...

Want	- ઈચ્છા	Like	- પસંદ હોવું
Desire	- ઈચ્છા	Ready	- તૈયાર
Hope	- આશા	Wish	- ઈચ્છા
Expect	- આશા	Necessary	- જરૂરી
Try	- પ્રયત્ન કરવો	Require	- જરૂરી
Compulsory	- ફરજિયાત	Essential	- જરૂરી
Happy	- ખુશ	Prefer	- પસંદ હોવું
Choose	- પસંદ કરવું	Eager	- આતુર

Infinitive કઈ રીતે બને ?

→ **Infinitive** સૂચક શબ્દ + **To** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળ રૂપ (**play / go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

1. **Anil wanted to complete that essay.**

Want Infinitive (ઈચ્છા દર્શાવે છે) + **to** + **complete**.

2. **Kavita expects to finish this project.**

Expect Infinitive (આશા દર્શાવે છે) + **to** + **finish**.

3. **It is compulsory to read the book.**

Compulsory Infinitive (વિશેષણ) + **to** + **read**.

4. **I desire to visit the Taj Mahal.**

Desire Infinitive (ઈચ્છા દર્શાવે છે) + **to** + **visit**.

5. **They do not like to eat ice cream.**

Like Infinitive (પસંદગી દર્શાવે છે) + **to** + **eat**.

6. *Kamal is working hard to get good marks.*

Working Infinitive (ક્રિયાનો હેતુ દર્શાવે છે) + **to** + *get*.

7. *Sunita walked fast to catch the train.*

Walked fast Infinitive (ક્રિયાનો હેતુ દર્શાવે છે) + **to** + *catch*.

8. *I am happy to see him again.*

Happy (વિશેષણ) + **to** + *see*.

9. *He hoped to sing beautifully.*

Hoped Infinitive (આશા દર્શાવે છે) + **to** + *sing*.

→ *Infinitive* નો બધા કાળમાં ઉપયોગ કરી શકાય છે. *Infinitive* પછી **to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

Active - Passive Voice

→ **Active** - કર્તરી - જે વાક્ય કર્તા (સજીવ અથવા વ્યક્તિ) થી શરૂ થાય.

જેમ કે,

- અનિલ દરરોજ શાળાએ જાય છે.
- અનિતા સફરજન ખાતી હતી.

→ **Passive** - કર્મણિ - જે વ્યક્તિ કર્મ (નિર્જીવ અથવા વસ્તુ) થી શરૂ થાય.

- પુસ્તક સુનિલ દ્વારા વંચાય છે.
- આ કાચ અનિતા દ્વારા તોડવામાં આવ્યો હતો.

→ દરેક કાળના વાક્યો **Active** અથવા **Passive** માં લખી શકાય. દરેક કાળના વાક્યોની **Active** અને **Passive** વાક્ય રચના અલગ અલગ હોય છે.

→ **Active** માંથી **Passive** વાક્ય બનાવતી વખતે કર્મ વાક્યની શરૂઆતમાં આવી જાય અને કર્તા છેલ્લે મુકાય. કર્તાની સાથે **by** નામના શબ્દનો ઉપયોગ પણ કરવો પડે.

→ **Active** માંથી **Passive** વાક્ય બનાવતી વખતે કર્તાનું કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ મૂકવું પડે. જે નીચે આપેલ છે.

<i>I</i>	→	<i>me</i>
<i>He</i>	→	<i>him</i>
<i>She</i>	→	<i>her</i>
<i>They</i>	→	<i>them</i>
<i>We</i>	→	<i>us</i>
<i>You</i>	→	<i>you</i>
કોઈ વ્યક્તિનું નામ (રમેશ)	→	રમેશ

Simple Present Tense

→ સાદું વાક્ય

કર્મ + **am/is/are** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ નકાર વાક્ય

કર્મ + **am/is/are** + **not** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય

am/is/are + કર્મ + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Who** વાળું વાક્ય

By whom + **am/is/are** + કર્મ + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત.

→ **What** વાળું વાક્ય

What + **is** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ *Where / Why / When / How* વાળું વાક્ય

Where / Why / When / How + *am/is/are* + કર્મ +
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + *by* + કર્તા .

Examples :

1. *She eats apples everyday.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Apples are eaten by her everyday.

Apples કર્મ છે એટલે *are* + *eaten* (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + *by* +
her (કર્તા *she* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *her*.)

2. *He plays cricket every day.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Cricket is played by him every day.

Cricket કર્મ છે એટલે *is* + *played* (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + *by* +
him (કર્તા *he* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *him*.)

3. *We celebrate many festivals.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Many festivals are celebrated by us.

Many festivals કર્મ છે એટલે *are* + *celebrated* (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) +
by + *us* (કર્તા *we* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *us*.)

4. *They buy new clothes on Diwali.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

New clothes are bought by them on Diwali.

New clothes કર્મ છે એટલે *are* + *bought* (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) +
by + *them* (કર્તા *they* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *them*.)

5. *Do we read magazines ?* (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)

Are magazines read by us ?

Magazines કર્મ છે એટલે *are* + *read* (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) +
by + *us* (કર્તા *we* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *us*.)

6. **Does Kishan repair his bicycle ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)

Is Kishan's bicycle repaired by him ?

Bicycle કર્મ છે એટલે **is + repaired** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + him** (કર્તા **he** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **him**.)

7. **I do not watch television.** (નકાર વાક્ય)

Television is not watched by me.

Television કર્મ છે એટલે **is + not + watched** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + me** (કર્તા **I** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **me**.)

8. **They do not learn Hindi.** (નકાર વાક્ય)

Hindi is not learnt by them.

Hindi કર્મ છે એટલે **is + not + learnt** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા **they** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **them**.)

9. **Who writes letters every day ?** (**Who** વાળું વાક્ય)

By whom are letters written every day ?

Who છે એટલે **By whom + are** (**letters** કર્મ છે.) + **written** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત).

10. **What does she buy in the market ?** (**What** વાળું વાક્ય)

What is bought by her in the market ?

What વાળું વાક્ય છે એટલે કર્મ ના હોય. **What + is** (**She** છે) + **bought** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + her** (કર્તા **she** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **her**)

11. **Where do you sing that poem ?** (**Where** વાળું વાક્ય)

Where is that poem sung by you ?

Where + is (**that poem** કર્મ છે) + **sung** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + you** (કર્તા **you** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **you**)

Present Continuous Tense

71

→ સાદું વાક્ય

કર્મ + **am/is/are** + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ નકાર વાક્ય

કર્મ + **am/is/are** + **not** + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય

am/is/are + કર્મ + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Who** વાળું વાક્ય

By whom + **am/is/are** + કર્મ + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત.

→ **What** વાળું વાક્ય

What + **is** + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Where / Why / When / How** વાળું વાક્ય

Where / Why / When / How + **am/is/are** + કર્મ + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

Examples :

1. **He is painting a picture.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

A picture is being painted by him.

A picture કર્મ છે એટલે **are** + **being** + **painted** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by** + **him** (કર્તા **he** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **him**.)

2. **They are watching comedy program.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Comedy program is being watched by them.
Comedy program કર્મ છે એટલે **is + being + watched** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા **they** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **them.**)
3. **Anil is selling toys to children.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Toys are being sold to children by Anil.
Toys કર્મ છે એટલે **are + being + sold** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Anil** (કર્તા **Anil** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Anil.**)
4. **Shreya is teaching English.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
English is being taught by Shreya.
English કર્મ છે એટલે **is + being + taught** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Shreya** (કર્તા **Shreya** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **shreya.**)
5. **Are we playing games ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Are games being played by us ?
Games કર્મ છે એટલે **are + being + played** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + us** (કર્તા **we** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **us.**)
6. **Is Sunil singing a song ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Is a song being sung by Sunil ?
A song કર્મ છે એટલે **is + being + sung** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Sunil** (કર્તા **Sunil** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Sunil.**)
7. **Anita and Anil are not eating vegetables.** (નકાર વાક્ય)
Vegetables are not being eaten by Anita and Anil.
Vegetables કર્મ છે એટલે **are + not + being + eaten** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Anita and Anil** (કર્તા **Anita and Anil** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ)

8. *People are not parking cars.* (નકાર વાક્ય)

Cars are not being parked by people.

Cars કર્મ છે એટલે **are + not + being + parked** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + people** (કર્તા *people* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *people.*)

9. *Who is singing this song ?* (*Who* વાળું વાક્ય)

By whom is this song being sung ?

Who છે એટલે **By whom + is** (*this song* કર્મ છે.) + **being + sung** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત).

10. *What is she doing in the market ?* (*What* વાળું વાક્ય)

What is being done by her in the market ?

What વાળું વાક્ય છે એટલે કર્મ ના હોય. **What + is** (*She* છે) + **being + done** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + her** (કર્તા *she* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *her*)

11. *When are they drinking tea ?* (*When* વાળું વાક્ય)

When is tea being drunk by them ?

When + is (*tea* કર્મ છે) + **being + drunk** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા *they* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *them*)

Present Perfect Tense

→ સાદું વાક્ય

કર્મ + **have/has + been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ નકાર વાક્ય

કર્મ + **have/has + not + been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય

Have/Has + કર્મ + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Who** વાળું વાક્ય

By whom + have/has + કર્મ + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત.

→ **What** વાળું વાક્ય

What + has + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + by + કર્તા .

→ **Where / Why / When / How** વાળું વાક્ય

Where / Why / When / How + have/has + કર્મ + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + by + કર્તા .

Examples :

1. **I have just written good stories.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Good stories have just been written by me.

Good stories કર્મ છે એટલે **have + been + written** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + me** (કર્તા **I** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **me.**)

2. **She has invited teachers on her birthday.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Teachers have been invited by her on her birthday.

Teachers કર્મ છે એટલે **have + been + invited** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + her** (કર્તા **she** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **her.**)

3. **Ankita has watched the movie.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

The movie has been watched by Ankita.

Movie કર્મ છે એટલે **has + been + watched** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Ankita** (કર્તા **Ankita** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Ankita.**)

4. **Anil has helped Anita.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Anita has been helped by Anil.

Anita કર્મ છે એટલે **has + been + helped** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Anil** (કર્તા **Anil** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Anil.**)

5. **Has somebody knocked the door ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)

Has the door been knocked by somebody ?

The door કર્મ છે એટલે **has + been + knocked** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + somebody** (કર્તા **somebody** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **somebody.**)

6. **Have we eaten rice today ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)

Has rice been eaten today by us ?

Rice કર્મ છે એટલે **has + been + eaten** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + we** (કર્તા **we** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **us.**)

7. **They have not called an ambulance.** (નકાર વાક્ય)

An ambulance has not been called by them.

Ambulance કર્મ છે એટલે **has + not + been + called** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા **they** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **them**)

8. **I have not spoken those words.** (નકાર વાક્ય)

Those words have not been spoken by me.

Those words કર્મ છે એટલે **have + not + been + spoken** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + me** (કર્તા **I** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **me.**)

9. **Who has written this essay ?** (Who વાળું વાક્ય)

By whom has this essay been written ?

Who છે એટલે **By whom + has (this essay કર્મ છે.) + been + written** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત).

10. **What have we bought from the market ?** (What વાળું વાક્ય)

What has been bought by us from the market ?

What વાળું વાક્ય છે એટલે કર્મ ના હોય. **What + has + been + bought** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + us** (કર્તા **we** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **us**)

11. *Why has she taken science stream ?* (*Why* વાળું વાક્ય)

Why has science stream been taken by her ?

Why + *has* (*science stream* કર્મ છે) + *been* + *taken* (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + *by* + *her* (કર્તા *she* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *her*)

Simple Past Tense

→ સાદું વાક્ય

કર્મ + *was/were* + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + *by* + કર્તા .

→ નકાર વાક્ય

કર્મ + *was/were* + *not* + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + *by* + કર્તા .

→ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય

Was/Were + કર્મ + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + *by* + કર્તા .

→ *Who* વાળું વાક્ય

By whom + *was/were* + કર્મ + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત .

→ *What* વાળું વાક્ય

What + *was* + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + *by* + કર્તા .

→ *Where / Why / When / How* વાળું વાક્ય

Where / Why / When / How + *was/were* + કર્મ + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + *By* + કર્તા .

Examples :

77

1. **He ate bananas yesterday.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Bananas were eaten by him yesterday.
Bananas કર્મ છે એટલે **were + eaten** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + him** (કર્તા **he** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **him**.)
2. **They solved this sum very fast.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
This sum was solved by them very fast.
This sum કર્મ છે એટલે **was + solved** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા **they** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **them**.)
3. **Sangita competed the project two weeks ago.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
The project was completed by Sangita two weeks ago.
The project કર્મ છે એટલે **was + completed** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Sangita** (કર્તા **Sangita** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Sangita**.)
4. **Anil and Anita took lunch in the afternoon.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Lunch was taken by Anil and Anita in the afternoon.
Lunch કર્મ છે એટલે **was + taken** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Anil and Anita** (કર્તા **Anil and Anita** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Anil and Anita**)
5. **Did Sunita give gift to her parents ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Was gift given by Sunita to her parents ?
Gift કર્મ છે એટલે **was + given** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Sunita** (કર્તા **Sunita** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Sunita**.)
6. **Did we play carom yesterday ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Was carom played by us yesterday ?
Carom કર્મ છે એટલે **was + played** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + us** (કર્તા **we** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **us**.)

7. *She did not type many letters one week ago.* (નકાર વાક્ય)

Many letters were not typed by her one week ago.

Many letters કર્મ છે એટલે **were + not + typed** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + her** (કર્તા *she* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *her*.)

8. *Suresh did not buy computer last month.* (નકાર વાક્ય)

Computer was not bought by Suresh last month.

Computer કર્મ છે એટલે **was + not + bought** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Suresh** (કર્તા *Suresh* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *Suresh*.)

9. *Who broke the window yesterday ?* (*Who* વાળું વાક્ય)

By whom was the window broken yesterday ?

Who છે એટલે **By whom + was** (*window* કર્મ છે.) + **broken** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત).

10. *What did they complete ?* (*What* વાળું વાક્ય)

What was completed by them ?

What વાળું વાક્ય છે એટલે કર્મ ના હોય. **What + was + completed** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા *they* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *them*)

11. *How did she hire the taxi ?* (*How* વાળું વાક્ય)

How was the taxi hired by her ?

How + was (*the taxi* કર્મ છે) + **hired** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + her** (કર્તા *she* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *her*)

Past Continuous Tense

→ સાદું વાક્ય

કર્મ + **was/were + being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ નકાર વાક્ય

કર્મ + **was/were** + **not** + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય

Was/Were + કર્મ + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Who** વાળું વાક્ય

By whom + **was/were** + કર્મ + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત.

→ **What** વાળું વાક્ય

What + **was** + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Where / Why / When / How** વાળું વાક્ય

Where / Why / When / How + **was/were** + કર્મ + **being** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

Examples :

1. **Servant was serving dinner..** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Dinner was being served by servant.

Dinner કર્મ છે એટલે **was** + **being** + **served** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by** + **servant** (કર્તા **servant** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **servant.**)

2. **He was decorating home yesterday evening.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Home was being decorated by him yesterday evening.

Home કર્મ છે એટલે **was** + **being** + **decorated** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by** + **him** (કર્તા **he** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **him.**)

3. ***She was cutting vegetables yesterday 7 pm.*** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Vegetables were being cut by her yesterday 7 pm.
Vegetables કર્મ છે એટલે ***were + being + cut*** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + ***by + her*** (કર્તા ***she*** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ ***her.***)
4. ***We were making toys last night 8 pm.*** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Toys were being made by us last night 8 pm.
Toys કર્મ છે એટલે ***were + being + made*** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + ***by + us*** (કર્તા ***we*** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ ***us.***)
5. ***Was Anil playing football ?*** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Was football being played by Anil ?
Football કર્મ છે એટલે ***was + being + played*** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + ***by + Anil*** (કર્તા ***Anil*** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ ***Anil.***)
6. ***Were they speaking words in German ?*** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Were words being spoken by them in German ?
Words કર્મ છે એટલે ***were + being + spoken*** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + ***by + them*** (કર્તા ***they*** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ ***them.***)
7. ***She was not writing homework yesterday noon.*** (નકાર વાક્ય)
Homework was not being written by her yesterday noon.
Homework કર્મ છે એટલે ***was + not + being + written*** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + ***by + her*** (કર્તા ***she*** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ ***her.***)
8. ***Bachu was not teaching Mathematics.*** (નકાર વાક્ય)
Mathematics was not being taught by Bachu.
Mathematics કર્મ છે એટલે ***was + not + being + taught*** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + ***by + Bachu*** (કર્તા ***Bachu*** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ ***Bachu.***)

9. **Who was driving the car ?** (*Who* વાળું વાક્ય)

By whom was the car being driven ?

Who છે એટલે **By whom + was** (*car* કર્મ છે .) + **being** + **driven** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) .

10. **What was he typing at that time ?** (*What* વાળું વાક્ય)

What was being typed by him at that time ?

What વાળું વાક્ય છે એટલે કર્મ ના હોય. **What + was + being** + **typed** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + him** (કર્તા *he* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *him*)

11. **Why were they playing toys ?** (*Why* વાળું વાક્ય)

Why were toys being played by them ?

Why + were (*toys* કર્મ છે) + **being + played** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા *they* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *them*)

Past Perfect Tense

→ સાદું વાક્ય

કર્મ + **had + been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ નકાર વાક્ય

કર્મ + **had + not + been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય

Had + કર્મ + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Who** વાળું વાક્ય

By whom + had + કર્મ + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત .

→ **What** વાળું વાક્ય

What + had + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ *Where / Why / When / How* વાળું વાક્ય

Where / Why / When / How + **had** + કર્મ + **been** +
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

Examples :

1. *She had bought a new camera.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

A new camera had been bought by her.

New camera કર્મ છે એટલે **had** + **been** + **bought** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત)
+ **by** + **her** (કર્તા *she* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **her**.)

2. *We had read books and magazines.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Books and magazines had been read by us.

Books and magazines કર્મ છે એટલે **had** + **been** + **read** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by** + **us** (કર્તા *we* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **us**.)

3. *Pratik had taken the jacket with him.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

The Jacket had been taken by Pratik with him.

jacket કર્મ છે એટલે **had** + **been** + **taken** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by** + **Pratik** (કર્તા *Pratik* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Pratik**.)

4. *Anita had written her dairy.* (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

Anita's diary had been written by her.

Anita's diary કર્મ છે એટલે **had** + **been** + **written** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by** + **her** (કર્તા *Anita* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **her**.)

5. *Had they invited guests ?* (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)

Had guests been invited by them ?

Guests કર્મ છે એટલે **had** + **been** + **invited** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by** + **them** (કર્તા *they* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **them**.)

6. *Had he picked up the bags ?* (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)

Had the bags been picked up by him ?

Bags કર્મ છે એટલે **had + been + picked up** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + him** (કર્તા **he** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **him**.)

7. *Darshan had not parked motobike.* (નકાર વાક્ય)

Motorbike had not been parked by Darshan.

Motorbike કર્મ છે એટલે **had + not + been + parked** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Darshan** (કર્તા **Darshan** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ **Darshan**)

8. *She had not broken that window.* (નકાર વાક્ય)

That window had not been broken by her.

That window કર્મ છે એટલે **had + not + been + broken** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + her** (કર્તા **she** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **her**.)

9. *Who had eaten apples ?* (*Who* વાળું વાક્ય)

By whom had apples been eaten ?

Who છે એટલે **By whom + had (apples કર્મ છે.)**
+ **been + eaten** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત).

10. *What had she taken ?* (*What* વાળું વાક્ય)

What had been taken by her ?

What વાળું વાક્ય છે એટલે કર્મ ના હોય. **What + had + been**
+ **taken** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + she** (કર્તા **she** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **her**)

11. *Where had boys watched movie ?* (*Where* વાળું વાક્ય)

Where had movie been watched by boys ?

Where + had (movie કર્મ છે) + been + watched (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + boys** (કર્તા **boys** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **boys**)

Simple Future Tense

84

→ સાદું વાક્ય

કર્મ + **will/shall** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ નકાર વાક્ય

કર્મ + **will/shall** + **not** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય

Will/Shall + કર્મ + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Who** વાળું વાક્ય

By whom + **will/shall** + કર્મ + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત.

→ **What** વાળું વાક્ય

What + **will/shall** + **be** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

→ **Where / Why / When / How** વાળું વાક્ય

Where / Why / When / How + **will/shall** + કર્મ + **be** +
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + **by** + કર્તા .

Examples :

1. **I will drive a car tomorrow.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)

A car will be driven by me tomorrow.

A car કર્મ છે એટલે **will** + **be** + **driven** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત)
+ **by** + **me** (કર્તા **I** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ **me.**)

2. **Dhara will sell toys in the next fair.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Toys will be sold by Dhara in the next fair.
Toys કર્મ છે એટલે **will + be + sold** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Dhara** (કર્તા **Dhara** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Dhara.**)
3. **We shall give clothes to children.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Clothes will be given by us to children.
Clothes કર્મ છે એટલે **will + be + given** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + us** (કર્તા **we** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **us.**)
4. **Sunita will play hockey next month.** (સાદું / હકાર વાક્ય)
Hockey will be played by Sunita next month.
Hockey કર્મ છે એટલે **will + be + played** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Sunita** (કર્તા **Sunita** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Sunita.**)
5. **Will he give a grand party to his friends ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Will a grand party be given by him to his friends ?
A grand party કર્મ છે એટલે **will + be + given** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + him** (કર્તા **he** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **him.**)
6. **Will they teach Hindi to students ?** (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય)
Will Hindi be taught by them to students ?
Hindi કર્મ છે એટલે **will + be + taught** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + them** (કર્તા **they** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **them.**)
7. **Hardik will not attend that seminar next month.** (નકાર વાક્ય)
That seminar will not be attended by Hardik next month.
The seminar કર્મ છે એટલે **will + not + be + attended** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + Hardik** (કર્તા **Hardik** નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ **Hardik**)

8. *She will not visit Shimla in the next summer.* (નકાર વાક્ય)

Shimla will not be visited by her in the next summer.

Shimla કર્મ છે એટલે **will + not + be + visited** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + her** (કર્તા *she* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *her*.)

9. *Who will wear formal clothes ?* (*Who* વાળું વાક્ય)

By whom will formal clothes be worn ?

Who છે એટલે **By whom + will** (*formal clothes* કર્મ છે.) + **been + worn** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત).

10. *What shall I prepare for the party ?* (*What* વાળું વાક્ય)

What will be prepared by me for the party ?

What વાળું વાક્ય છે એટલે કર્મ ના હોય. **What + will + be** + **prepared** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + me** (કર્તા *I* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *me*)

11. *Why will he sell those chairs ?* (*Where* વાળું વાક્ય)

Why will those chairs be sold by him ?

Why + will (*those chairs* કર્મ છે) + **be + sold** (ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત) + **by + him** (કર્તા *he* નું કર્મ વિભક્તિ રૂપ *him*)

Indefinite Pronouns

- **Indefinite Pronouns** એટલે અચોક્કસ સર્વનામો છે.
- **Indefinite Pronouns** નો ઉપયોગ કોઈ એક વ્યક્તિ, વસ્તુ અથવા બધી વ્યક્તિઓ અને વસ્તુઓ દર્શાવવા થાય છે.
- નીચે દરેક **Indefinite Pronouns** નો મતલબ અને વિસ્તારપૂર્વક સમજૂતી આપેલ છે.

1. **All** - બધી વ્યક્તિઓ અથવા બધી વસ્તુઓ (બહુવચન)

2. Many - ઘણી વ્યક્તિઓ અથવા ઘણી વસ્તુઓ (બહુવચન)

3. Some - થોડું અથવા થોડાક (બહુવચન)

- ગણી શકાય તેવી વસ્તુ અથવા વ્યક્તિ (બહુવચન)
- પ્રવાહી હોય (એકવચન)

4. Someone / Somebody - કોઈપણ વ્યક્તિ / કોઈક (એકવચન)

5. Something - કંઈક (હકાર) (એકવચન)

6. Much - ઘણું. - ના ગણી શકાય એવી વસ્તુઓ અથવા પ્રવાહી માટે. (એકવચન)

7. Nobody / No one / None - કોઈ નહીં. (ફક્ત વ્યક્તિ માટે) (એકવચન)

8. Nothing - કંઈ જ નહીં (ફક્ત વસ્તુઓ માટે.) (એકવચન)

9. Each - દરેક

10. Any - ગમે તે, કોઈ અથવા કાઈ - પ્રશ્નાર્થી અને નકાર વાક્યો માટે જ. (એકવચન)

11. Anybody / Anyone - કોઈ એક વ્યક્તિ - ફક્ત વ્યક્તિ માટે (એકવચન)

12. Anything - કોઈ એક વસ્તુ - ફક્ત વસ્તુ માટે જ (એકવચન)

13. Everybody / Everyone - દરેક વ્યક્તિ - ફક્ત વ્યક્તિ માટે (એકવચન)

14. Everything - દરેક વસ્તુ - ફક્ત વસ્તુ માટે જ (એકવચન)

15. The other - બાકીની વસ્તુ અથવા બાકીની વ્યક્તિ (એકવચન)

16. The others - બાકીની વસ્તુઓ અથવા બાકીની વ્યક્તિઓ (બહુવચન)

17. Little - ભાગ્યે જ કંઈ અથવા નહીં (નકાર) ફક્ત વસ્તુઓ માટે જ (એકવચન)

- મોટા ભાગે પ્રવાહી માટે વપરાય.

18. A little - થોડું (હકાર) ફક્ત વસ્તુ માટે જ (એકવચન)

- મોટા ભાગે પ્રવાહી માટે વપરાય.

19. Few - ભાગ્યે જ કોઈ (નકાર) વ્યક્તિઓ અને ગણી શકાય તેવી વસ્તુઓ માટે.

જેમ કે, ૧ ખુરશી, ૨ કેળાં, ૧૦ કેલેન્ડર, ૧૨ મોબાઈલ વગેરે.

20. A few - થોડી (હકાર) વ્યક્તિઓ અને ગણી શકાય તેવી વસ્તુઓ માટે.

જેમકે, ૧ ખુરશી, ૨ કેળાં, ૧૦ કેલેન્ડર, ૧૨ મોબાઈલ વગેરે.

Examples :

1. **All boys are clever.**
All છે એટલે બહુવચન (*boys + are*)
2. **There are many tables.**
Many છે એટલે બહુવચન (*tables + are*)
3. **Some people are talking with the magician.**
Some છે એટલે બહુવચન (*people + are*)
4. **Someone is laughing at Dhara.**
Someone છે એટલે એકવચન (*is*)
5. **Sunita wastes much water.**
Much છે એટલે એકવચન
6. **Nobody wants to drink water.**
Nobody છે એટલે એકવચન (*wants*)
7. **None of these boys is tall and strong.**
None છે એટલે એકવચન (*is*)
8. **There is nothing in my wallet.**
Nothing છે એટલે એકવચન (*is*)

9. ***Each animal has four legs.***
Each છે એટલે એકવચન (***has***)
10. ***Is there any water in the jug ?***
Any છે એટલે એકવચન (***Is*** + પ્રશ્નાર્થ)
11. ***Karan did not get any mark in English.***
Any છે એટલે એકવચન (***mark*** + નકાર)
12. ***Has he anything to eat ?***
Anything છે એટલે એકવચન (***has*** + પ્રશ્નાર્થ)
13. ***Has anyone got money ?***
Anyone છે એટલે એકવચન (***has*** + નકાર)
14. ***I do not write anything.***
Anything છે એટલે એકવચન (***not*** - નકાર)
15. ***Everyone is present in the library.***
Everyone છે એટલે એકવચન (***is***)
16. ***Everything is beautiful.***
Everything છે એટલે એકવચન (***is***)
17. ***I have two apples. One is good and the other is bad.***
The other છે એટલે એકવચન (***is***)
18. ***There are many books in the library. Some are novels and the others are story books.***
The others છે એટલે બહુવચન (***are***)
19. ***I have little juice to drink.***
Little છે એટલે નકાર.

20. *There is a little water in the glass.*

A little છે એટલે હકાર.

21. *Few students like English.*

Few છે એટલે નકાર.

22. *There are a few apples in the basket.*

A few છે એટલે હકાર.

To be able to

→ *To be able to* એટલે “સમર્થ હોવું” એવો અર્થ થાય છે.

શક્તિ અથવા ક્ષમતા દર્શાવવા માટે તેનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

→ *Can / Could* ના બદલે *To be able to* નો ઉપયોગ કરી શકાય છે.

→ *Can* - વર્તમાનકાળ

→ *Could* - ભૂતકાળ

→ *To be* એટલે *am/is/are/was/were*.

To be able to કઈ રીતે બને ?

→ કર્તા + *am/is/are/was/were* + *able to* +

ક્રિયાપદનું *To* વિનાનું રૂપ (*play/go*) + અન્ય શબ્દો

કર્તા	વર્તમાનકાળ	ભૂતકાળ
<i>I</i>	<i>am</i>	<i>was</i>
<i>He</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>was</i>
<i>She</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>was</i>
<i>It</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>was</i>
<i>You</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>were</i>
<i>They</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>were</i>
<i>We</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>were</i>
એકવચન કર્તા	<i>is</i>	<i>was</i>
બહુવચન કર્તા	<i>are</i>	<i>were</i>

Examples :

1. *He can run fast.*

He is able to run fast.

કર્તા *He* છે એટલે *is* + *able to* + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*run*)

2. *She can cook many types of food.*

She is able to cook many types of food.

કર્તા *She* છે એટલે *is* + *able to* + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*cook*)

3. *We could attend that birthday party.*

We were able to attend that birthday party.

કર્તા *We* છે એટલે *were* (*could* એટલે ભૂતકાળ) + *able to* + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*attend*)

4. *They can write essays and notes.*

They are able to write essays and notes.

કર્તા *They* છે એટલે *are* + *able to* + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*write*)

5. *Mr. Kaushal can teach English easily.*

Mr. Kaushal is able to teach English easily.

કર્તા *Mr. Kaushal* છે એટલે *is* + *able to* + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*teach*)

6. *Anil could sing beautiful songs.*

Anil was able to sing beautiful songs.

કર્તા **Anil** છે એટલે **was** (*could* એટલે ભૂતકાળ) + **able to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*sing*)

7. *Sunita can play chess very well.*

Sunita is able to play chess very well.

કર્તા **Sunita** છે એટલે **is** + **able to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*play*)

8. *Kishan can solve difficult sums.*

Kishan is able to solve difficult sums.

કર્તા **Kishan** છે એટલે **is** + **able to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*solve*)

9. *I can buy mobile and computer.*

I am able to buy mobile and computer.

કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **am** + **able to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*buy*)

10. *Virat Kohli can make double century in the cricket.*

Virat kohli is able to make double century in the cricket.

કર્તા **Virat Kohli** છે એટલે **is** + **able to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (*make*)

To be going to

→ ***To be going to*** નો ઉપયોગ ભવિષ્યની ક્રિયાઓ માટે થાય છે.

→ ***Shall / Will*** ના બદલે ***To be going to*** નો ઉપયોગ કરી શકાય છે.

→ યાદ રાખો કે ***To be going to*** નો અર્થ “જવું” એવો થતો નથી.

→ ***To be*** એટલે ***am/is/are/was/were***.

To be going to કઈ રીતે બને ?

93

→ કર્તા + **am/is/are/was/were** + **going to** +
ક્રિયાપદનું **To** વિનાનું રૂપ (**play/go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

કર્તા	વર્તમાનકાળ	ભૂતકાળ
I	am	was
He	is	was
She	is	was
It	is	was
You	are	were
They	are	were
We	are	were
એકવચન કર્તા	is	was
બહુવચન કર્તા	are	were

Examples :

- He will buy new mobile tomorrow.**
He is going to buy new mobile tomorrow.
કર્તા **He** છે એટલે **is** + **going to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (**buy**)
- I shall visit Baroda nex week.**
I am going to visit Baroda next week.
કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **am** + **going to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (**visit**)
- Sunita will sing a poem next Thursday.**
Sunita is going to sing a poem next Thursday.
કર્તા **Sunita** છે એટલે **is** + **going to** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (**sing**)

4. ***Kapil will come to my home in the evening.***
Kapil is going to come to my home in the evening.
 કતર્લ ***Kapil*** છે એટલે ***is + going to*** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (***come***)
5. ***They will play cricket next month.***
They are going to play cricket next month.
 કતર્લ ***They*** છે એટલે ***are + going to*** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (***play***)
6. ***Mr. Patel would attend that party but he could not.***
Mr. Patel was going to attend that party but he could not.
 કતર્લ ***Mr. Patel*** છે એટલે ***was*** (***would*** એટલે ભૂતકાળ) + ***going to*** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (***attend***)
7. ***Government will start a new road project next year.***
Government is going to start a new road project next year.
 કતર્લ ***Government*** છે એટલે ***is + going to*** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (***start***)
8. ***Anil and Anita sang a song but people did not like it.***
Anil and Anita were going to sing a song but people did not like it.
 કતર્લ ***Anil and Anita*** છે એટલે ***were*** (***sang*** / ***did*** ભૂતકાળ) + ***going to*** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (***sing***)
9. ***You will tell stories to children next week.***
You are going to tell stories to children next week.
 કતર્લ ***you*** છે એટલે ***are + going to*** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (***tell***)
10. ***Kishan will get admission in this college.***
Kishan is going to get admission in this college.
 કતર્લ ***Kishan*** છે એટલે ***is + going to*** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ (***get***)

•———— Either....or —————•

- **Either....or** એટલે બેમાંથી કોઈ એક એવો અર્થ થાય છે.
- **Either....or** નો ઉપયોગ બેમાંથી કોઈ એક વિકલ્પની પસંદગી માટે થાય છે.
- કોઈ બે કર્તા, કર્મ, વિશેષણ, ક્રિયાવિશેષણ, નામ અથવા ક્રિયાપદોમાંથી કોઈ એક ની પસંદગી માટે **Either....or** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Either....or** વાળું વાક્ય એકવચનમાં જ હોય એટલે **is/was/has** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Either....or** વાળા વાક્યમાં જો **do/does/did** હોય તો તે નીકળી જાય અને ક્રિયાપદને **s/es** અથવા ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકાળનું **form** મુકાય છે.

Examples :

1. **He works in the hospital. He works in the office.**
He works either in the hospital or the office.
બે અલગ અલગ નામ છે (**hospital / office**) એટલે
either in the hospital or the office અને બાકીનું વાક્ય એમનું એમ જ.
2. **Naresh plays football. Ramesh plays football.**
Either Naresh or Ramesh plays football.
બે અલગ અલગ કર્તા છે (**Naresh/Ramesh**) એટલે
either Naresh or Ramesh અને બાકીનું વાક્ય એમનું એમ જ.

3. **Hardik is intelligent. Hardik is clever.**

Hardik is either intelligent or clever.

બે અલગ અલગ વિશેષણ છે (**intelligent / clever**) એટલે
either intelligent or clever અને બાકીનું વાક્ય એમનું એમ જ.

4. **She can walk. She can run.**

She can either walk or run.

બે અલગ અલગ ક્રિયાપદ છે (**walk / run**) એટલે
either walk or run અને બાકીનું વાક્ય એમનું એમ જ.

5. **They often go to Baroda. They often go to Rajkot.**

They often go either to Baroda or to Rajkot.

બે અલગ અલગ નામ / જગ્યા છે (**Baroda / Rajkot.**) એટલે
either to Baroda or to Rajkot અને બાકીનું વાક્ય એમનું એમ જ.

- **Neither....nor** એટલે બે માંથી કોઈ નહીં એવો થાય છે. (નકાર/ના પાડવા)
- **Neither....nor** વાળું વાક્ય એકવચનમાં જ હોય એટલે **is/was/has** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Neither....nor** વાળા વાક્યમાં જો **do/does/did/not/never** અથવા કોઈ નકાર સૂચક શબ્દ હોય તો તે નીકળી જાય અને ક્રિયાપદને **s/es** અથવા ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકાળનું **form** મૂકાય છે.

Examples :

1. **He is not a doctor. He is not an engineer.
He is neither a doctor nor an engineer.**
2. **Kavita does not like cricket. Kamal does not like cricket.
Neither Kavita nor Kamal likes cricket.**
3. **Anil never eats apples. Sunil never eats apples.
Neither Anil nor Sunil eats apples.**
4. **Sunita did not listen songs. She did not watch TV.
Sunita neither listened songs nor watched TV.**
5. **My mother can not write. She can not read.
My mother can neither write nor read.**

Direct - Indirect Speech

98

- **Direct Speech** - પ્રત્યક્ષ વાતચીત જેમ કે
Amit says, "This car is very beautiful."
 - **Direct Speech** માં વાત કહેનારના મૂળ શબ્દોમાં જ રજૂ કરવામાં આવે છે અને અવતરણ ચિહ્નમાં મૂકવામાં આવે છે.
- **Indirect Speech** - પરોક્ષ વાતચીત જેમ કે
Amit says that this car is very beautiful.
 - **Indirect Speech** માં વાત ઘણા ફેરફારો સાથે રજૂ કરવામાં આવે છે અને અવતરણ ચિહ્ન મૂકવામાં આવતા નથી.
- **Direct Speech** ના વાક્યને **Indirect Speech** માં ફેરવતા ઘણા બધા ફેરફારો કરવા પડે છે. વાક્યમાં થતાં ફેરફારોને બે રીતમાં વહેંચી શકાય છે. જેની વિસ્તૃત માહિતી નીચે આપેલ છે.
- વાક્યમાં ફક્ત બોલનાર જ હોય. ફક્ત (**Say, says, said** અને **will say**) વાળા વાક્યો. જેમ કે,
 - ✓ *Ramesh says, "I am a good cricket player."*
 - ✓ *Anita said, "Kavita is not free now."*
 - ✓ *Kanu will say, "This book is very good."*ઉપરના તમામ વાક્યોમાં **says, said** અને **will say** નો ઉપયોગ થયો છે તેથી કહી શકાય કે આ વાક્યોમાં ફક્ત બોલનાર જ છે.
- વાક્યમાં બોલનાર અને સાંભળનાર બંને હોય. (**Say to, says to, said to** અને **will say to**) વાળા વાક્યો. જેમ કે,
 - ✓ *My father says to me, "I am a good boy."*
 - ✓ *Kavya said to Kavita, "She is very tired today."*
 - ✓ *We say to Amit, "You are very careless."*
 - ✓ *Parth will say to Pankti, "You will come with me."*

ઉપરના તમામ વાક્યોમાં **Say to, says to, said to** અને **will say to** નો ઉપયોગ થયો છે તેથી કહી શકાય કે આ વાક્યોમાં બોલનાર અને સાંભળનાર બંને છે.

Direct Speech માંથી **Indirect Speech** બનાવતા કર્તામાં થતાં ફેરફારો

- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરના વાક્યનાં કર્તાના ફેરફારો વાક્યના બોલનાર અને સાંભળનાર વ્યક્તિઓ પ્રમાણે થાય છે.

બોલનાર કર્તા (અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદર)	સાંભળનાર કર્તા (અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદર)	Indirect Speech માં થતાં ફેરફાર
I (હું)	you (એકવચન)	he/she/it (તે)
we (અમે)	you (બહુવચન)	they (તેઓ)
me (મને)	you (એકવચન)	him/her/it (તેને)
us (અમને)	you (બહુવચન)	them (તેઓને, તેમને)
my (મારું, મારી, મારા, મારો)	your (એકવચન)	his/her/its (તેનું, તેની, તેના, તેનો)
our (અમારું, અમારી, અમારા, અમારો)	your (બહુવચન)	their (તેઓનું, તેઓની, તેઓના, તેઓનો)
mine (મારું, મારી, મારા, મારો)	yours (એકવચન)	his/her/its (તેનું, તેની, તેના, તેનો)
ours (અમારું, અમારી, અમારા, અમારો)	yours (બહુવચન)	theirs (તેઓનું, તેઓની, તેઓના, તેઓનો)
myself (મારી જાતે)	yourself (એકવચન)	himself/herself/itself (તેની જાતે)
ourselves (અમારી જાતે)	yourselves (બહુવચન)	themselves (તેઓની જાતે)

- વાક્યમાં ફક્ત બોલનાર હોય ત્યારે થતાં ફેરફારો
► વર્તમાનકાળ / ભવિષ્યકાળ : (**Say, says, will say**)

1. **Say** નું **Say, Says** નું **Says** અને **Will say** નું **Will say** રાખવું.
2. અવતરણ ચિહ્ન કાઢી નાખવા અને સંયોજક તરીકે **"That"** નો ઉપયોગ કરો.
3. કર્તાના સ્થાને જે સર્વનામોનો ઉપયોગ થયો હોય તેમાં ફેરફાર કરવો
 - ✓ **Kapil says, "I am a lazy boy."**
કપિલ કહે છે, "હું આળસુ છોકરો છું." - **Direct**
 - ✓ **Kapil says that he is a lazy boy.**
કપિલ કહે છે કે તે આળસુ છોકરો છે. - **Indirect**
 - **says** નું **says**
 - અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.

- *I* નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે બોલનાર કપિલ છે અને તે **he** માં આવે.
He મૂક્યું એટલે **is** મૂકવું પડે.. (**am** નું **is** થઈ ગયું.)

✓ **Kavita will say, "I will always help."**
કવિતા કહેશે, "હું હંમેશા મદદ કરીશ." - **Direct**

✓ **Kavita will say that she will always help.**
કવિતા કહેશે કે તે હંમેશા મદદ કરશે. - **Indirect**

- **will say** નું **will say**
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- *I* નું **she** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે બોલનાર કવિતા છે અને તે **she** માં આવે.
she મૂક્યું એટલે **will** મૂકવું પડે. (**will** નું **will**)

✓ **May father says, "He is an honest person."**
મારા પિતા કહે છે, "તે પ્રમાણિક વ્યક્તિ છે." - **Direct**

✓ **My father says that he is an honest person.**
માતા પિતા કહે છે કે તે પ્રમાણિક વ્યક્તિ છે. - **Indirect**

- **says** નું **says**
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **He** નું **he** જ રહ્યું કારણ કે બોલનાર મારા પિતા છે અને પિતા **he** માં આવે.
He મૂક્યું એટલે **is** મૂકવું પડે. (**is** નું **is**)

► ભૂતકાળ (**Said**)

1. **Said** નું **Said** રાખવું.
2. અવતરણ ચિહ્ન કાઢી નાખવા અને સંયોજક તરીકે **"That"** નો ઉપયોગ કરો.
3. અવતરણ ચિહ્ન ની અંદરના વાક્યમાં વર્તમાનકાળ/ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ અને ભૂતકાળનો પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.
4. કર્તાના સ્થાને જે સર્વનામોનો ઉપયોગ થયો હોય તેમાં ફેરફાર કરવો.

✓ **My mother said, "I am a good cook."**

મારી મમ્મીએ કહ્યું હતું “હું સારી કૂક છું.” - **Direct**

✓ **My mother said that she was a good cook.**

મારી મમ્મીએ કહ્યું હતું કે તે સારી કૂક હતી. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું Said**

• અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.

• **I** નું **she** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે બોલનાર મમ્મી છે અને તે **she** માં આવે.

She મૂક્યું એટલે **was** મૂકવું પડે. (**am** નું **was** કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.)

✓ **Kanu said, "I am very tired today."**

કનુએ કહ્યું હતું, “હું આજે ખૂબ જ થાકી ગયો છું.” - **Direct**

✓ **Kanu said that he was very tired that day.**

કનુએ કહ્યું હતું કે તે એ દિવસે ખૂબ જ થાકી ગયો હતો. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું Said**

• અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.

• **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે બોલનાર કનુ છે અને તે **he** માં આવે.

He મૂક્યું એટલે **was** મૂકવું પડે. (**am** નું **was** કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.)

• **Today** નું **that day** થઈ જાય.

✓ **Parth said, "I will come."**

પાર્થે કહ્યું હતું, “હું તારી સાથે આવીશ.” - **Direct**

✓ **Parth said that he would come.**

પાર્થે કહ્યું હતું કે તે મારી સાથે આવશે. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું Said**

• અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.

• **I** નું **he** થાય કારણ કે બોલનાર પાર્થ છે અને તે **he** માં આવે.

(**will** નું **would** કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી ભવિષ્યકાળનો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.)

✓ **Harsh said, "I went to see a movie last night."**

હર્ષે કહ્યું હતું, "હું ગઈ રાતે મૂવી જોવા ગયો હતો." - **Direct**

✓ **Harsh said that he had gone to see a movie the previous night.**

હર્ષે કહ્યું હતું કે તે ગઈરાતે મૂવી જોવા ગયો હતો. - **Indirect**

● **Said નું Said**

● અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.

● **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે બોલનાર હર્ષ છે અને તે **he** માં આવે.

(**went** નું **had gone** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી ભૂતકાળનો પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.)

● **Last night** નું **the previous night**.

➤ વાક્યમાં જ્યારે બોલનાર અને સાંભળનાર બંને હોય ત્યારે થતાં ફેરફારો :

➤ વર્તમાનકાળ / ભવિષ્યકાળ : (**Say to, says to, will say to**)

1. **Say to** નું **tell**, **says to** નું **tells** અને **will say to** નું **will tell** થાય.

2. અવતરણ ચિહ્ન કાઢી નાખવા અને સંયોજક તરીકે "**that**" નો ઉપયોગ કરો.

3. કર્તાના સ્થાને જે સર્વનામોનો ઉપયોગ થયો હોય તેમાં ફેરફાર કરવો.

✓ **Raju says to Ravi, "You are a clever boy."**

રાજુ રવિને કહે છે, "તું હોશિયાર છોકરો છે." - **Direct**

✓ **Raju tells Ravi that he is a clever boy.**

રાજુ રવિને કહે છે કે તે હોશિયાર છોકરો છે. - **Indirect**

● **Says to** નું **tells**

● અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.

● **You** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે રવિ છે જે **he** માં આવે. **He** મૂક્યું એટલે **is** મૂકવું પડે. (**are** નું **is** થઈ ગયું.)

✓ **My teacher says to me, "You will get good marks in Science."**

મારા શિક્ષક મને કહે છે, "હું વિજ્ઞાનમાં સારા માર્ક્સ મેળવીશ." - **Direct**

✓ **My teacher tells me that I will get good marks in Science.**

મારા શિક્ષક મને કહે છે કે હું વિજ્ઞાનમાં સારા માર્ક્સ મેળવીશ. - **Indirect**

- **Says to નું tells**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **You** નું **I** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે **me** (મને) છે જે **I** (હું) ના આવે. (**will** નું **will**)

✓ **The teacher says to Ankita, "You are a mischievous student."**

શિક્ષક અંકિતને કહે છે, "તું તોફાની વિદ્યાર્થી છે." - **Direct**

✓ **The teacher tells Ankita that she is a mischievous student.**

શિક્ષક અંકિતને કહે છે કે તે તોફાની વિદ્યાર્થી છે. - **Indirect**

- **Says to નું tells**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **You** નું **she** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે અંકિતા છે જે **she** માં આવે. **She** મૂક્યું એટલે **is** મૂકવું પડે. (**are** નું **is** થઈ ગયું.)

✓ **Reena says to Urvi, "I always feel hungry."**

રીના ઉર્વીને કહે છે, "મને હંમેશા ભૂખ લાગે છે." - **Direct**

✓ **Reena tells Urvi that she always feels hungry.**

રીના ઉર્વીને કહે છે કે તેને હંમેશા ભૂખ લાગે છે. - **Indirect**

- **Says to નું tells**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **I** નું **she** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **I** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે રીના છે જે **she** માં આવે. (**feel** નું **feels** થઈ ગયું.)

► ભૂતકાળ (**Said**)

1. **Said** નું **Said** રાખવું.
2. અવતરણ ચિહ્ન કાઢી નાખવા અને સંયોજક તરીકે **"That"** નો ઉપયોગ કરો.
3. અવતરણ ચિહ્ન ની અંદરના વાક્યમાં વર્તમાનકાળ/ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ અને ભૂતકાળનો પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.

Direct speech	Indirect speech
વર્તમાનકાળ (<i>play, go</i>)	ભૂતકાળ (<i>played, went</i>)
ભૂતકાળ (<i>played, went</i>)	પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ (<i>had played, had gone</i>)
<i>am / is / are</i>	<i>was / were</i>
<i>have / has</i>	<i>had</i>
<i>shall / will</i>	<i>would</i>
<i>do / does</i>	<i>did</i>
<i>Did</i>	<i>had + past participle</i> (ભૂતકૃદંત)
<i>Can</i>	<i>could</i>
<i>May</i>	<i>might</i>
<i>am/is/are + ing (is going)</i>	<i>was/were + ing (was going)</i>

Direct speech	Indirect speech
<i>This</i>	<i>that</i>
<i>These</i>	<i>those</i>
<i>Now</i>	<i>then</i>
<i>Here</i>	<i>there</i>
<i>Today</i>	<i>that day</i>
<i>Tonight</i>	<i>that night</i>
<i>Ago</i>	<i>before</i>
<i>Tomorrow</i>	<i>the next day / the following day</i>
<i>Yesterday</i>	<i>the previous day / the day before</i>
<i>Come</i>	<i>go</i>
<i>last week/month/year</i>	<i>the previous week/month/year</i>
<i>next week/month/year</i>	<i>the following week/month/year</i>

4. કર્તાના સ્થાને જે સર્વનામોનો ઉપયોગ થયો હોય તેમાં ફેરફાર કરવો.

- ✓ *The servant said to his master, "I have finished my work."*
 નોકરે તેના માલિકને કહ્યું હતું, "મેં મારુંકામ પૂરું કરી લીધું છે." - **Direct**

- ✓ **The servant told his master that he had finished his work.**
નોકરે માલિકને કહ્યું હતું કે તેણે તેનું કામ પતાવી લીધું હતું. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **I** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે નોકર છે જે **he** માં આવે.
- **Have finished** નું **had finished** કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ નો પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.

- ✓ **Ravi said to Ramesh, "You are not happy here."**

રવિએ રમેશને કહ્યું હતું, "તું અહીંયા ખુશ નથી." - **Direct**

- ✓ **Ravi told Ramesh that he was not happy there.**

રવિએ રમેશને કહ્યું હતું કે તે ત્યાં ખુશ નથી. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **You** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે રમેશ છે જે **he** માં આવે. **He** મૂક્યું એટલે **was** (**you are** નું **he was**)
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. **Here** નું **there**.

- ✓ **My parents said to me, "We shall return early."**

મારા માતાપિતાએ મને કહ્યું હતું, "અમે વહેલા પાછા આવીશું." - **Direct**

- ✓ **My parents told me that they should return early.**

મારા માતાપિતાએ મને કહ્યું હતું કે તેઓ વહેલા પાછા આવશે. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **We** નું **they** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **we** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે માતાપિતા છે જે **they** માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે. તેથી સાદા ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **shall** નું **should** થઈ જાય.

✓ **Amit said to Ankit, "I will help you."**

અમિતે અંકિતને કહ્યું હતું, "હું તારી મદદ કરીશ." - **Direct**

✓ **Amit told Ankit that he would help him.**

અમિતે અંકિતને કહ્યું હતું કે તે તેને મદદ કરશે. - **Indirect**

● **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **I** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે અમિત છે જે **he** માં આવે.
You નું **him** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **You** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે અંકિત છે
- જે **he** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી તેને મદદ એવું થાય તેથી **help him** કરવું પડે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી સાદા ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **will** નું **would** થઈ જાય.

✓ **My son said to me, "I can do it myself."**

મારા પુત્રએ મને કહ્યું હતું, "હું તે મારી જાતે કરી શકું છું." - **Direct**

✓ **My son told me that he could do it himself.**

મારા પુત્રએ મને કહ્યું હતું કે તેની જાતે કરી શકતો હતો. - **Indirect**

● **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **I** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે પુત્ર છે જે **he** માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **can** નું **could** થઈ જાય.

✓ **Gopal said to Girish, "I will reach Bombay tomorrow."**

ગોપાલે ગીરીશને કહ્યું હતું, "હું આવતીકાલે બોમ્બે પહોંચીશ." - **Direct**

✓ **Gopal told Girish that he would reach Bombay the next day.**

ગોપાલે ગીરીશને કહ્યું હતું કે તે આવતીકાલે બોમ્બે પહોંચશે. - **Indirect**

● **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **I** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે ગોપાલ છે જે **he** માં આવે.

- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી સાદા ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **will** નું **would** થઈ જાય.
- **Tomorrow** નું **the next day** થઈ જાય.

✓ **The English teacher said to the pupils, "I shall teach you English.**
અંગ્રેજી શિક્ષકે વિદ્યાર્થીઓને કહ્યું હતું, “હું તમને અંગ્રેજી શીખવીશ.” - **Direct**

✓ **The English teacher told the pupils that he would teach them English.**
અંગ્રેજી શિક્ષકે વિદ્યાર્થીઓને કહ્યું હતું કે તે તમને અંગ્રેજી શીખવશે. - **Indirect**

● **Said** નું **told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **I** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે અંગ્રેજી શિક્ષક છે જે **he** માં આવે.
- **You** નું **them** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે વિદ્યાર્થીઓ છે જે **They** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેમને શીખવશે એવું થાય તેથી **teach them** કરવું પડે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી સાદા ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **shall** નું **would** થઈ જાય.

✓ **Harsh said to Hetal, "You will get your bag tomorrow.**
હર્ષે હેતલને કહ્યું હતું, “તને તારી બેગ આવતીકાલે મળશે.” - **Direct**

✓ **Harsh told Hetal that she would get her bag the next day.**
હર્ષે હેતલને કહ્યું હતું કે તેને તેની બેગ આવતીકાલે મળશે. - **Indirect**

● **Said** નું **told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- **You** નું **her** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **your** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે હેતલ છે જે **she** માં આવે.
- **Your** નું **her** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **your** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે હેતલ છે જે **she** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેની બેગ એવું થાય તેથી **her beg** કરવું પડે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી સાદા ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **will** નું **would** થઈ જાય.
- **Tomorrow** નું **the next day** થઈ જાય.

✓ *She said to me, "I purchased new toys from market yesterday."* તેણે મને કહ્યું હતું, "મેં ગઈકાલે બજારમાંથી નવા રમકડાં ખરીદ્યા હતા." - **Direct**

✓ *She told me that she had purchased new toys from market the previous day.* તેણે મને કહ્યું હતું કે તેણે ગઈકાલે બજારમાંથી નવા રમકડાં ખરીદ્યા હતા. - **Indirect**

● **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- *I* નું *she* થઈ ગયું કારણ કે *I* એટલે બોલનાર અને તે *she* છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી ભૂતકાળ નો પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **purchased નું had purchased** થઈ જાય.
- **Yesterday નું the previous day** થઈ જાય.

✓ *Teacher said to Darshan, "You cannot go until you finish homework."* શિક્ષકે દર્શનને કહ્યું હતું, "જ્યાં સુધી તું ગૃહકાર્ય પૂરું નહીં કરું ત્યાં સુધી તું જઈ શકીશ નહીં." - **Direct**

✓ *Teacher told Darshan that he could not go until he finished homework.* શિક્ષકે દર્શનને કહ્યું હતું કે જ્યાં સુધી તે પૂરું નહીં કરે ત્યાં સુધી તે જઈ શકતો ન હતો. - **Indirect**

● **Said નું told**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **that**.
- *You* નું *he* થઈ ગયું કારણ કે *you* એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે દર્શન છે જે *he* માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય એટલે **can not નું could not** અને **finish નું finished** થઈ જાય.

પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્યો : (**Said to**)

➤ જે વાક્યો **am / is / are / was / were / shall / will / have / has / had / should / could / can / would / may / might / do / does / did / what / when / why / which / who / whom / whose** થી શરૂ થતાં હોય જેમ કે :

✓ *Varun said to Vrunda, "Do you always help me ?"*

✓ *Karuna said to me, "Whose pen is this ?"*

✓ *She said to me, "Am I hungry ?"*

- ✓ *The old lady said to me, "Can you help me ?"*
- ✓ *Sarita said to Samir, "Will you give me your book ?"*
- ✓ *Sunil said to Sunita, "Where were you yesterday ?"*

► પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્યોને **Direct speech** માંથી **Indirect speech** ફેરવતાં થતાં ફેરફારો.

1. **Said** નું **asked** રાખવું.
2. અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરના વાક્યની શરૂઆત **am / is / are / was / were / shall / will / have / has / had / should / could / can / would / may / might / do / does / did** સંયોજક તરીકે **"If"** નો ઉપયોગ કરો.
3. અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરના વાક્યની શરૂઆત **"Wh Question"** (**what / when / why / which / who / whom / whose**) સંયોજક તરીકે વાક્યમાં આપેલા **"Wh Question"** નો ઉપયોગ કરો.
4. પ્રશ્નાર્થ અને **Wh Question** વાક્યને વિધાન વાક્યમાં ફેરવો. જેમ કે :
 - ✓ **"Will you help me ?"**
 - **You will help me.**
 - ✓ **"Do they come regularly ?"**
 - **They come regularly.**
 - ✓ **"Does he work hard ?"**
 - **He works hard.**
 - ✓ **"Are you playing cricket ?"**
 - **You are playing cricket.**
 - ✓ **"Did Amit buy the computer yesterday ?"**
 - **Amit bought the computer yesterday.**
5. અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરના વાક્યમાં વર્તમાનકાળ / ભવિષ્યકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ અને ભૂતકાળ નો પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય.
6. કર્તાના સ્થાને જે સર્વનામોનો ઉપયોગ થયો હોય તેમાં ફેરફાર કરવો.
 - ✓ **Binita said to Rahul, "Have you eaten some chocolates today ?"**
બિનિતાએ રાહુલને કહ્યું હતું, "તે આજે થોડીક ચોકલેટ ખાધી છે ?" - **Direct**

✓ **Binita asked Rahul if he had eaten some chocolates that day.** બિનિતાએ રાહુલને કહ્યું હતું કે તેણે તે દિવસે થોડીક ચોકલેટ ખાધી હતી. - **Indirect**

• **Said to નું asked**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **If**. (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું **have** વાક્યથી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **You** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે રાહુલ જે **he** માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ નો પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**have** નું **had**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**have you eaten** નું **he had eaten**)

✓ **Karan said to Kavita, "Where do you live ?"** કરને કવિતાને કહ્યું હતું, "તું ક્યાં રહે છે ?" - **Direct**

✓ **Karan asked Kavita where she lived.** કરને કવિતાને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તે ક્યા રહે છે. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું asked**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **Where**. (**Wh question** વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય **where** થી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **You** નું **she** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે કવિતા છે જે **she** માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**Do** નીકળી જાય **live** નું **lived**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**do you live** નું **she lived**)

✓ **Dinesh said to Dipal, "What have you purchased from the market ?"** દિનેશે દિપલને કહ્યું હતું, "તે બજારમાંથી શું ખરીદ્યું ?" - **Direct**

✓ **Dinesh asked Dipal what she had purchased from the market.** દિનેશે દિપલને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તેણે બજારમાંથી શું ખરીદ્યું હતું. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું asked**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **What**.

(**Wh question** વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય **what** થી શરૂ થયું છે.

- **You** નું **she** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે દિપલ છે જે **she** માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ નો પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**have purchased** નું **had purchased**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**have purchased** નું **she had purchased**)

✓ **The teacher said to Harsh, "Are you a cricket player ?**

શિક્ષકે હર્ષને કહ્યું હતું, “શું તું ક્રિકેટ ખેલાડી છે ?” - **Direct**

✓ **The teacher asked Harsh if he was a cricket player.**

શિક્ષકે હર્ષને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તે ક્રિકેટ ખેલાડી છે. - **Indirect**

• **Said** નું **asked**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **If**.
(પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું **are** વાક્યથી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **You** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે હર્ષ છે જે **he** માં આવે અને **he** મૂક્યું એટલે **was**.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે. તેથી વર્તમાનકાળનો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**are** નું **was**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**are you** નું **he was**)

✓ **The girl said to her uncle, "Can you solve this puzzle ?**

છોકરીએ તેના કાકાને કહ્યું હતું, “શું તમે આ સમસ્યાને ઉકેલી શકશો ?” - **Direct**

✓ **The girl asked her uncle if he could solve that puzzle.**

છોકરીએ તેના કાકાને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તે તે સમસ્યાને ઉકેલી શકતા હતા. - **Indirect**

• **Said** નું **asked**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **If**.
(પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું **can** વાક્ય થી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **You** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે કાકા છે જે **he** માં આવે.

- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**can** નું **could**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**can you** નું **he could**)

✓ **Jitu said to Jinal, "Where is my new magazine ?**

જીતુએ જિનલને કહ્યું હતું, “મારું નવું સામયિક ક્યાં છે ?” - **Direct**

✓ **Jitu asked Jinal where his new magazine was.**

જીતુએ જિનલને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તેનું નવું સામયિક ક્યાં છે. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું asked**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **Where**.
(**Wh question** વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય **where** થી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **My** નું **his** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **my** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે જીતુ છે જે **he** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેનું (**his**) સામયિક થાય.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળ નો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**is** નું **was**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**is my magazine** નું **his magazine was**)

✓ **Kaushik said to Kavya, "With whom did you visit my home?"**

કૌશિકે કાવ્યાને કહ્યું હતું, “કોની સાથે તે મારા ઘરની મુલાકાત લીધી હતી ?” - **Direct**

✓ **Kaushik asked Kavya with whom she had visited his home.**

કૌશિકે કાવ્યાને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તેણે કોની સાથે તેના ઘરની મુલાકાત લીધી હતી. - **Indirect**

• **Said નું asked**

- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **With whom**.
(**Wh question** વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય **with** થી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **You** નું **she** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે કાવ્યા છે જે **she** માં આવે.
- **My** નું થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **my** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે જીતુ છે જે **he** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેનું (**his**) ઘર થાય.

- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી ભૂતકાળ નો પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**did visit** નું **had visited**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**whom did you visit** નું **whom she had visited**)

- ✓ **My friends said to me, "Did you enjoy the party ?**
મારા મિત્રોએ મને કહ્યું હતું, “શું તે પાર્ટીની મજા માણી હતી ?” - **Direct**
- ✓ **My friends asked me if I had enjoyed the party.**
મારા મિત્રોએ મને પૂછ્યું હતું કે મેં પાર્ટીની મજા માણી હતી. - **Indirect**
- **Said** નું **asked**
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા એ તેના સ્થાને **If**. (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય **did** થી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **You** નું **I** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે **me** (હું) છે જે **I** માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી ભૂતકાળ નો પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**did enjoy** નું **had enjoyed**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**did you enjoy** નું **I had enjoyed**)

- ✓ **The father said to son, "Did I not tell you to study hard ?**
પિતાએ પુત્રને કહ્યું હતું, “શું મેં તને સખત અભ્યાસ કરવા કહ્યું ન હતું ?” - **Direct**
- ✓ **The father asked son if he had not told him to study hard.**
પિતાએ પુત્રને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તેમણે તેને સખત અભ્યાસ કરવા કહ્યું ન હતું. - **Indirect**
- **Said** નું **asked**
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **If**. (પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય **did** થી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **I** નું **he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **I** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે પિતા છે જે **He** માં આવે. **You** નું **him** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે પુત્ર છે જે **he** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેને (**him**) થાય.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી ભૂતકાળનો પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**did not tell** નું **had not told**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**did I not tell** નું **I had not told**)

✓ **Atul said to Anish, "Why are you late today ?**

અતુલે અનિશને કહ્યું હતું, “તું આજે કેમ મોડો આવ્યો છે ?” - **Direct**

✓ **Atul asked Anish why he was late that day.**

અતુલે અનિશને પૂછ્યું હતું કે તે તે દિવસે કેમ મોડો આવ્યો હતો. - **Indirect**

- **Said નું asked**
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક **Why**. (**Wh question** વાક્ય કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય **Why** થી શરૂ થયું છે.)
- **You નું he** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે અનિશ છે જે **he** માં આવે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ (**said**) છે તેથી વર્તમાનકાળનો ભૂતકાળ થઈ જાય. (**are late નું was late**)
- વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય. (**are you નું he was**)
- **Today નું that day** થઈ જાય.

આજ્ઞાર્થ વાક્યો (**Imperative sentences**) : (**Said to**)

- જે વાક્યોની અંદર આજ્ઞા, વિનંતી, સૂચન, સલાહ, હુકમ વગેરેનો અર્થ આવતો હોય તેવા વાક્યોને આજ્ઞાર્થ વાક્યો કહેવાય છે. જેમ કે :
 - ✓ **He said to his servant, "Don't waste your time."** (હુકમ)
 - ✓ **Anu said to Anil, "Please sing a song for me."** (વિનંતી)
 - ✓ **The teacher said to the student, "You should read carefully."** (સલાહ)
- આવા વાક્યો મોટાભાગે ક્રિયાપદથી શરૂ થાય છે તેથી કર્તા તરીકે નામનો ઉપયોગ થતો નથી.
- આજ્ઞાર્થ વાક્યોના બે પ્રકાર છે.
 1. હકાર વાક્યો
 2. નકાર વાક્યો

➤ નકાર વાક્યો **Don't** થી શરૂ થાય છે. જેમ કે :

✓ **Don't do this work today.**

✓ **Don't go near the river.**

➤ આજ્ઞાર્થવાક્યોને **indirect speech** માં ફેરવતા **said to** ને બદલે અલગ અલગ શબ્દોનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. વાક્યના ભાવ પ્રમાણે તે નક્કી થાય છે. નીચે તેની વિસ્તૃત માહિતી આપેલી છે.

વાક્યનોભાવ	સંયોજક
આજ્ઞા/હુકમ/આદેશ	ordered
વિનંતી	requested
સૂચન	suggested
સલાહ	advised
ચેતવણી	warned
હુકમ (ફરજદર્શક)	commanded
માંગણી	asked
સૂચના	instructed
ભાવ સ્પષ્ટ ના હોય તો	told/asked
માહિતી	informed
ધમકી	threatened

➤ વિનંતી દર્શાવતા વાક્યોને **indirect speech** માં ફેરવતા **please, kindly** જેવા શબ્દો કાઢી નાખવા.

➤ વાક્ય હકાર હોય તો સંયોજક તરીકે **"To"** નો ઉપયોગ કરવો.

➤ વાક્ય નકાર હોય તો સંયોજક તરીકે **"Not to"** નો ઉપયોગ કરવો.

➤ **Examples :**

✓ **The child said to his mother, "Please listen to me."**

બાળકે તેની માતાને કહ્યું, "મહેરબાની કરીને, મને સાંભળો." - **Direct**

✓ **The child requested his mother to listen to him.**

બાળકે તેની માતાને વિનંતી કરી હતી કે તેને સાંભળે. - **Indirect**

● **Said to** નું **requested** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં **please** છે તે વિનંતી સૂચવે છે.

● અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **to**

- **Please** નીકળી ગયું.
 - સંયોજક તરીકે **to** + ક્રિયાપદ (**Listen**) + અન્ય શબ્દો
 - **Me** નું **him** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **me** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે બાળક છે જે **he** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેને (**him**) થાય.
 - **Imperative** માં **listen** ની જગ્યાએ **Infinitive - to listen** આવે.
-
- ✓ **The English teacher said to Anil, "Don't go till 6 o'clock."**
અંગ્રેજી શિક્ષકે અનિલને કહ્યું હતું, “૬ વાગ્યા સુધી જઈશ નહીં.” - **Direct**
- ✓ **The English teacher instructed Anil not to go till 6 o'clock.**
અંગ્રેજી શિક્ષકે અનિલને ૬ વાગ્યા સુધી ના જવાની સૂચના આપી હતી. - **Indirect**
- **said to** નું **instructed** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં સૂચનાનો ભાવ છે.
 - અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **not to** (વાક્ય નકાર છે.)
 - સંયોજક તરીકે **not to** + ક્રિયાપદ (**go**) + અન્ય શબ્દો
 - **Imperative** માં **go** ની જગ્યાએ **Infinitive - to go** આવે.
-
- ✓ **The traffic police said, "Stop the car there."**
ટ્રાફિક પોલિસે કહ્યું હતું, “ગાડી ત્યાં રોકો.” - **Direct**
- ✓ **The traffic police ordered to stop the car there.**
ટ્રાફિક પોલિસે ગાડી ત્યાં રોકવાનો હુકમ કર્યો હતો. - **Indirect**
- **Said** નું **ordered** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં હુકમનો ભાવ છે.
 - અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **to**
 - સંયોજક તરીકે **to** + ક્રિયાપદ (**stop**) + અન્ય શબ્દો
 - **Imperative** માં **stop** ની જગ્યાએ **Infinitive - to stop** આવે.
-
- ✓ **Doctor said to Mr. Patel, "Take rest for two days."**
ડોક્ટરે શ્રીમાન પટેલને કહ્યું હતું, “બે દિવસ માટે આરામ કરો.” - **Direct**
- ✓ **Doctor advised Mr. Patel to take rest for two days.**
ડોક્ટરે શ્રીમાન પટેલને બે દિવસ આરામ કરવાની સલાહ આપી હતી. - **Indirect**

- **Said to** નું **advised** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં સલાહનો ભાવ છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **to**
- સંયોજક તરીકે **to** + ક્રિયાપદ (**take**) + અન્ય શબ્દો
- **Imperative** માં **take** ની જગ્યાએ **Infinitive - to take** આવે.

- ✓ **My tutor said to me, "Work hard or you will fail."**
શિક્ષકે મને કહ્યું હતું, "મહેનત કર અથવા તો તું નાપાસ થઈશ." - **Direct**
- ✓ **My tutor warned me to work hard or I would fail.**
શિક્ષકે મને ચેતવણી આપી હતી કે મહેનત કર અથવા તો હું નાપાસ થઈશ. - **Indirect**
- **Said to** નું **warned** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં ચેતવણીનો ભાવ છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **to**
- સંયોજક તરીકે **to** + ક્રિયાપદ (**work**) + અન્ય શબ્દો
- **Imperative** માં **work** ની જગ્યાએ **Infinitive - to work** આવે.

Let & Let's વાળા વાક્યો : (**Said to**)

- જે વાક્યોમાં રજા અથવા પરવાનગી માંગવાની હોય અથવા સૂચન કે દરખાસ્ત નો ભાવ હોય તે વાક્યોમાં **Let** અથવા **Let's (Let us)** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

Let વાળા વાક્યો

- પરવાનગી માંગવાનો ભાવ દર્શાવવા **Let** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Said to** નું **requested, asked, told** થાય છે.
- વાક્ય હકાર હોય તો સંયોજક તરીકે "**To**" નો ઉપયોગ કરવો.
- વાક્ય નકાર હોય તો સંયોજક તરીકે "**Not to**" નો ઉપયોગ કરવો.
- યાદ રાખો કે **Let** વાળા વાક્યોને **Indirect** માં ફેરવવામાં આવે ત્યારે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરના વાક્યના ક્રિયાપદમાં કોઈ ફેરફાર થતો નથી.

➤ **Examples :**

- ✓ **Kishan said to his father, "Let me watch the TV."**
કિશને પિતાને કહ્યું હતું, "મને ટીવી જોવા દો." - **Direct**
- ✓ **Kishan requested his father to let him watch the TV.**
કિશને પિતાને તેને ટીવી જોવા દેવાની વિનંતી કરી હતી. - **Indirect**

- **Said to** નું **requested** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં વિનંતીનો ભાવ છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **to**
- સંયોજક તરીકે **to + Let + ક્રિયાપદ (watch) + અન્ય શબ્દો**
- **Me** નું **him** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **me** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે કિશન છે જે **he** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેને (**him**)થાય.

✓ **Anu said to Anita, "Let me read this book."**
અનુએ અનિતાને કહ્યું હતું, "મને પુસ્તક વાંચવા દે." - **Direct**

✓ **Anu requested Anita to let her read that book.**
અનુએ અનિતાને તે પુસ્તક વાંચવા દેવા વિનંતી કરી હતી. - **Indirect**

- **Said to** નું **requested** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં વિનંતીનો ભાવ છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **to**
- સંયોજક તરીકે **to + Let + ક્રિયાપદ (read) + અન્ય શબ્દો**
- **Me** નું **her** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **me** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે અનુ છે જે **she** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેને (**her**)થાય.

✓ **Bhavin said to Bina, "Let me do my work myself."**
ભાવિને બિનાને કહ્યું હતું, "મને મારું કામ મારી જાતે કરવા દે." - **Direct**

✓ **Bhavin requested to Bina to let him do his work himself.**
ભાવિને બિનાને તેનું કામ જાતે કરવા દેવાની વિનંતી કરી હતી. - **Indirect**

- **Said to** નું **requested** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં વિનંતીનો ભાવ છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **to**
- સંયોજક તરીકે **to + Let + ક્રિયાપદ (do) + અન્ય શબ્દો**
- **My** નું **his** થઈ ગયું કારણ કે **my** એટલે બોલનાર અને તે ભાવિન છે જે **he** માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેને (**his**)થાય.

Let's વાળા વાક્યો

- સૂચન કે દરખાસ્તનો ભાવ દર્શાવવા માટે **Let's** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Said to** નું **proposed to** (દરખાસ્ત હોય તો) / **suggested to** (સૂચન હોય તો) થાય છે.

- **Said to me** હોય તેવા સંજોગોમાં **Let** પછી કર્મ વિભક્તિ **"us"** ની કર્તા વિભક્તિ **we** બને છે અને તેની સાથે **should** વપરાય છે.
 - ✓ **Praful said to me, "Let's go to the library." - Direct**
 - ✓ **Praful suggested to me that we should go to the library. - Indirect**
- **Said to me** ના હોય તેવા સંજોગોમાં **Let** પછી કર્મ વિભક્તિ **"us"** ની કર્તા વિભક્તિ **They** બને છે અને તેની સાથે **should** વપરાય છે.
 - ✓ **Kavita said to her friend, "Let's go on tour to Bombay." - Direct**
 - ✓ **Kavita proposed to her friend that they should go on a tour to Bombay - Indirect**
- સંયોજક તરીકે **"that"** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય વિધાન બની જાય છે અને બાકીના ફેરફારો તે મુજબ થાય છે.

➤ **Examples :**

-
- ✓ **Kishan said to Kanak, "Let's go to the party this evening."**
કિશને કનકને કહ્યું હતું, "ચાલો આપણે આજે સાંજે પાર્ટીમાં જઈએ." - **Direct**
 - ✓ **Kishan proposed to Kanak that they should go the party that evening.**
કિશને કનકને દરખાસ્ત કરી હતી કે તેમણે તે સાંજે પાર્ટીમાં જવું જોઈએ. - **Indirect**
 - **Said to નું proposed** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં દરખાસ્ત નો ભાવ છે.
 - અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **that**
 - **Said to Kanak** છે એટલે **Let's નું they should** થઈ ગયું.
 - **This evening નું that evening** થઈ જાય.
-
- ✓ **Hardik said to me, "Let's have some snacks."**
હાર્દિકે મને કહ્યું હતું, "ચાલો આપણે કંઈક નાસ્તો કરીએ." - **Direct**
 - ✓ **Hardik proposed to me that we should have some snacks.**
હાર્દિકે મને દરખાસ્ત કરી હતી કે આપણે કંઈક નાસ્તો કરવો જોઈએ. - **Indirect**
 - **Said to નું proposed** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં દરખાસ્ત નો ભાવ છે.
 - અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **that**
 - **Said to me** છે એટલે **Let's નું we should** થઈ ગયું.

- ✓ **The teacher said to the students, "Let's stop the game."**

શિક્ષકે વિદ્યાર્થીઓને કહ્યું હતું, “ચાલો આપણે રમત બંધ કરીએ.” - **Direct**

- ✓ **The teacher suggested to the students that they should stop the game.**

શિક્ષકે વિદ્યાર્થીઓને સૂચન કર્યું હતું કે તેમણે રમત બંધ કરવી જોઈએ. - **Indirect**

- **Said to** નું **proposed** કારણ કે વાક્યમાં દરખાસ્ત નો ભાવ છે.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **that**
- **Said to the students** છે એટલે **Let's** નું **they should** થઈ ગયું.

ઉદ્ગાર વાક્યો (**Exclamatory sentences**) : (**Said to**)

- જે વાક્યોમાં પ્રશંસા, આશ્ચર્ય, અણગમો, દુઃખ, આનંદ, ગુસ્સો વગેરે જેવી લાગણીઓ વ્યક્ત કરેલી હોય તે ઉદ્ગાર વાક્યો કહેવાય છે.
- આવા વાક્યો મોટાભાગે **what/how** થી શરૂ થતાં હોય છે.
- કેટલીકવાર આવા વાક્યોમાં **wow, oh, hurrah, ah, alas** જેવા શબ્દોનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. **Indirect** કરતી વખતે આવા શબ્દો દૂર કરવામાં આવે છે.
- ઉદ્ગાર વાક્યોને **direct speech** માંથી **indirect speech** માં ફેરવતાં થતાં ફેરફારો.
- **Said to** નું **Exclaimed** થઈ જાય.
- **Exclaimed** ની સાથે વાક્યની પ્રમાણે શબ્દ મૂકાય છે. જેની વિસ્તૃત માહિતી નીચે આપેલ છે.
 - ✓ **Wow** - પ્રશંસા/વખાણ - **exclaimed with praise**
 - ✓ **Alas !** - દુઃખ/દિલગીરી - **exclaimed with sorrow/sadness**
 - ✓ **Hurrah !** - આનંદ - **exclaimed with joy / delight**
 - ✓ ગુસ્સો - **exclaimed with anger**
 - ✓ આશ્ચર્ય/નવાઈ - **exclaimed with surprise**
 - ✓ પ્રેમ - **exclaimed with love**
 - ✓ સન્માન/આદર - **exclaimed with respect**
 - ✓ દયા - **exclaimed with sympathy**
 - ✓ ડર - **exclaimed with fear**
 - ✓ અણગમો /દૃષ્ટા - **exclaimed with dislike / disgust**
 - ✓ પસ્તાવો - **exclaimed with regret**

- સંયોજક તરીકે નો ઉપયોગ “**that**” થાય છે.
- ઉદ્ગાર ભાવ દર્શાવતા શબ્દો નીકળી જાય છે. (**what/how/alas/oh/ah hurrah/wow**)
- અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય વિધાન બની જાય છે.
- વાક્યની શરૂઆત **What** થી થતી હોય તો આર્ટિકલ ‘a’ આવે.
- **Examples :**

-
- ✓ **Alpesh said to Ankit, "What a beautiful dress it is !"**
અલ્પેશે અંકિતને કહ્યું હતું, “તે કેટલો સરસ ડ્રેસ છે !” - **Direct**
 - ✓ **Alpesh exclaimed with praise to Ankit that it was a very beautiful dress.**
અલ્પેશે અંકિતને વખાણ સાથે કહ્યું હતું કે તે ખૂબ જ સરસ ડ્રેસ હતો. - **Indirect**
 - **Said to** નું **exclaimed** કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય ઉદ્ગાર છે.
 - વાક્યમાં વખાણનો ભાવ છે એટલે **with praise**.
 - અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે **that**.
 - વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય એટલે જવાબ **it is** થી શરૂ થાય અને અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ એટલે **it is** નું **it was** થઈ જાય.
-
- ✓ **The mother said to Hardik, "What a lazy boy you are !"**
માતાએ હાર્દિકને કહ્યું હતું, “તું કેટલો આળસુ છોકરો છે !” - **Direct**
 - ✓ **The mother exclaimed with anger to Hardik that he was a very lazy boy.**
માતાએ હાર્દિકને ગુસ્સા સાથે કહ્યું હતું કે તે કેટલો આળસુ છોકરો હતો. - **Indirect**
 - **Said to** નું **exclaimed** કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય ઉદ્ગાર છે.
 - વાક્યમાં ગુસ્સાનો ભાવ છે એટલે **with anger**.
 - અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સંયોજક તરીકે **that**
 - વાક્ય વિધાન થઈ જાય એટલે જવાબ **you are** થી શરૂ થાય અને અવતરણ ચિહ્નની બહાર ભૂતકાળ એટલે **you are** નું **he was** થઈ જાય.
 - **you are** નું **he was** થઈ જાય કારણ કે **you** એટલે સાંભળનાર અને તે હાર્દિક છે જે **he** માં આવે. **He** મૂક્યું એટલે **was**.
-
- ✓ **Jitendra said to Sonia, "Alas ! my friend is no more alive on the earth."**
જીતેન્દ્રએ સોનિયાને કહ્યું હતું, “અરે ! મારો મિત્ર હવે આ પૃથ્વી પર જીવતો રહ્યો નથી.” - **Direct**

- ✓ *Jitendra exclaimed with sorrow to Sonia that his friend was no more alive on the earth.*

જીતેન્દ્રએ સોનિયાને દુઃખ સાથે કહ્યું હતું કે તેનો મિત્ર આ પૃથ્વી પર જીવતો રહ્યો ન હતો.

- *Indirect*

- *Said to* નું *exclaimed* કારણ કે અવતરણ ચિહ્નની અંદરનું વાક્ય ઉદ્ગાર છે.
- વાક્યમાં દુઃખનો ભાવ છે એટલે *with sorrow*.
- અવતરણ ચિહ્ન નીકળી ગયા અને તેના સ્થાને સંયોજક તરીકે *that*.
- *Alas !* ઉદ્ગાર શબ્દ છે તેથી *indirect speech* માં તે નીકળી જાય.
- *my friend* નું *his friend* થઈ જાય કારણ કે *my* એટલે બોલનાર અને તે જીતેન્દ્ર છે જે *he* માં આવે અને ગુજરાતી અનુવાદ તેનો મિત્ર (*his friend*) એવો થાય.

ફકરા તરીકે આપેલા વાક્યો (*Conversation / Dialogue*)

- જ્યારે બોલનાર બે વાક્યો સાથે બોલે ત્યારે તે વાક્યો જવાબમાં “*and added that*” થી જાડોય છે. જેમ કે,
 - ✓ *Atul : I am reading a story book. I am enjoying.*
 - ✓ *Atul told that he was reading a story book and added that he was enjoying.*
- જ્યારે બોલનાર એક વાક્ય બોલે અને પછી પ્રશ્ન પૂછે ત્યારે તે વાક્યો જવાબમાં “*and asked if*” અથવા “*and asked wh question*” થી જોડાય છે. જેમ કે,
 - ✓ *Karan : I am an ordinary person. Do you know this ?*
 - ✓ *Karan told that he was an ordinary person and asked if he knew that. (and asked if)*

OR

 - ✓ *Sunil : I do not have enough money. What should I do to earn more money ?*
 - ✓ *Sunil told that he did not have enough money and asked what he should do to earn more money. (and asked what - wh question)*

3. જ્યારે બોલનાર એકસાથે બે પ્રશ્ન પૂછે ત્યારે તે વાક્યો જવાબમાં “**and again asked**” થી જોડાય છે. જેમ કે,

- ✓ **Anita : What did your father say yesterday ? How did you feel ?**
- ✓ **Anita asked what her father had told the previous day and again asked how she had felt.**

OR

- ✓ **Harsh : Where shall I go ? Do you have the map ?**
- ✓ **Harsh asked where he would go and again asked if he had the map.**

4. જ્યારે સાંભળનારે જવાબ આપ્યો હોય ત્યારે તે “**replied that**” તરીકે લખાય છે. જેમ કે,

- ✓ **Kishan : Do you like reading ?**
- ✓ **Amit : I like reading.**
- ✓ **Amit replied that he liked reading.**

5. જ્યારે સાંભળનારે બીજી વખત જવાબ આપ્યો હોય ત્યારે તે “**again replied that**” તરીકે લખાય છે.

6. પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્યના જવાબમાં **yes** આપ્યું હોય તો **indirect speech** માં **replied positively** લખાય. જેમ કે,

- ✓ **Jigar : Are you writing your homework ? (question)**
- ✓ **Janak : Yes. (answer)**
- ✓ **Janak replied positively to Jigar that he was writing his homework. (indirect speech)**

7. પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્યના જવાબમાં **no** આપ્યું હોય તો **indirect speech** માં **replied negatively** લખાય. જેમ કે,

- ✓ **Hetal : Do you like to eat potatoes ?**
- ✓ **Mishita : No, I do not.**
- ✓ **Mishita replied negatively to Hetal that she did not like to eat potatoes.**

8. કેટલીક વખત કર્તા પ્રશ્નોના જવાબમાં ફક્ત એક જ શબ્દનો ઉપયોગ કરે છે. આવા સમયે **indirect speech** માં જવાબ લખતી વખતે ઉપરના વાક્ય પ્રમાણે આખું વાક્ય લખવું પડે છે. જેમ કે,

- ✓ **Ansh : When will you visit the exhibition ?**
- ✓ **Amit : Tomorrow.**
- ✓ **Amit replied to Ansh that he would visit the exhibition the next day.**

OR

- ✓ **Kavya : What are you drinking now ?**
- ✓ **Pankti : Tea**
- ✓ **Pankti replied to Kavya that she was drinking tea then.**

OR

- ✓ **Father : What did you read yesterday ?**
- ✓ **Janki : Poems.**
- ✓ **Janki replied to father that she had read poems the previous day.**

Already / Yet / Still

Already : અગાઉથી, ક્યારનું, પહેલાં.

➤ કોઈ ક્રિયા આપણાં ધાર્યા પહેલા થઈ ગઈ હોય ત્યારે **Already** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

➤ **Already** મુખ્ય ક્રિયાપદ પહેલા જ મુકાય છે.

જેમ કે :

- **We have already bought.** (bought મુખ્ય ક્રિયાપદ)
- **Anil has already gone to market.** (gone મુખ્ય ક્રિયાપદ)

Examples :

1. **I have already taken dinner.**
(મેં ક્યારનું જમી લીધું છે.)
2. **She has already come.**
(તે ક્યારની આવી ગઈ છે.)
3. **We have already seen the Taj Mahal.**
(અમે પહેલેથી જ તાજમહેલ જોયેલો છે.)
4. **Jitendra has already visited Shimla.**
(જિતેન્દ્રએ ક્યારની શિમલાની મુલાકાત લઈ લીધી છે.)
5. **Bachu has already finished his homework.**
(બચુએ તેનું ઘરકામ ક્યારનું પતાવી લીધું છે.)

☀ **Still** : હજી, હજુ, તોય.

➤ કોઈ ક્રિયા ચોક્કસ સમય સુધી ચાલુ હોય અને પૂરી થતી ન હોય ત્યારે **Still** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

Examples :

126

1. **Kishan is still writing an essay.**
(કિશન હજુ નિબંધ લખી રહ્યો છે.)
2. **We still think that they are honest.**
(અમે હજુ વિચારીએ છીએ કે તેઓ પ્રમાણિક છે.)
3. **Kavita still loves to eat apples.**
(કવિતાને હજુ સફરજન ખાવા ગમે છે.)
4. **Do you still sing poem ?**
(શું તમે હજુ સુધી કવિતા ગાઓ છો ?)
5. **Jigar is still in the shopping mall.**
(જિગર હજુ સુધી શોપિંગ મોલમાં છે.)

☀ **Yet :** હજી, હજુ, તોય.

- કોઈ ક્રિયા હજી સુધી થઈ નથી પણ તેના થવાની આશા હોય ત્યારે **Yet** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.
- મોટાભાગે "પ્રશ્નાર્થ" અને "નકાર" વાક્યોમાં **Yet** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.
- સામાન્ય રીતે **Yet** વાક્યના અંતે મૂકવામાં આવે છે.

Examples :

1. **Ravina has not got the book yet.**
(રવિનાને હજુ પુસ્તક મળ્યું નથી.)
2. **We have not begun the work yet.**
(અમે હજુ કામ શરૂ કર્યું નથી.)

3. *I haven't written an essay yet.*

(મેં હજુ નિબંધ લખ્યો નથી.)

4. *Sangita is not ready yet.*

(સંગીતા હજુ તૈયાર થઈ નથી.)

5. *Priyanka has not seen the movie yet.*

(પ્રિયંકાએ હજુ મુવી જોયું નથી.)

A / An / The

- **Article** નો અર્થ “ઉપપદ” થાય છે.
- **A/An** એ અનિશ્ચિત છે જ્યારે **The** એ નિશ્ચિત છે.

A / An

- આર્ટિકલ **A/An** નો ઉપયોગ ફક્ત એકવચનના નામો સાથે થાય છે.
જેમ કે,
a picture, a file, an advertisement, an island.
- જે નામોનો ઉચ્ચાર વ્યંજનથી થાય તેની આગળ **A** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- જે નામોનો ઉચ્ચાર સ્વરથી (**A, E, I, O, U**) થી થાય છે તેની આગળ **An** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- ધ્યાન રાખો કે અહીં ઉચ્ચારને ધ્યાનમાં લેવાય છે લખાણને નહીં.
એટલે કે **Spelling** ગમે તે હોય તેનો ઉચ્ચાર ગુજરાતી સ્વરો (અ, આ, ઓ, ઈ, ઈ, ઉ, ઊ) માં આવે તો આર્ટિકલ **An** નો ઉપયોગ કરવો પડે.
આપેલ કોઠો વધારે સમજણ આપશે.

Spelling	ઉચ્ચાર (અ, આ, ઓ, એ, ઇ, ઈ, ઉ, ઊ)	Article
Movie	મુવી ✕ (મુ)	A
Car	કાર ✕ (કા)	A
Song	સોંગ ✕ (સો)	A
Elephant	એલિફન્ટ ✓ (એ)	An
Honest	ઓનેસ્ટ ✓ (ઓ)	An
Hour	અવર ✓ (અ)	An
Antique	એંટીક ✓ (એ)	An
University	યુનિવર્સિટી ✕ (યુ)	A

The

► **The** નો ઉપયોગ વિવિધ રીતે થાય છે જેની નીચે વિસ્તારપૂર્વક સમજૂતી આપેલ છે.

- જે વસ્તુ દુનિયામાં એક જ છે તેના માટે. જેમ કે :

The Sun

The Taj Mahal

The Moon

- Superlative degree :**

The hottest

The strongest

The fastest

- નદીઓ, મહાસાગરોનાં નામ પહેલા :

The Pacific

The Ganga

The Narmada

- પર્વતમાળાઓના નામ પહેલા :

The Himalaya

The Alps

The Vindya

- ટાપુઓના નામ પહેલા :

The Maldives

The West Indies

The Japan

- રણના નામ પહેલા :

The Sahara

The Kutch

The Jaisalmer

- રાષ્ટ્રીયતા દર્શાવવા માટે :

The Indian

The British

The African

- સંગીતના સાધનો માટે :

The tabla

The guitar

The sitar

- જે દેશોના નામમાં **"Kingdom, Republic, States and Union"**

નામના શબ્દો હોય :

The United States of America

The United Kingdom

- જ્યાં **"Entertainment"** ના વિષયની વાત હોય :

The PVR cinema

The mall

- પ્રખ્યાત **"Hotel"** ના નામ પહેલા :

The Taj

The Hilton

The Oberoy

- જે યુનિવર્સિટી અથવા શાળાના નામમાં **"of"** હોય :

The University of London

The University of Sydney

- સમાન લાક્ષણિકતા ધરાવતા લોકોના જુથ માટે :

The rich

The old people

- કોઈ મોટા જુથના એક ભાગ માટે :

One of the students

None of the students

- **Radio and Internet**

The radio

The internet

- ખંડ અને ધર્મગ્રંથોના નામ પહેલા :

The Asia

The Mahabharat

The Ramayan

As if

- **As if** નો ઉપયોગ એવી સરખામણી કરવા માટે થાય છે કે સાચી નથી. જેમ કે,
 - તે એવી રીતે ગાય છે કે જાણે તે લતા મંગેશકર હોય.
 - અનિલ એવી રીતે ક્રિકેટ રમે છે કે જાણે સચિન તૈંદુલકર હોય.
 - કિશન એવું વર્તન કરે છે કે જાણે તે કોઈ કલાકાર હોય.
- આવા વાક્યોમાં **As if** ની પાછળ **were** નો ઉપયોગ કરવામાં આવે છે.

Examples :

1. Amit talks like a successful businessman.

Amit talks as if he were a successful businessman.

(અમિત એવી રીતે વાત કરે છે કે તે જાણે સફળ ધંધાદારી હોય.)

2. My elder brother always treats me like a small child.

My elder brother always treats me as if I were a small child.

(મારો ભાઈ હમેશા મને એવી રીતે રાખે છે જાણે હું નાનો બાળક હોઉં.)

3. Sangita behaves like a queen of England.

Sangita behaves as if she were the queen of England.

(સંગીતા એવું વર્તન કરે છે કે તે જાણે ઈંગ્લેન્ડની રાણી હોય.)

4. **Dhara acts like Priyanka Chopra.**

Dhara acts as if she were Priyanka Chopra.
(ધારા એવું વર્તે છે કે તે જાણે પ્રિયંકા ચોપરા હોય.)

5. **He dressed in the party like a beggar.**

He dressed in the party as if were a beggar.
(તેને પાર્ટીમાં એવા કપડાં પહેર્યા હતા કે તે જાણે ભિખારી હોય.)

6. **Jitendra swims like a dolphin.**

Jitendra swims as if he were a dolphin.
(જીતેન્દ્ર એવું તરે છે કે તે જાણે ડોલ્ફિન હોય.)

Causal Verb

- **Causal verb** નો અર્થ “પ્રેરક રચના છે.”
- જ્યારે એક કર્તા બીજા કર્તા સાથે કામ અથવા ક્રિયા કરાવે ત્યારે **Causal verb** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Causal verb** ત્રણ હોય છે.
 - **Make**
 - **Get**
 - **Have**
- દરેક **Causal verb** ની વિસ્તારપૂર્વક માહિતી નીચે આપેલ છે.
- **Causal Make** ના વાક્યો મોટાભાગે **Active Voice** માં હોય છે.
- **Causal Get** અને **Have** વાક્યો **Active Voice** અને **Passive Voice** બંનેમાં હોય છે.

Make

- જ્યારે કોઈ કર્તા બીજા કર્તા પાસે દબાણપૂર્વક ક્રિયા કરાવે ત્યારે **make** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમ કે,

- અનિલે અનિતા પાસે નિબંધ લખાવ્યો.
 - બાળકે તેની મમ્મી પાસે રમકડું ખરીદ્યું.
- વાક્યના કાળ પ્રમાણે **make** નું યોગ્ય રૂપ મૂકવું પડે
જે ઉદાહરણમાં સમજૂતી સાથે જોઈ શકાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

કર્તા + **Causal Make** નું કાળ પ્રમાણેનું રૂપ + કર્તા + **To** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ
+ અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

1. We made the children sing poems yesterday.

(અમે ગઈકાલે બાળકો પાસે કવિતાઓ ગવડાવી હતી.)

કર્તા (**We**) + ભૂતકાળ (**yesterday** એટલે **make** નું **made**) +

કર્તા (**children**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**sing**)

2. Kishan always makes his friends do his homework.

(કિશન હંમેશા તેનું ઘરકામ તેના મિત્રો પાસે કરાવે છે.)

કર્તા (**Kishan**) + વર્તમાન કાળ (**always** એટલે **make** નું **makes**) +

કર્તા (**friends**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**do**)

3. They will make students read books compulsory.

(તેઓ બાળકો પાસે ફરજિયાતપણે પુસ્તકો વંચાવશે.)

કર્તા (**They**) + ભવિષ્યકાળ (**will** એટલે **make** નું **make**) +

કર્તા (**students**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**read**)

4. Hetal has made Mishita cook for whole family.

(હેતલે મિશિતા પાસે પૂરા કુટુંબ માટે જમવાનું બનાવડાવ્યું છે.)

કર્તા (**Hetal**) + પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ (**has** એટલે **make** નું **made**) +

કર્તા (**Mishita**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**cook**)

5. Amit did not make his father buy a new mobile.

(અમિતે તેના પિતા પાસે નવો મોબાઈલ ખરીદાવ્યો ન હતો.)

કર્તા (**Amit**) + ભૂતકાળ (**did** એટલે **make** નું **make**) + કર્તા **father**
+ **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**buy**)

6. Mr. Patel should not make his assistant work till late night.

(શ્રીમાન પટેલે તેમના મદદનીશ પાસે રાતે મોડે સુધી કામ ના કરાવવું જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**Mr. Patel**) + Modal Auxiliary (**should** એટલે **make** નું **make**) +
કર્તા (**assistant**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**work**)

7. Kavita makes her horse drink water everyday.

(કવિતા દરરોજ તેના ઘોડા પાસે પાણી પીવડાવે છે.)

કર્તા (**Kavita**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (**everyday** એટલે **make** નું **makes**) +
કર્તા **horse** + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**drink**)

8. Do you make your brother repair your bicycle ?

(શું તમે તમારા ભાઈ પાસે તમારી સાયકલ રીપેર કરાવો છો ?

કર્તા (**You**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (**do** એટલે **make** નું **make**) + કર્તા (**brother**)
+ **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**repair**)

9. The pupils made the teacher teach the topic twice last week.

(છેલ્લા અઠવાડિયે વિદ્યાર્થીઓએ શિક્ષક પાસે મુદ્દો બે વાર સમજાવડાવ્યો.)

કર્તા (**The pupils**) + ભૂતકાળ (**last week** એટલે **make** નું **made**) +
કર્તા (**teacher**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**teach**)

Get

► જ્યારે કોઈ કર્તા બીજા કર્તા પાસે વિનંતીપૂર્વક ક્રિયા કરાવે ત્યારે

Get નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમ કે,

- હેતલે મિશિતા પાસે દૂધ પીવડાવ્યું.
- શિક્ષકે રમેશ પાસે પત્ર લખાવ્યો.

► વાક્યના કાળ પ્રમાણે **Get** નું યોગ્ય રૂપ મૂકવું પડે
જે ઉદાહરણમાં સમજૂતી સાથે જોઈ શકાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

Active Voice :

કર્તા + **Causal Get** નું કાળ પ્રમાણેનું રૂપ + કર્તા + **To** + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Passive Voice :

કર્તા + **Causal Get** નું કાળ પ્રમાણેનું રૂપ + કર્મ + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active Examples :

1. Mehul always gets me to buy chocolates from America.

(મેહુલ હંમેશા મારી પાસે અમેરિકાથી ચોકલેટ મંગાવે છે.)

કર્તા (**Mehul**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (**always** એટલે **get** નું **gets**) +

કર્તા (**me** એટલે **Active** તેથી **To** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ **to buy**)

2. Sunil got Sangita to sing a song in his last birthday party.

(સુનિલે તેની છેલ્લી જન્મદિવસની પાર્ટીમાં સંગીતા પાસે ગીત ગવડાવ્યું હતું.)

કર્તા (**Sunil**) + ભૂતકાળ (**Last** એટલે **get** નું **got**) + કર્તા (**Sangita** એટલે

Active તેથી **To** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ **to sing**)

3. Hardik will get his brother to drive a car tomorrow.

(હાર્દિક તેના ભાઈ પાસે આવતીકાલે ગાડી ચલાવડાવશે.)

કર્તા (**Hardik**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (**tomorrow** એટલે **get** નું **will get**) +

કર્તા (**his brother** એટલે **Active** તેથી **To** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ **to drive**)

4. I do not like to get my sister to write her homework.

(મને મારી બહેન પાસે તેનું ઘરકામ કરાવડાવવાનું ગમતું નથી.)

કર્તા (**I**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (**Do** એટલે **get નું get**) +

કર્તા (**my sister** એટલે **Active** તેથી **To** + ભૂજરૂપ **to write**)

5. People should get children to plant more trees.

(લોકોએ બાળકો પાસે વધારે વૃક્ષો રોપાવવા જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**People**) + **Modal Auxiliary** (**should** એટલે **get નું get**) +

કર્તા (**children** એટલે **Active** તેથી **To** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂજરૂપ **to plant**)

Passive Examples :

1. Mr. Patel got his letters typed by his secretary.

(શ્રીમાન પટેલ તેમના પત્રો તેમની સેક્રેટરી પાસે ટાઈપ કરાવ્યા હતા.)

કર્તા (**Mr. Patel**) + ભૂતકાળ (એટલે **get નું get**) +

કર્મ (**letters** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **typed**)

2. The children get their toys repaired by their parents.

(બાળકો તેમના રમકડાં તેમના માતાપિતા પાસે રીપેર કરાવે છે.)

કર્તા (**The children**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (એટલે **get નું get**) +

કર્મ (**toys** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **repaired**)

3. Paresh has got his assignment checked by teacher.

(પરેશે તેના અસાઈમેન્ટ તેના શિક્ષક પાસે તપાસાવ્યા છે.)

કર્તા (**Paresh**) + પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ (એટલે **get નું has got**) +

કર્મ (**assignment** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **checked**)

4. Jigar will get his clothes prepared by tailor tomorrow.

(જિગર તેના દરજી પાસે આવતીકાલે તેના કપડાં તૈયાર કરાવડાવશે.)
 (કર્તા **Jigar** + ભવિષ્યકાળ (એટલે **get** નું **will get**) +
 કર્મ (**clothes** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **prepared**)

5. They should get their garden watered everyday.

(તેઓએ તેમના બગીચામાં દરરોજ પાણી આપવું જોઈએ.)
 કર્તા (**They**) + **Modal Auxiliary** (એટલે **get** નું **get**) +
 કર્મ (**garden** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **watered**)

Have

- જ્યારે કોઈ કર્તા બીજા કર્તા પાસે વેતનથી કરાવાતી ક્રિયા કરાવે ત્યારે **Have** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમ કે,
 - હર્ષે વાળંદ પાસે વાળ કપાવ્યા.
 - શ્રીમાન કિશને તેમના પટાવાળા પાસે કામ કરાવ્યું.
- વાક્યના કાળ પ્રમાણે **Have** નું યોગ્ય રૂપ મૂકવું પડે જે ઉદાહરણમાં સમજૂતી સાથે જોઈ શકાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

Active Voice :

કર્તા + **Causal Have** નું કાળ પ્રમાણેનું રૂપ + કર્તા + **To** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Passive Voice :

કર્તા + **Causal Have** નું કાળ પ્રમાણેનું રૂપ + કર્મ + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો

1. **Ashish has his servant cook for him.**

(આશિષ તેનું જમવાનું તેના નોકર પાસે રંધાવે છે.)

કર્તા (**Ashish**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (એટલે **have** નું **has**) + કર્તા (**servant**)
+ **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**cook**)2. **Arjun will have driver repair his car.**

(અર્જુન ડ્રાઈવર પાસે તેની ગાડી રીપેર કરાવડાવશે.)

કર્તા (**Arjun**) + ભવિષ્યકાળ (એટલે **have** નું **will have**) + કર્તા (**driver**)
+ **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**repair**)3. **We should have gardener look after our garden.**

(આપણે આપણા બગીચાની દેખરેખ માળી પાસે કરાવવી જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **Modal Auxiliary** (એટલે **have** નું **have**) +
કર્તા (**gardener**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**look after**)4. **Suresh had labourers work in his farm.**

(સુરેશ મજૂરો પાસે તેના ખેતરમાં કામ કરાવતો હતો.)

કર્તા (**Suresh**) + ભૂતકાળ (એટલે **have** નું **had**) +
કર્તા (**labourers**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**work**)5. **Companies have salesmen sell their products.**

(કંપનીઓ તેના સેલ્સમેન પાસે વસ્તુઓ વેચાવડાવે છે.)

કર્તા (**Companies**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (એટલે **have** નું **have**) +
કર્તા (**Salesmen**) + **to** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ (**sell**)

1. Anita will have her mobile repaired in near future.

(અનિતા તેનો મોબાઈલ ટૂંક સમયમાં રીપેર કરાવડાવશે.)

કર્તા (**Anita**) + ભવિષ્યકાળ (એટલે **have** નું **will have**) +

કર્મ (**mobile** એટલે **passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **repaired**)

2. The government has roads cleaned everyday.

(સરકાર દરરોજે રસ્તાઓ સાફ કરાવડાવે છે.)

કર્તા (**The government**) + વર્તમાનકાળ (એટલે **have** નું **has**) +

કર્મ (**roads** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **cleaned**)

3. I do not have my clothes washed often.

(હું મારા કપડાં ઘણીવાર ધોવડાવતો નથી.)

કર્તા (**I**) + **do** (એટલે **have** નું **have**) +

કર્મ (**clothes** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **washed**)

4. You should have wedding cards printed immediately.

(તમારે તરત જ લગ્નના કાર્ડ છપાવવા જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**You**) + **modal auxiliary** (એટલે **have** નું **have**) +

કર્મ (**wedding cards** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **printed**)

5. Mr. Kapoor had urgent work finished yesterday.

(ગઈકાલે શ્રીમાન કપૂરને મહત્વનું કામ પૂરું કરાવવાનું હતું.)

કર્તા (**Mr. Kapoor**) + ભૂતકાળ (એટલે **have** નું **had**) +

કર્મ (**work** એટલે **Passive** તેથી ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **finished**)

Connectives

140

➤ **And** - અને

(બે કર્તા, વિશેષણ, ક્રિયાવિશેષણ અથવા પૂરા વાક્યોને જોડવા માટે.)

- **Bachu and Jigar are clever students.**

(બચુ અને જિગર હોશિયાર વિદ્યાર્થીઓ છે.)

- **Kishan is hard working and punctual.**

(કિશન મહેનતુ અને નિયમિત છે.)

- **Jitendra walked fast and he met Bhavana.**

(જીતેન્દ્ર ઝડપથી ચાલ્યો હતો અને તે ભાવનાને મળ્યો હતો.)

➤ **But** - પણ

(બે વાક્યો વચ્ચે વિરોધાભાસ દર્શાવવા)

- **I walked very fast but I missed the train.**

(હું ખૂબ જ ઝડપથી ચાલ્યો હતો પણ હું ટ્રેન ચૂકી ગયો હતો.)

- **Doctor tried hard but he could not save the patient.**

(ડોક્ટરે સખત પ્રયત્ન કર્યો પણ તે દર્દીને બચાવી ન શક્યા.)

➤ **Or** - અથવા

(કોઈ બે વિકલ્પોમાંથી કોઈ એકની પસંદગી કરવા માટે.)

- **You can buy this mobile or that T.V.**

(તમે આ મોબાઈલ ખરીદી શકો અથવા તે ટીવી.)

- **Sangita will study English or Science.**

(સંગીતા અંગ્રેજી ભણશે અથવા વિજ્ઞાન.)

➤ **Otherwise** - નહિતર

- **Sit quietly otherwise teacher will punish you.**
(શાંતિથી બેસો નહિતર શિક્ષક તમને સજા કરશે.)
- **Work hard otherwise you will fail.**
(સખત મહેનત કરો નહિતર તમે નાપાસ થશો.)
- **Walk fast otherwise you will miss the bus.**
(ઝડપથી ચાલો નહિતર તમે બસ ચૂકી જશો.)

➤ **Because** - કારણ કે

- **I am healthy because I do exercise regularly.**
(હું તંદુરસ્ત છું કારણ કે હું નિયમિતપણે કસરત કરું છું.)
- **They cannot go out because they do not have a car.**
(તેઓ બહાર જઈ શકતા નથી કારણ કે તેમની પાસે ગાડી નથી.)

➤ **When** - જ્યારે...ત્યારે.

- **When Ravi came, I was watching a comedy program.**
(જ્યારે રવિ આવ્યો હતો ત્યારે હું હાસ્ય કાર્યક્રમ જોઈ રહ્યો હતો.)
- **I eat ice cream when I am on holiday.**
(જ્યારે હું રજા પર હોઉં ત્યારે હું આઈસક્રીમ ખાઉં છું.)
- **When you start the engine, there is strange noise.**
(જ્યારે તમે એન્જિન શરૂ કરો છો ત્યારે વિચિત્ર અવાજ આવે છે.)

➤ **While** - જ્યારે...ત્યારે

- (મોટાભાગે ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ અને ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળના વાક્યો માટે.)
- **While Shila was watching movie, she got a call.**
(જ્યારે શીલા મૂવી જોઈ રહી હતી ત્યારે તેને કોલ આવ્યો હતો.)

- **Do not disturb me while I am working.**
(હું જ્યારે કામ કરતો હોઉં ત્યારે મને પરેશાન કરશો નહીં.)
- **While he was crossing the road, he met with an accident.**
(જ્યારે તે રસ્તો ઓળંગી રહ્યો હતો ત્યારે તેનો અકસ્માત થયો હતો.)

(યાદ રાખો કે **While** સાથે **am / is / are / was / were + ing** ક્રિયાપદ હોવું જરૂરી છે.)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| ✓ While I went | ✗ (આ વાક્ય ખોટું પડે) |
| ✓ While I was going | ✓ (સાચું) |
| ✓ While Dhara read | ✗ (આ વાક્ય ખોટું પડે) |
| ✓ While Dhara is reading / was reading | ✓ (સાચું) |

➤ **After - પછી**

- **You can watch TV after you finish your lunch.**
(તમે તમારું જમવાનું પતાવીને ટીવી જોઈ શકો છો.)
- **Do not go there after 8 p.m.**
(ત્યાં ૮ વાગ્યા પછી જશો નહીં.)

➤ **Before - પહેલા**

- **Brush your teeth before you go to bed.**
(સૂઈ જતાં પહેલા તમારા દાંત સાફ કરો.)
- **She closed the door before he could reach there.**
(તે ત્યાં પહોંચે એ પહેલા તેણે દરવાજો બંધ કરી દીધો.)

Degrees of Comparison

- બે વ્યક્તિ, બે વસ્તુઓના ગુણ અથવા બાબતની તુલના / સરખાપણું અથવા શ્રેષ્ઠતા દર્શાવવા માટે **Degrees of Comparison** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Degrees of Comparison** ના ત્રણ પ્રકાર છે.
 1. **Positive Degree** (સરખાપણું અથવા સમાનતા)
અમિત વિપુલ જેટલો જ હોંશિયાર છે.
અથવા
વિપુલ અમિત જેટલો જ હોંશિયાર છે.
 2. **Comparative Degree** (અધિકતા દર્શક / વધારે ના અર્થમાં)
અમિત વિપુલ કરતાં વધારે હોંશિયાર છે.
અથવા
વિપુલ અમિત કરતાં વધારે હોંશિયાર છે.
 3. **Superlative Degree** (શ્રેષ્ઠતા દર્શક / સૌથી સારું અથવા ખરાબ)
અમિત વર્ગમાં સૌથી વધારે હોંશિયાર છે.
અથવા
વિપુલ વર્ગમાં સૌથી વધારે હોંશિયાર છે.
- નીચે ત્રણેય **Degrees of Comparison** ની વિસ્તારપૂર્વક સમજૂતી આપેલ છે.
- યાદ રાખો કે ધોરણ ૧૦ સુધીની **Degrees of Comparison** ની વાક્યરચના અને ધોરણ ૧૨ ની **Degrees of Comparison** ની વાક્યરચના અલગ હોય છે.

1. Positive Degree (સરખાપણું અથવા સમાનતા)

- આ **Degree** નો ઉપયોગ બે વ્યક્તિ અથવા વસ્તુઓ વચ્ચેની કોઈ સમાનતા દર્શાવવા થાય છે. એટલે કે બે વ્યક્તિ અથવા વસ્તુઓ વચ્ચે કઈક સરખું જ છે તે દર્શાવવા.

- આ **Degree** માં **As.....As** નો ઉપયોગ કરવો પડે છે.
- વાક્ય એકવચન થઈ જાય છે.
- બંને **As** ની વચ્ચે વિશેષણ આવે જેમ કે **as beautiful as, as tall as, as honest as, as easy as** વગેરે વગેરે.

Examples :

1. **Bhavana and Shital are equally clever.**
Bhavana is as clever as Shital.
(ભાવના શીતલ જેટલી હોશિયાર છે.)
2. **Both my brother and sister are honest.**
My brother is as honest as my sister
(મારો ભાઈ મારી બહેન જેટલો જ પ્રામાણિક છે.)
3. **Paresh and Suresh are tall.**
Paresh is as tall as Suresh.
(પરેશ સુરેશ જેટલો જ ઊંચો છે.)
4. **Mishita and Hetal are beautiful girls.**
Mishita is as beautiful as Hetal.
(મિશિતા હેતલ જેટલી જ સુંદર છે.)
5. **Anita is smart but Anil is not smart.**
Anil is not as smart as Anita.
(અનિલ અનિતા જેટલો ચપલ નથી.)
6. **Surat is expensive but Ahmedabad is not expensive.**
Ahmedabad is not as expensive as Surat.
(અમદાવાદ સુરત જેટલું મોંઘું નથી.)
7. **Hardik and Kishan play volleyball very well.**
Hardik plays volleyball as well as Kishan.
(હાર્દિક કિશન જેટલું જ સારું વોલીબોલ રમે છે.)

8. Are Jigar and Harsh hard working ?

Is Jigar as hard working as Harsh ?

(શું જિગર હર્ષ જેટલો જ મહેનતુ છે ?)

9. Mr. Patel and Mr. Joshi are generous.

Mr. Patel is as generous as Mr. Joshi.

(શ્રીમાન પટેલ શ્રીમાન જોષી જેટલા જ ઉદાર છે.)

2. Comparative Degree (અધિકતા દર્શક / વધારે ના અર્થમાં)

- **Comparative Degree** નો ઉપયોગ બે વ્યક્તિઓ કે બે વસ્તુઓમાંથી કોઈ એક બીજા કરતાં વધારે ચઢીયાતી કે ઉતરતી કક્ષાની છે તેવું દર્શાવવા થાય છે.
- **Comparative Degree** ના વાક્યમાં વિશેષણનું **Comparative Form** વાપરવું પડે છે. જેમ કે **tall-taller, large-larger, hot-hotter**
- **"Than"** નામના શબ્દનો ઉપયોગ કરવો પડે છે. **Than** નો અર્થ “ના કરતાં” એવો થાય છે.

વાક્યને **Positive Degree** માંથી **Comparative Degree** માં ફેરવતા થતાં ફેરફારો :

- ✓ હકાર વાક્યને નકાર બનાવો.
- ✓ નકાર વાક્યને હકાર બનાવો.
- ✓ કર્તાનું સ્થાન બદલવું પડે છે. આગળનો કર્તા પાછળ જાય છે અને પાછળનો કર્તા આગળ આવી જાય છે. જેમ કે,

• **Ramesh is as tall as Suresh. (Positive Degree)**

• **Suresh is not taller than Ramesh. (Comparative Degree)**

નકાર **Comparative** ના કરતાં

1. ***Dhara is cleverer than Manisha***
(ધારા મનિષા કરતા વધારે હોશિયાર છે.)
2. ***Amit is more honest than Sumit.***
(અમિત સુમિત કરતાં વધારે પ્રામાણિક છે.)
3. ***Mukesh is more successful than Anil.***
(મુકેશ અનિલ કરતાં વધારે સફળ છે.)
4. ***Jigar is smarter than Harsh.***
(જિગર હર્ષ કરતાં વધારે ચપલ છે.)
5. ***Surat is not bigger than Ahmedabad.***
(સુરત અમદાવાદ કરતાં વધારે મોટું નથી.)
6. ***Computers are faster than typewriters.***
(કમ્પ્યુટર ટાઈપરાઈટર કરતાં વધારે ઝડપી છે.)
7. ***Rajdhani train is more comfortable than other trains.***
(રાજધાની ટ્રેન બીજી ટ્રેન કરતાં વધારે આરામદાયક છે.)
8. ***My cousin is luckier than me.***
(મારો પિતરાઈ મારા કરતાં વધારે નસીબદાર છે.)
9. ***That mobile is better than this mobile.***
(પેલો મોબાઈલ આ મોબાઈલ કરતાં વધારે સારો છે.)

Examples : Positive to Comparative Degree

1. ***February is not as cold as December.***
December is colder than February.
2. ***Dinesh is as strong as Shailesh.***
Shailesh is not stronger than Dinesh.

3. *Manoj is as rich as Manish*
Manish is not richer than Manoj.
4. *My brother is not as fat as my uncle.*
My uncle is fatter than my brother.
5. *Mamta is as beautiful as Maya.*
Maya is not more beautiful than Mamta.
6. *Sudha is as careful as Kavita.*
Kavita is not more careful than Sudha.
7. *The box is as heavy as that bag.*
That bag is not heavier than the box.
8. *A mango tree is not as high as a coconut tree.*
A coconut tree is higher than a mango tree.
9. *Time is as important as money.*
Money is not more important than time.

3. Superlative Degree (શ્રેષ્ઠતા દર્શક / સૌથી સારું અથવા ખરાબ)

- **Superlative Degree** નો ઉપયોગ કોઈ વ્યક્તિ અથવા વસ્તુ સૌથી સારી છે અથવા તો સૌથી ખરાબ છે તેવું દર્શાવવા માટે થાય છે.
- **Superlative Degree** માં વિશેષણને "**Est**" પ્રત્યય લગાવવો પડે છે.
જેમ કે **tall - tallest, large - largest, hot - hottest.**
- વિશેષણ પહેલા "**the**" આર્ટિકલ લગાવવો ફરજિયાત છે.

Examples :

1. *Atul is the cleverest boy in the class.*
(અતુલ વર્ગખંડમાં સૌથી હોશિયાર છે.)

2. **The dog is the most faithful of all animals.**
(કૂતરો પ્રાણીઓમાં સૌથી વિશ્વાસપાત્ર છે.)
3. **Gold is the costliest metal on the earth.**
(સોનુ પૃથ્વી પરનું સૌથી મોઘું ધાતુ છે.)
4. **I am the greatest admirer of Gandhiji.**
(હું ગાંધીજીનો સૌથી મોટો પ્રશંસક છું.)
5. **Bill Gates is the richest man in the world.**
(બિલ ગેટ્સ દુનિયામાં સૌથી વધારે પૈસાદાર માણસ છે.)
6. **Ahmedabad is the biggest city of the Gujarat.**
(અમદાવાદ ગુજરાતનું સૌથી મોટું શહેર છે.)
7. **That is the most beautiful picture.**
(તે સૌથી સુંદર ચિત્ર છે.)
8. **My brother always gives me the best gift.**
(મારો ભાઈ હંમેશા મને સૌથી સારી ભેટ આપે છે.)
9. **The tiger is the strongest of all animals.**
(વાઘ બધા પ્રાણીઓમાં સૌથી મજબૂત છે.)

Examples : Superlative to Positive and Comparative

✓ **Superlative to Positive - No other**

No other + એકવચન નામ + **am/is/was/ક્રિયાપદ** + **as** + વિશેષણ
+ **as** + કર્તા

✓ **Superlative to Comparative - than any other**

કર્તા + **am/is/was/ક્રિયાપદ** + **Comparative** વિશેષણ (**taller/**
greater/the more beautiful) + **than any other** + એકવચન નામ

1. **Gujarati is the easiest subject of all subjects. (Superlative)**

No other subject is as easy as Gujarati. (Positive)

Gujarati is easier than any other subject. (Comparative)

2. *Akbar was the wisest king. (Superlative)*
No other king was wise as Akbar. (Positive)
Akbar was wiser than any other king. (Comparative)
3. *Anita is the smarter girl of all the girls. (Superlative)*
No other girl is as smart as Anita. (Positive)
Anita is smarter than any other girl. (Comparative)
4. *Honesty is the best policy. (Superlative)*
No other policy is as good as honesty. (Positive)
Honesty is better than any other policy. (Comparative)
5. *Priyanka is the most beautiful of all actresses. (Superlative)*
No other actress is as beautiful as Priyanka. (Positive)
Priyanka is more beautiful than any other actress. (Comparative)
6. *Shimla is the coldest place in the India. (Superlative)*
No other place in India is as cold as Shimla. (Positive)
Shimla is colder than any other place in India. (Comparative)
7. *The Ganga is the longest river in India. (Superlative)*
No other river is as long as the Ganga in India. (Positive)
The Ganga is longer than any other river in India. (Comparative)
8. *Gandhiji was the greatest leader of India. (Superlative)*
No other leader of India was as great as Gandhiji. (Positive)
Gandhiji was greater than any other leader of India. (Comparative)
9. *Virat Kohli is the best of all Indian cricketers. (Superlative)*
No other Indian cricketer is as good as Virat Kohli. (Positive)
Virat Kohli is better than any other Indian cricketer. (Comparative)

- ✓ વિદ્યાર્થીઓ ધોરણ ૧૧ અને ૧૨ માં **Degree** ની ફક્ત વાક્યરચના બદલાય છે.
તેના પ્રકાર નહીં.

1. Positive Degree

વાક્ય રચના

Very few + બહુવચનનું નામ + અન્ય શબ્દો + **Are/Were** + **as** +
વિશેષણ + **as** + કર્તા

Examples :

1. **Very few students were as clever as Manish.**
Very few + બહુવચનનું નામ (**students**) + **were** + **as** +
વિશેષણ (**clever**) + **as** + કર્તા (**Manish**)
2. **Very few rivers are as long as the Narmada.**
Very few + બહુવચનનું નામ (**rivers**) + **are** + **as** +
વિશેષણ (**long**) + **as** + કર્તા (**Narmada**)
3. **Very few teachers are as good as Mr. Dinesh.**
Very few + બહુવચનનું નામ (**teachers**) + **are** + **as** +
વિશેષણ (**good**) + **as** + કર્તા (**Mr. Dinesh**)
4. **Very few inventions are as useful as computer.**
Very few + બહુવચનનું નામ (**inventions**) + **are** + **as** +
વિશેષણ (**useful**) + **as** + કર્તા (**computer**)
5. **Very few people are as kind as Mr. Patel.**
Very few + બહુવચનનું નામ (**people**) + **are** + **as** +
વિશેષણ (**kind**) + **as** + કર્તા (**Mr. Patel**)

2. Comparative Degree

વાક્ય રચના

151

કર્તા + **am/is/was**/ક્રિયાપદ + **Comparative** વિશેષણ (**taller/greater/the more beautiful**) + **than most other** + બહુવચન નામ

Examples :

1. **Manish is cleverer than most other students.**
કર્તા (**Manish**) + **is** + **comparative** વિશેષણ (**cleverer**) + **than most other** + બહુવચન નામ (**studnets**)
2. **The Narmada is longer than most other rivers.**
કર્તા (**The Narmada**) + **is** + **comparative** વિશેષણ (**longer**) + **than most other** + બહુવચન નામ (**rivers**)
3. **Mr. Dinesh was better than most other teachers.**
કર્તા (**Mr. Dinesh**) + **was** + **comparative** વિશેષણ (**better**) + **than most other** + બહુવચન નામ (**teachers**)
4. **Computer is more useful than most other inventions.**
કર્તા (**Computer**) + **is** + **comparative** વિશેષણ (**more useful**) + **than most other** + બહુવચન નામ (**inventions**)
5. **Mr. Patel is more kind than most other people.**
કર્તા (**Mr. Patel**) + **is** + **comparative** વિશેષણ (**more kind**) + **than most other** + બહુવચન નામ (**people**)

3. Superlative Degree

વાક્ય રચના

કર્તા + **am/is/was**/ક્રિયાપદ + **one of the** + **Superlative** વિશેષણ (**tallest/greatest/the most beautiful**) + બહુવચન નામ

1. **Manish is one of the cleverest students.**
કર્તા (Manish) + is + one of the + superlative વિશેષણ
(cleverest) + બહુવચન નામ (students)
2. **The Narmada is one of the longest rivers.**
કર્તા (The Narmada) + is + one of the + superlative વિશેષણ
(longest) + બહુવચન નામ (rivers)
3. **Mr. Dinesh is one of the best teachers.**
કર્તા (Mr. Dinesh) + is + one of the + superlative વિશેષણ
(best) + બહુવચન નામ (teachers)
4. **Computer is one of the most useful inventions.**
કર્તા (Computer) + is + one of the + superlative વિશેષણ
(most useful) + બહુવચન નામ (inventions)
5. **Mr. Patel is one of the kindest people.**
કર્તા (Mr. Patel) + is + one of the + superlative વિશેષણ
(kindest) + બહુવચન નામ (people)

Examples : Superlative to Positive and Comparative

1. **The peacock is one of the most beautiful birds.**
The peacock is more beautiful than most other birds.
Very few birds are as beautiful as the peacock.
2. **Swimming is one of the best exercises.**
Swimming is better than most other exercises.
Very few exercises are as good as swimming.
3. **Dhruvil is one of the smartest boys in the class.**
Dhruvil is smarter than most other boys in the class.
Very few boys in the class are as smart as Dhruvil.

4. *The Sardar Sarovar Dam is one of the biggest dams in the Gujarat.*
The Sardar Sarovar Dam is bigger than most other dams in the Gujarat.
Very few dams are big as the Sardar Sarovar Dam in the Gujarat.
5. *Akbar was one of the greatest kings of India.*
Akbar was greater than most other kings of India.
Very few kings of India were as great as Akbar.
6. *The lion is one of the strongest animal.*
The lion is stronger than most other animals.
Very few animals are as strong as the lion.
7. *Mr. Desai is one of the richest men in this city.*
Mr. Desai is richer than most other men in this city.
Very few men in the city are as rich as Mr. Desai.
8. *Mount Everest is one of the highest peaks in the world.*
Mount Everest is higher than most other peaks in the world.
Very few peaks in the world are as high as Mount Everest.
9. *Balaji Heights is one of the highest building in Ahmedabad.*
Balaji Heights is higher than most other building in Ahmedabad.
Very few buildings in Ahmedabad are as high as Balaji Heights.
10. *London is one of the biggest cities of England.*
London is bigger than most other cities of England.
Very few cities of England are as big as London.

વિશેષણના **Comparative** અને **Superlative** રૂપ બનાવવાના

1. જે વિશેષણના અંતે **e** હોતો નથી તેના **Comparative** અને **Superlative** રૂપ નીચે મુજબ બને. (**er and est**)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Rich	Richer	Richest

Tall	Taller	Tallest
Poor	Poorer	Poorest
New	Newer	Newest
High	Higher	Highest

2. જે વિશેષણના અંતે **e** હોતો તેના **Comparative** અને **Superlative** રૂપ નીચે મુજબ બને. (**r and st**)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Huge	Huge	Huge
Large	Large	Large
Nice	Nice	Nice
Safe	Safe	Safe
Pure	Pure	Pure

3. જે વિશેષણના અંતે વ્યંજન હોય અને તેની પહેલા સ્વર (**A, E, I, O, U**) હોય તેના **Comparative** અને **Superlative** રૂપ નીચે મુજબ બને.

(વ્યંજન બેવડાય અને **er and est**)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Hot	Hotter	Hottest
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Fat	Fatter	Fattest
Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Sad	Sadder	Saddest

4. જે વિશેષણના અંતે **"y"** હોય અને તેની આગળ વ્યંજન હોય તો તેના **Comparative** અને **Superlative** રૂપ નીચે મુજબ બને.

(**y** નો **i** થઈ જાય અને **er and est**)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Easy	Easier	Easiest
Dry	Drier	Driest
Happy	Happier	Happiest
Busy	Busier	Busiest
Early	Earlier	Earliest

5. જે વિશેષણના ઉચ્ચાર લાંબા થતાં હોય તેના **Comparative** અને **Superlative** રૂપ નીચે મુજબ બને.
(*more and the most*)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Beautiful	More beautiful	The most beautiful
Careful	More careful	The most careful
Honest	More honest	The most honest
Diffecult	More diffecult	The most diffecult
Important	More important	The most important

6. કેટલાક વિશેષણના **Comparative** અને **Superlative** રૂપ બિલકુલ અલગ રીતે બને જેમ કે,

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Bad	Worse	The worst
Good	Better	The best
Well	Better	The best
Much	More	The most
Many	More	The most

Double Comparison

- **Double Comparison** નો અર્થ “જેટલું વધારે તેટલું વધારે” એવો થાય છે.
- આર્ટીકલ “**The**” નો ઉપયોગ ફરજિયાત છે.
- **Comparative Degree** ના ઉપયોગથી **Double Comparison** બને છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

- જો વિશેષણથી વાક્ય શરૂ થાય તો :
વિશેષણનું **Comparative** રૂપ + નામ + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ

► જો ક્રિયા વિશેષણથી વાક્ય શરૂ થાય તો :

ક્રિયાવિશેષણનું **Comparative** રૂપ + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

1. *The more you advertise, the more demands you will get.*
(The more) + કર્તા (you) + ક્રિયાપદ (advertise)
2. *The more we write, the better our handwriting will be.*
(The more) + કર્તા (we) + ક્રિયાપદ (write)
3. *The faster they walk, the earlier they can reach.*
(The faster) + કર્તા (they) + ક્રિયાપદ (walk)
4. *The harder Dhara works, the more she achieves.*
(The harder) + કર્તા (Dhara) + ક્રિયાપદ (works)
5. *The older a person grows, the weaker he becomes.*
(The older) + કર્તા (a person) + ક્રિયાપદ (grows)
6. *The more practice you do, the more marks you will get.*
(The more) + કર્તા (you) + ક્રિયાપદ (do)
7. *The more carefully we drive, the safer it is for us.*
(The more) + કર્તા (we) + ક્રિયાપદ (drive)
8. *The higher we go, the thinner the air is.*
(The higher) + કર્તા (we) + ક્રિયાપદ (go)
9. *The younger you are, the more intelligent you are.*
(The younger) + કર્તા (you) + ક્રિયાપદ (intelligent)

Each other and One another

- **Each other / One another** પારસ્પરિક અર્થ સૂચવતા સર્વનામો (**Reciprocal Pronouns**) છે.
- **Each other / One another** નો અર્થ “એકબીજાને” અથવા “પરસ્પર” એવો થાય છે.
- બે વ્યક્તિ માટે **Each other** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- બે થી વધારે વ્યક્તિઓ માટે **One another** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

Examples :

1. **Hetal and Mishita help each other.**
(હેતલ અને મિશિતા એકબીજાની મદદ કરે છે.)
બે વ્યક્તિઓ **Hetal and Mishita** એટલે **each other**.
2. **People should help one another.**
(લોકોએ એકબીજાની મદદ કરવી જોઈએ.)
બે થી વધારે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **People** એટલે **one another**.
3. **Both the girls love each other.**
(બંને છોકરીઓ એકબીજાને પ્રેમ કરે છે.)
બે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **Both** એટલે **each other**.
4. **Students played with one another on the ground.**
(વિદ્યાર્થીઓ એકબીજા સાથે મેદાન પર રમ્યા હતા.)
બેથી વધારે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **Students** એટલે **one another**.
5. **Kaushal and I often visit each other's home.**
(કૌશલ અને હું ઘણીવાર એકબીજાના ઘરની મુલાકાત લઈએ છીએ.)
બે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **Kaushal and I** એટલે **each other**.
6. **Worker must co-operate one another in work.**
(કામદારોએ કામમાં એકબીજાને સહકાર આપવો જ જોઈએ.)
બેથી વધારે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **Worker** એટલે **one another**.

7. Paresh and Suresh do not talk with each other.

(પરેશ અને સુરેશ એકબીજા સાથે વાત કરતાં નથી.)

બે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **Paresh and Suresh** એટલે **each other**.

8. People should share one another's happiness.

(લોકોએ એકબીજાનું સુખ વહેંચવું જોઈએ.)

બે થી વધારે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **People** એટલે **one another**.

9. Anil and Anita always like each other's clothes.

(અનિલ અને અનિતાને હંમેશા એકબીજાના કપડાં ગમે છે.)

બે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **Anil and Anita** એટલે **each other**.

10. My friends do not discuss news with one another.

(મારા મિત્રો એકબીજા સાથે સમાચાર ચર્ચતા નથી.)

બે થી વધારે વ્યક્તિઓ છે **My friends** એટલે **one another**.

Enough to

- **Enough** નો અર્થ “પૂરતું” એવો થાય છે.
- કોઈ વ્યક્તિ કંઈક કરવા માટે સમર્થ અથવા લાયક છે તે દર્શાવવા માટે **Enough** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Enough** વાળી વાક્ય રચના હકાર અર્થ સૂચવે છે.
- **Enough** હંમેશા વિશેષણ પછી જ મૂકાય છે જેમ કે,
 - ✓ **Rich enough to spend.** - ખર્ચવા માટે પૂરતું પૈસાદાર.
 - ✓ **Strong enough to fight.** - લડવા માટે પૂરતું મજબૂત.

1. **Anil is too strong not to carry this box.**
Anil is strong enough to carry this box.
 (અનિલ આ ખોખું લઈ જવા પૂરતો બળવાન છે.)
2. **Kavita is so brave that she can fight with anyone.**
Kavita is brave enough to fight with anyone.
 (કવિતા કોઈની પણ સાથે લડવા પૂરતી બહાદુર છે.)
3. **Hardik is so clever that he can learn any subject.**
Hardik is clever enough to learn any subject.
 (હાર્દિક કોઈપણ વિષય શીખવા માટે પૂરતો હોંશિયાર છે.)
4. **This laptop is too cheap for us to buy.**
This laptop is cheap enough for us to buy.
 (આ લેપટોપ અમારે ખરીદવા માટે પૂરતું સસ્તું છે.)
5. **The apples are so sweet that anyone can eat.**
The apples are sweet enough for anyone to eat.
 (આ સફરજન કોઈના પણ ખાવા માટે પૂરતા મીઠાં છે.)
6. **Mishita is so tall that she can touch the roof.**
Mishita is tall enough to touch the roof.
 (મિશિતા છતને સ્પર્શવા પૂરતી ઊંચી છે.)
7. **English language is too easy for me to learn.**
English language is easy enough to learn for me.
 (અંગ્રેજી ભાષા મારા માટે શીખવા માટે પૂરતી સરળ છે.)
8. **Sanjay is too poor to buy expensive clothes.**
Sanjay is poor enough to buy expensive clothes.
 (સંજય મોંઘા કપડાં ખરીદવા માટે પૂરતો ગરીબ છે.)

9. *He is intelligent that he can solve any problem.*

He is intelligent enough to solve any problem.

(તે કોઈપણ સમસ્યા હલ કરવા માટે પૂરતો સમજદાર છે.)

Exclamatory Sentences

- **Exclamatory Sentence** નો અર્થ “ઉદ્ગાર વાક્ય” એવો થાય છે.
- **Exclamatory Sentence** લખ્યા પછી ઉદ્ગાર ચિહ્ન (!) મૂકવું ફરજિયાત છે.
- **Exclamatory Sentence** નો ઉપયોગ અલગ અલગ ભાવનાઓ દર્શાવવા થાય છે જેમ કે ગુસ્સો, મૂંઝવણ, સુખ, આનંદ, નિરાશા, પ્રેમ વગેરે વગેરે.
- **Exclamatory Sentence** બનાવવા માટે “**What**” અને “**How**” નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- જો વાક્યમાં આર્ટિકલ **A** અથવા **An** હોય તો “**What**” નો ઉપયોગ થાય.
- જો વાક્યમાં આર્ટિકલ ના હોય તો “**How**” નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

ઉપયોગની રીત

➤ **What :**

What + A/An + Adjective (વિશેષણ) + એકવચન નામ (*man, girl*)

અથવા

What + A/An + Adjective (વિશેષણ) + એકવચન નામ (*man, girl*)

+ કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ

➤ **How :**

How + Adjective (વિશેષણ) / **Adverb** (ક્રિયાવેશણ) + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ

➤ **What :**

1. *She is a very beautiful girl.*
What a beautiful girl she is !
2. *Anita told an interesting story yesterday.*
What an interesting story Anita told yesterday !
3. *Amit buys a really wonderful shirt.*
What a wonderful shirt Amit buys !
4. *Sunil was a clever boy.*
What a clever boy Sunil was !
5. *Bachu gave us a pleasant surprise.*
What a pleasant surprise Bachu gave us !
6. *It is a really lovely day.*
What a lovely day it is !
7. *Mr. Patel is an honest worker.*
What an honest worker Mr. Patel is !

➤ **How :**

1. *She dances very well.*
How well she dances !
2. *Jitu looked tired yesterday.*
How tired Jitu looked yesterday !
3. *Kalpana is very generous.*
How generous Kalpana is !
4. *That was very interesting.*
How interesting that was !

5. *Jigar plays very gracefully.*
How gracefully Jigar plays !

6. *The ice cream is very cold.*
How cold the ice cream is !

In order that / So that

- *In order that / so that* નો અર્થ “નો હેતુથી” એવો થાય છે.
- *In order that / so that* ને **Adverb clause of purpose** (હેતુસૂચક ક્રિયાવિશેષણ - ઉપવાક્ય) કહેવાય.
- *In order that / so that* એ મુખ્ય વાક્યમાં થયેલી ક્રિયાનો હેતુ અથવા ઈરાદો દર્શાવે છે.
- *In order that / so that* ની સાથે કર્તા પછી વર્તમાનકાળમાં **"Can"** અને ભૂતકાળમાં **"Could"** નો ઉપયોગ કરવો પડે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

- મુખ્ય વાક્ય + *In order that / so that* + કર્તા + **Can/Could** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

1. *I went to supermarket to buy grocery.*
I went to supermarket so that I could buy grocery.
 (હું કરિયાણું ખરીદી શકું તે માટે હું સુપરમાર્કેટ ગયો હતો.)
to buy grocery એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે
 તેથી ત્યાં **so that** + કર્તા (**I**) + **could** (**went** ભૂતકાળ)

2. **Anil is learning English to get a good job.**

Anil is learning English in order that he can get a good job.

(અનિલ સારી નોકરી મેળવી શકે તે માટે તે અંગ્રેજી ભણી રહ્યો છે.)

to get a good job એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે

તેથી ત્યાં **in order that** + કર્તા (**Anil - He**) + **can** (**is** વર્તમાનકાળ)

3. **People plant trees in order to save the environment.**

People plant trees so that they can save the environment.

(લોકો પર્યાવરણ બચાવી શકે તે માટે વૃક્ષો વાવે છે.)

in order to save the environment એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે

તેથી ત્યાં + કર્તા (**People - They**) + **can** (**Plant** - વર્તમાનકાળ)

4. **I wanted to learn the computer so I bought it.**

I bought the computer in order that I could learn it.

(હું કોમ્પ્યુટર શીખી શકું તે માટે મેં કોમ્પ્યુટર ખરીદ્યું હતું.)

I wanted to learn the computer એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે

તેથી ત્યાં **in order that** + કર્તા (**I**) + **could** (**wanted** ભૂતકાળ)

5. **Sunil goes to gym regularly because he wants to remain fit.**

Sunil goes to gym regularly so that he can remain fit.

(સુનિલ તંદુરસ્ત રહી શકે તે માટે તે નિયમિત જીમ જાય છે.)

wants to remain fit એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે

તેથી ત્યાં **so that** + કર્તા (**Sunil - He**) + (**Goes** - વર્તમાનકાળ)

6. **You left Surat in the morning to reach Bombay in the evening.**

You left Surat in the morning in order that you could reach

Bombay in the evening.

(તમે બોમ્બે સાંજે પહોંચી શકો તે માટે તમે સવારે વહેલા સુરત છોડી દીધું હતું.)

to reach Bombay in the evening એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે

તેથી ત્યાં **in order that** + કર્તા (**You**) + **could** (**Left** ભૂતકાળ)

7. ***We must drive carefully to avoid the accidents.***

We must drive carefully so that we can avoid the accidents.

(આપણે અકસ્માતો ટાળી શકીએ તે માટે કાળજીપૂર્વક ડ્રાઈવ કરવું જ જોઈએ.)

to avoid the accidents એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે તેથી ત્યાં ***so that***

+ કર્તા (***We - We***) + (***must drive*** - વર્તમાનકાળ)

8. ***Hetal gets up early in the morning to prepare the breakfast for family.***

Hetal gets up early in the morning so that she can prepare the breakfast for family.

(હેતલ સવારનો નાસ્તો કુટુંબ માટે બનાવી શકે તે માટે તે સવારમાં વહેલી ઉઠે છે.)

to prepare the breakfast for family એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે

તેથી ત્યાં ***so that*** + કર્તા (***Hetal - She***) + ***can*** (***Goes*** - વર્તમાનકાળ)

9. ***I walked very fast yesterday because I wanted to catch the train.***

I walked very fast yesterday in order that I could catch the train.

(હું ટ્રેન પકડી શકું તે માટે ગઈકાલે હું ઝડપથી ચાલ્યો હતો.)

I wanted to catch the train એ હેતુ દર્શાવે છે

તેથી ત્યાં ***in order that*** + કર્તા (***I***) + ***could*** (***wanted*** ભૂતકાળ)

As soon as / No sooner...Than / Hardly...when

- ***As soon as / No sooner...than / Hardly...when*** નો અર્થ “તરત જ” થાય છે.
- સમયનો ઉલ્લેખ કરે છે તેથી તેને ***Adverb Clause of Time*** કહેવાય છે.
- એક પછી એક તરત જ થયેલી ક્રિયાઓ દર્શાવવા માટે તેનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- ***As soon as*** વાળા વાક્યમાં પહેલા વાક્ય પછી “,” (અલ્પવિરામ) મૂકવું જરૂરી છે.
- ***No sooner...Did/Do/Does...Than*** હોય છે અને પહેલા વાક્યમાં મૂળક્રિયાપદ આવે.
- ***Hardly Had ... When*** હોય છે અને પહેલા વાક્યમાં ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત આવે.
- ***No sooner*** નકારનો નિર્દેશ કરે છે.
- ***As soon as / Hardly had*** હકારનો નિર્દેશ કરે છે.

➤ **As soon as**

As soon as + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો + અભ્યવિરામ " , "
+ કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો

➤ **No sooner Did**

No sooner + Do/Does/Did + કર્તા + મૂળક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો + **than**
+ કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો

➤ **Hardly When**

Hardly + had + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો + **when**
+ કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદ + કર્મ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

As Soon as

1. **I saw the thief. He ran away.**

As soon as I saw the thief, he ran away.

As soon as + કર્તા (**I**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**saw**) + અન્ય શબ્દો + કર્તા (**he**)
+ ક્રિયાપદ (**ran**)

2. **Sunita started playing piano. People sat down to listen to it.**

As soon as Sunita started playing piano, people sat down to listen to it.

As soon as + કર્તા (**Sunita**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**started**) + અન્ય શબ્દો +
કર્તા (**people**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**sat**)

3. **The teacher entered into the classroom. Students stopped talking.**

As soon as the teacher entered into the classroom, students stopped talking.

As soon as + કર્તા (**the teacher**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**entered**) + અન્ય શબ્દો
+ કર્તા (**students**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**stopped**)

4. Kishan crossed the road. He met with an accident.

As soon as Kishan crossed the road, he met with an accident.

As soon as + કર્તા (**Kishan**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**crossed**) + અન્ય શબ્દો +
કર્તા (**he**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**met**)

5. We came from school and immediately we went to market.

As soon as we came from school, we went to market.

As soon as + કર્તા (**we**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**came**) + અન્ય શબ્દો +
કર્તા (**we**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**went**)

6. Driver saw the red signal and he stopped the bus.

As soon driver saw the red signal, he stopped the bus.

As soon as + કર્તા (**driver**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**saw**) + અન્ય શબ્દો
+ કર્તા (**he**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**stopped**)

7. People saw an accident on the road. They rushed to help.

As soon as people saw an accident on the road, they rushed to help.

As soon as + કર્તા (**people**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**saw**) + અન્ય શબ્દો +
કર્તા (**they**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**rushed**)

8. The heart stops beating. The person dies.

As soon as the heart stops beating, the person dies.

As soon as + કર્તા (**the heart**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**stop**) + અન્ય શબ્દો +
કર્તા (**the person**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**dies**)

9. I hear his name. I get annoyed.

As soon as I hear his name, I get annoyed.

As soon as + કર્તા (**I**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**hear**) + અન્ય શબ્દો +
કર્તા (**I**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**get**)

10. Manoj got the question paper. He became delighted.

As soon as Manoj got the question paper, he became delighted.

As soon as + કર્તા (**Manoj**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**got**) + અન્ય શબ્દો +
કર્તા (**he**) + ક્રિયાપદ (**became**)

1. *I saw the thief. He ran away.**No sooner did I see the thief than he ran away.**No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, saw) + કર્તા (I) + ક્રિયાપદ (see) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (he) + ક્રિયાપદ (ran)*2. *Sunita started playing piano. People sat down to listen to it.**No sooner did Sunita start playing piano than people sat down to listen to it.**No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, started) + કર્તા (Sunita) + ક્રિયાપદ (start) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (people) + ક્રિયાપદ (sat)*3. *The teacher entered into the classroom. Students stopped talking.**No Sooner did the teacher enter into the classroom than students stopped talking.**No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, entered) + કર્તા (the teacher) + ક્રિયાપદ (enter) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (students) + ક્રિયાપદ (stopped)*4. *Kishan crossed the road. He met with an accident.**No sooner did Kishan cross the road than he met with an accident.**No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, crossed) + કર્તા (Kishan) + ક્રિયાપદ (cross) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (he) + ક્રિયાપદ (met)*5. *We came from school and immediately we went to market.**No sooner did we come from school than we went to market.**No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, came) + કર્તા (we) + ક્રિયાપદ (come) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (we) + ક્રિયાપદ (went)*6. *Driver saw the red signal and he stopped the bus.**No sooner did driver see the red signal than he stopped the bus.**No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, saw) + કર્તા (the driver) + ક્રિયાપદ (see) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (he) + ક્રિયાપદ (stopped)*

7. People saw an accident on the road. They rushed to help.

No sooner did people see an accident on the road than they rushed to help.

No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, saw) + કર્તા (people) +

ક્રિયાપદ (see) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (they) + ક્રિયાપદ (rushed)

8. The heart stops beating. The person dies.

No sooner does the heart stop beating than the person dies.

No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, stops) + કર્તા (the heart) +

ક્રિયાપદ (stop) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (the person) + ક્રિયાપદ (dies)

9. I heard his name. I got annoyed.

No sooner did I hear his name than I got annoyed.

No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, hear) + કર્તા (I) +

ક્રિયાપદ (hear) + અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (I) + ક્રિયાપદ (get)

10. Manoj got the question paper. He became delighted.

No sooner did Manoj get the question paper than he became delighted.

No sooner + did (ભૂતકાળ, got) + કર્તા (Manoj) + ક્રિયાપદ (got) +

અન્ય શબ્દો + than + કર્તા (he) + ક્રિયાપદ (became)

Hardly when

1. I saw the thief. He ran away.

Hardly had I seen the thief when he ran away.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (I) + ક્રિયાપદ (seen ભૂતકૃદંત) + અન્ય શબ્દો

+ when + કર્તા (he) + ક્રિયાપદ (ran)

2. Sunita started playing piano. People sat down to listen to it.

Hardly had Sunita started playing piano when people sat down to listen to it.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (Sunita) + ક્રિયાપદ (started ભૂતકૃદંત)

+ અન્ય શબ્દો + when + કર્તા (people) + ક્રિયાપદ (sat)

3. *The teacher entered into the classroom. Students stopped talking.*
Hardly had the teacher entered into the classroom when students stopped talking.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (the teacher) + ક્રિયાપદ (entered ભૂતકૃદંત)
 + અન્ય શબ્દો + *when* + કર્તા (*students*) + ક્રિયાપદ (*stopped*)

4. *Kishan crossed the road. He met with an accident.*
Hardly Had Kishan crossed the road when he met with an accident.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (Kishan) + ક્રિયાપદ (crossed ભૂતકૃદંત)
 + અન્ય શબ્દો + *when* + કર્તા (*he*) + ક્રિયાપદ (*met*)

5. *We came from school and immediately we went to market.*
Hardly Had we come from school when we went to market.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (we) + ક્રિયાપદ (come ભૂતકૃદંત)
 + અન્ય શબ્દો + *when* + કર્તા (*we*) + ક્રિયાપદ (*went*)

6. *Driver saw the red signal and he stopped the bus.*
Hardly Had the driver see the red signal when he stopped the bus.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (driver) + ક્રિયાપદ (seen ભૂતકૃદંત)
 + અન્ય શબ્દો + *when* + કર્તા (*when*) + ક્રિયાપદ (*seen*)

7. *People saw an accident on the road. They rushed to help.*
Hardly Had people see an accident on the road when they rushed to help.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (people) + ક્રિયાપદ (seen ભૂતકૃદંત)
 + અન્ય શબ્દો + *when* + કર્તા (*they*) + ક્રિયાપદ (*rushed*)

8. *The heart stops beating. The person dies.*
Hardly Had that heart stop beating when the person dies.

Hardly + had + કર્તા (Manoj) + ક્રિયાપદ (got ભૂતકૃદંત)
 + અન્ય શબ્દો + *when* + કર્તા (*he*) + ક્રિયાપદ (*became*)

Not only.....But also / Both....and

170

- **Both....and** નો અર્થ “બંને” એવો થાય છે.
- **Not only....but also** નો અર્થ “ફક્ત આજ નહીં, પણ” એવો થાય છે.
- **Both....and** અને **but also** બંને એકબીજાના પર્યાય તરીકે વાપરી શકાય છે, પરંતુ બંનેની વાક્ય રચના અલગ અલગ હોય છે.

Examples :

1. **Anita is a clever girl. Sunita is a clever girl.**
Both Anita and Sunita are clever girls.
(અનિતા અને સુનિતા બંને હોશિયાર છોકરીઓ છે.)
Not only Anita but also Sunita is a clever girl.
(ફક્ત અનિતા જ નહીં પરંતુ સુનિતા પણ હોશિયાર છોકરીઓ છે.)
2. **Mr. Patel can teach English very well. He can teach Science too.**
Mr. Patel can teach both English and Science.
(શ્રીમાન પટેલ અંગ્રેજી અને વિજ્ઞાન બંને ભણાવી શકે છે.)
Mr. Patel can teach not only English but also Science.
(શ્રીમાન પટેલ ફક્ત અંગ્રેજી જ નહીં પરંતુ વિજ્ઞાન પણ ભણાવી શકે છે.)
3. **This painting is beautiful and very large too.**
This painting is both beautiful and large.
(આ ચિત્ર સુંદર અને મોટું બંને છે.)
This painting is not only beautiful but also large.
(આ ચિત્ર ફક્ત સુંદર જ નહીં પણ મોટું પણ છે.)
4. **The students are hard working. They are honest also.**
The students are both hard working and honest.
(વિદ્યાર્થીઓ મહેનતુ અને પ્રામાણિક પણ છે.)
The students are not only hard working but also honest.
(વિદ્યાર્થીઓ ફક્ત મહેનતુ જ નહીં પરંતુ પ્રામાણિક પણ છે.)

5. *This mobile is latest and it is expensive.*

This mobile is both latest and expensive.

(આ મોબાઈલ નવીન અને મોંઘો પણ છે.)

This mobile is not only latest but also expensive.

(આ મોબાઈલ ફક્ત નવીન જ નહીં પરંતુ મોંઘો પણ છે.)

Apostrophe 's / of

- **Apostrophe 's / of** નો અર્થ “નો, ની, નું, ના” થાય છે.
- બે વસ્તુઓ અથવા બે વ્યક્તિઓ વચ્ચેનો સંબંધ દર્શાવવા માટે તેનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Apostrophe 's / of** એકબીજાની જગ્યાએ વાપરી શકાય છે.
પરંતુ ઉપયોગની રીત અલગ અલગ છે. જે નીચે સમજાવેલ છે.

Ramesh's car - **Car of Ramesh.** (રમેશની ગાડી)

Ankit's mobile - **Mobile of Ankit.** (અંકિતનો મોબાઈલ)

Hardik's pen - **Pen of Hardik.** (હાર્દિકની પેન)

Examples :

1. **This is Rahul's new laptop.**
This is new laptop of Rahul.
2. **I attended Anita's wedding last week.**
I attended wedding of Anita last week.
3. **Sarita is Samir's cousin.**
Sarita is cousin of Samir.
4. **Harsh has taken Sagar's book.**
Harsh has taken the book of Sagar.
5. **Jitendra's brother is very tall.**
Brother of Jitendra is very tall.

Perfect Modal Auxiliaries

- **Perfect Modal Auxiliaries** નો મતલબ પૂર્ણસહાયકારક ક્રિયાપદ એવો થાય છે.
- અલગ અલગ પરિસ્થિતીમાં અલગ અલગ **Perfect Modal Auxiliaries** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

Perfect Modal Auxiliaries

1. **Shall / Will**
2. **Should / Would**
3. **Can / Could**
4. **Must**
5. **Might**

- બધા **Perfect Modal Auxiliaries** એક સરખી રીતે વપરાય છે.

✓ **Active Form :**

કર્તા + **Modal** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ **Passive Form :**

કર્તા + **Modal** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો

Shall / Will

- ભવિષ્યમાં અમુક સમયે ક્રિયા પૂરી થઈ ગઈ હશે તેવું દર્શાવવા માટે ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
જેમ કે,
 - આવતીકાલે પાંચ વાગ્યે તે બરોડા પહોંચી ગયો હશે.
 - આવતા મંગળવારે સુનિતા સવારે મુસાફરી કરતી હશે.
- સમયનો ઉલ્લેખ કરતાં શબ્દો મૂકવા જરૂરી છે.
ઉપરના વાક્યો ભવિષ્યમાં અમુક સમયે ક્રિયાઓ પૂરી થઈ ગઈ હશે તેવું સૂચન કરે છે તેથી **shall/will** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.

✓ **Active Form :**

કર્તા + **shall / will + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**)
+ અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ **Passive Form :**

કર્મ + **shall / will + have + been +**
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**) + કર્તા વિભક્તિરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active Form Examples :**1. He will have cut vegetable by this time tomorrow.**

(તેણે આવતીકાલે આ સમયે શાકભાજી કાપી લીધા હશે.)

કર્તા (**He**) + **will + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**cut**)
+ **by this time tomorrow** (ભવિષ્યકાળનો શબ્દ)

2. We shall have played cricket by tomorrow 5 pm.

(આપણે આવતીકાલે ૫ વાગ્યા સુધી ક્રિકેટ રમી લીધી હશે.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **shall + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played**)
+ **tomorrow 5 pm.** (ભવિષ્યકાળનો શબ્દ)

3. Anil will have finished his work by next Wednesday.

(અનિલે આવતા બુધવાર સુધી તેનું કામ પતાવી લીધું હશે.)

કર્તા (**Anil**) + **will + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**finished**)
+ **by next Wednesday** (ભવિષ્યકાળનો શબ્દ)

4. Sunita will have watched this movie by tomorrow afternoon.

(સુનિતાએ આવતીકાલે બપોર સુધીમાં આ મૂવી જોઈ નાખ્યું હશે.)

કર્તા (**Sunita**) + **will + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**watched**)
+ **by tomorrow afternoon** (ભવિષ્યકાળનો શબ્દ)

5. They will have sung poems by this time tomorrow.

(તેઓએ આવતીકાલ સુધીમાં આ કવિતાઓ ગાઈ લીધી હશે.)

કર્તા **(They)** + **will** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **(sung)**
+ **by this time tomorrow** (ભવિષ્યકાળનો શબ્દ)

Passive Form Examples :

1. Trees will have been planted by us at this time tomorrow.

કર્મ **(Trees)** + **will** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **(planted)**
+ **by** + કર્તા **We** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **us** + અન્ય શબ્દો

2. An essay will have been written by students by next week.

કર્મ **(An essay)** + **will** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **(written)**
+ **by** + કર્તા **students** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **students** + અન્ય શબ્દો

3. Computers will have been bought by us next friday.

કર્મ **(Computers)** + **will** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **(bought)**
+ **by** + કર્તા **We** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **us** + અન્ય શબ્દો

4. Prizes will have been given by chief guest by tomorrow evening.

કર્મ **(Prizes)** + **will** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **(given)**
+ **by** + કર્તા **chief guest** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **chief guest** + અન્ય શબ્દો

5. The car will have been washed by Amit tomorrow at this time.

કર્મ **(The car)** + **will** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત **(washed)**
+ **by** + કર્તા **Amit** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **Amit** + અન્ય શબ્દો

Should/Would

- **Should** નો **Modal Perfect** તરીકે ઉપયોગ થાય ત્યારે તેનો અર્થ “કોઈ કાર્ય પૂરું થવું જોઈતું હતું” એવો થાય છે.
- **Would** નો **Modal Perfect** તરીકે ઉપયોગ થાય ત્યારે તેનો અર્થ “કઈક થઈ શકતું હતું” એવો થાય છે.

- **If** સાથે પહેલા વાક્યમાં પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ હોય તો બીજા વાક્યમાં **would** નો **Modal Perfect** તરીકે ઉપયોગ થાય જે નીચે ઉદાહરણમાં જોઈ શકાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

✓ **Active Form :**

કર્તા + **should/ would + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**)
+ અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ **Passive Form :**

કર્મ + **should / would + have + been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત
(**played/gone**) + **by** + કર્તા વિભક્તિરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active Form Examples :

1. **If I had time, I would have stopped the payment.**

(જો મારી પાસે સમય હોત તો મેં ચુકવણી રોકી હોત.)

If + પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ(**I had**) + કર્તા (**I**) + **would + have** +
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**stopped**)

2. **We should have done this work.**

(અમારે આ કામ કરવું જોઈતું હતું.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **should + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**done**)

3. **If Dhruv had money, he would have gone to Canada.**

(જો ધ્રુવ પાસે પૈસા હોત તો તે કેનેડા ગયો હોત.)

If + પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ(**Dhruv had**) + કર્તા (**he**) + **would + have** +
ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**gone**)

4. **Ramesh should have finished his project.**

(રમેશે આ પ્રોજેક્ટ પૂરો કરવો જોઈતો હતો.)

કર્તા (**Ramesh**) + **should + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**finished**)

5. If Anil had gone to market, he would have bought a new computer.

(જો અનિલ બજાર ગયો હોત તો તેણે કોમ્પ્યુટર ખરીદ્યું હોત.)

If + પૂર્ણભૂતકાળ(Anil had gone) + કર્તા (he) + would + have + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (bought)

Passive Form Examples :

1. If bank manager had known, cash payment would have been stopped by him.

કર્મ (Cash payment) + would + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (stopped) + by + કર્તા Bank manager (he) નું વિભક્તિરૂપ him

2. If Rameshbhai had a chance, bus would have been driven by him.

કર્મ (bus) + would + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (driven) + by + કર્તા Rameshbhai નું વિભક્તિરૂપ Rameshbhai

3. If we had worked hard, prize would have been won by us.

કર્મ (prize) + would + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (won) + by + કર્તા We નું વિભક્તિરૂપ us

4. Songs should have been sung by Lata.

કર્મ (songs) + would + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (sung) + by + કર્તા Lata નું વિભક્તિરૂપ Lata

5. If Dhara had free time, clothes would have been chosen by her.

કર્મ (clothes) + would + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (chosen) + by + કર્તા She નું વિભક્તિરૂપ Her

- **Modal Perfect** તરીકે **Could** ભૂતકાળની શક્યતા બતાવે છે.
 “કરી શક્યો હોત” અથવા “કરી શકાયું હોત” એવો અર્થ થાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

✓ **Active Form :**

કર્તા + **could** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**)
 + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ **Passive Form :**

કર્તા + **could** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**)
 + **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active Form Examples :

1. **Sunita could have passed the exam.**
 (સુનિતા પરીક્ષા પાસ કરી શકી હોત.)
 કર્તા (**Sunita**) + **could** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**passed**)
2. **Amit could have cooked many food items.**
 (અમિત ઘણી ખાવાની વસ્તુઓ બનાવી શક્યો હોત.)
 કર્તા (**Amit**) + **could** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**cooked**)
3. **They could have worked for long hours.**
 (તેઓ લાંબા સમય સુધી કામ કરી શક્યા હોત.)
 કર્તા (**They**) + **could** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**worked**)
4. **Sunil could have written history books.**
 (સુનિલ ઇતિહાસના પુસ્તકો લખી શક્યો હોત.)
 કર્તા (**Sunil**) + **could** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**written**)

5. We could have walked faster.

(આપણે વધારે ઝડપથી ચાલી શક્યા હોત.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **could** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**walked**)

Passive Form Examples :

1. Apples could have been cut with knife by him.

(તેના દ્વારા સફરજન ચપ્પાથી કપાઈ શકતા હતા.)

કર્મ (**Apples**) + **could** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**cut**) + **by** + કર્તા **He** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **him**

2. Three litres of milk could have been drunk by her.

(તેના દ્વારા ત્રણ લીટર દૂધ પી શકાયું હોત.)

કર્મ (**Three litres of milk**) + **could** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**drunk**) + **by** + કર્તા **She** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **her**

3. Dozen bananas could have been eaten by Rahul.

(રાહુલ દ્વારા ડઝન કેળા ખવાઈ શક્યા હોત.)

કર્મ (**Dozen bananas**) + **could** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**eaten**) + **by** + કર્તા **Rahul** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **Rahul**

4. A poem could have been sung by Sangita.

(સંગિતા દ્વારા કવિતા ગાઈ શકાઈ હોત.)

કર્મ (**A poem**) + **could** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**sung**) + **by** + કર્તા **Sangita** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **Sangita**

5. Party could have been attended by them.

(તેમના દ્વારા પાર્ટીમાં જોડાઈ શકાયું હોત.)

કર્મ (**Party**) + **could** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**attended**) + **by** + કર્તા **They** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **them**

- **Must** નો **Perfect Modal** તરીકે ઉપયોગ થાય ત્યારે તેનો અર્થ “હોવું જોઈએ” એવો થાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

✓ **Active Form :**

કર્તા + **must** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ **Passive Form :**

કર્તા + **must** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**) + **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active Form Examples :

1. **He must have worked hard to get good marks.**
(તેણે સારા માર્ક્સ મેળવવા સખત મહેનત કરવી જ પડશે.)
કર્તા (**He**) + **must** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**worked**)
2. **She must have gone to school.**
(તેણે શાળાએ જવું જ પડશે.)
કર્તા (**She**) + **must** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**gone**)
3. **We must have walked faster to catch the bus.**
(આપણે બસ પકડવા ઝડપથી ચાલવું જ પડશે.)
કર્તા (**We**) + **must** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**walked**)
4. **They must have attended that party.**
(તેમણે પાર્ટી એટેન્ડ ન જ કરવી પડશે.)
કર્તા (**They**) + **must** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**attended**)
5. **Sunil and Anil must have visited the Taj Mahal.**
(સુનિલ અને અનિલે તાજમહલની મુલાકાત લેવી જ પડશે.)
કર્તા (**Sunil and Anil**) + **must** + **have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**visited**)

1. **Trees must not have been cut by people.**

(વૃક્ષો લોકો દ્વારા ન જ કપાવા જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Trees**) + **must** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (**cut**) + **by** + કર્તા **People** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **People**2. **Money must have been paid by Ramesh.**

(રમેશ દ્વારા પૈસા ચૂકવવા જ પડશે.)

કર્મ (**Money**) + **must** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (**paid**) + **by** + કર્તા **Ramesh** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **Ramesh**3. **Exam must have been given by him.**

(તેના દ્વારા પરીક્ષા અપાવી જ જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (**Exam**) + **must** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (**given**) + **by** + કર્તા **He** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **Him**4. **Clothes must have been bought by her.**

(તેના દ્વારા કપડાં ખરીદાવા જ પડશે.)

કર્મ (**Clothes**) + **must** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (**bought**) + **by** + કર્તા **She** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **Her**5. **Apples must have been eaten by them.**

(તેમના દ્વારા સફરજન ખાવા જ પડશે.)

કર્મ (**Apples**) + **must** + **have** + **been** + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (**eaten**) + **by** + કર્તા **They** નું વિભક્તિરૂપ **Them****May/Might**► **May/Might** નો ઉપયોગ સંભાવના શક્યતા, પરવાનગી અથવા આશીર્વાદ દર્શાવવા થાય છે.

- ✓ આજે કદાચ વરસાદ પડશે. (સંભાવના)
- ✓ ભગવાન તમારું ભલું કરે. (આશીર્વાદ)
- ✓ હું અંદર આવી શકું ? (પરવાનગી)

- આપણે જ્યારે કદાચ શબ્દનો ઉપયોગ કરીએ ત્યારે **May/Might** નો ઉપયોગ થાય.
- યાદ રાખો કે **Might** એ **May** નું ભૂતકાળનું રૂપ છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

✓ **Active Form :**

કર્તા + **might + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**) + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ **Passive Form :**

કર્તા + **might + have + been** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**played/gone**)
+ **by** + કર્તા (કર્મ વિભક્તિરૂપ) + અન્ય શબ્દો

Active Form Examples :

1. **Rahul might have come today.**

(આજે રાહુલ કદાચ આવ્યો હોવો જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**Rahul**) + **might + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**come**)

2. **We might have gone to Bombay.**

(અમે કદાચ બોમ્બે ગયા હોવા જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**We**) + **might + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**gone**)

3. **Sunita might have read two books.**

(સુનિતાએ કદાચ બે પુસ્તકો વાંચ્યા હોવા જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**Sunita**) + **might + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**read**)

4. **I might have taken this pencil.**

(મે કદાચ પેન્સિલ લીધી હોવી જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**I**) + **might + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**taken**)

5. **They might have listened to songs.**

(તેમણે કદાચ ગીતો ગાયા હોવા જોઈએ.)

કર્તા (**They**) + **might + have** + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત (**listened**)

1. **Computer might have been bought by Amit.**

(અમિત દ્વારા કદાચ કોમ્પ્યુટર ખરીદાયું હોવું જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (Computer) + might + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (bought) + by + કર્તા Amit નું વિભક્તિરૂપ Amit2. **Garden might have been visited by Anil last night.**

(અનિલ દ્વારા કદાચ ગઈ રાત્રે બગીચાની મુલાકાત થઈ હોવી જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (Garden) + might + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (visited) + by + કર્તા Anil નું વિભક્તિરૂપ Anil3. **The Taj Mahal might have been seen by him.**

(તેના દ્વારા તાજમહલ જોવાયો હોવો જોઈએ)

કર્મ (The Tajmahal) + might + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (seen) + by + કર્તા He નું વિભક્તિરૂપ him4. **Chinese might have been eaten by us.**

(અમારા દ્વારા કદાચ ચાઈનીઝ ખવાયું હોવું જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (Chinese) + might + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (eaten) + by + કર્તા We નું વિભક્તિરૂપ us5. **New mobile might have been purchased by her.**

(તેના દ્વારા કદાચ નવો મોબાઈલ ખરીદાયો હોવો જોઈએ.)

કર્મ (New mobile) + might + have + been + ક્રિયાપદનું
ભૂતકૃદંત (purchased) + by + કર્તા She નું વિભક્તિરૂપ her**Relative Pronouns**

- **Relative Pronouns** એટલે સંબંધી સર્વનામો.
- બે વાક્યોને જોડવા માટે તેનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- દરેક સંબંધી સર્વનામનો ઉપયોગ તેના અર્થ મુજબ થાય છે.

► નીચે દરેક નો અર્થ આપલે છે.

- ✓ **Who** : (કે જે) માણસો માટે જ
- ✓ **Whom** : (કે જેને) ચોક્કસ માણસની ઓળખાણ આપવા
- ✓ **Whose** : (કે જેનું / કે જેની / કે જેના / કે જેનો)
- ✓ **Which** : (કે જે) ફક્ત પ્રાણીઓ અને વસ્તુઓ માટે

Examples :

1. **He is the man, who won the match.**
The man - માણસની વાત છે એટલે **Who**
2. **That is my uncle, who met me yesterday.**
My uncle - માણસની વાત છે એટલે **Who**
3. **I know the boy, who goes to garden everyday.**
The boy - માણસની વાત છે એટલે **Who**
4. **This is the bicycle, which was stolen.**
The bicycle - વસ્તુની વાત છે એટલે **Which**
5. **I have a pen, which is in red colour.**
A pen - વસ્તુની વાત છે એટલે **Which**
6. **That is the lion, which has three cubs.**
The lion - પ્રાણીની વાત છે એટલે **Which**
7. **Here is the girl, whose mobile was broken.**
છોકરીનો મોબાઈલ એવું કહેવું છે એટલે **Whose**
8. **This is the man, whose car is parked in no parking.**
માણસની ગાડી એવું કહેવું છે એટલે **Whose**
9. **There is the boy, whose computer is new.**
છોકરાનું કોમ્પ્યુટર એવું કહેવું છે એટલે **Whose**

10. *Sarita is the girl, whom teacher punished yesterday.*

જે છોકરીને સજા કરી હતી તેવું કહેવું છે એટલે **Whom**

11. *That is the person, whom I met in mall.*

જે માણસ મને મળ્યો હતો તેવું કહેવું છે એટલે **Whom**

12. *This is the merchant, whom I know very well.*

વેપારી કે જેને હું ઓળખું છું તેવું કહેવું છે એટલે **Whom**

So / Therefore

- **So/Therefore** નો અર્થ “તેથી” એવો થાય છે.
- **So** ના બદલે **Therefore** અને **Therefore** ના બદલે **so** નો ઉપયોગ કરી શકાય છે.
- બે વાક્યોને જોડવા માટે **So/Therefore** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- એક વાક્ય “કારણ” દર્શાવે છે અને બીજું “પરિણામ” દર્શાવે છે.

Examples :

1. *We reached late. We missed the train.*

(અમે મોડા પહોંચ્યા. અમે ટ્રેન ચૂકી ગયા.)

We reached late so we missed the train.

(અમે મોડા પહોંચ્યા તેથી અમે ટ્રેન ચૂકી ગયા.)

2. *He is ill. He can't go to school.*

(તે માંદો છે. તે શાળાએ જઈ શકે નહીં.)

He is ill therefore he can't go to school.

(તે માંદો છે તેથી તે શાળાએ જઈ શકે નહીં.)

3. *It rained yesterday. We could not play cricket.*

(ગઈકાલે વરસાદ પડ્યો હતો. અમે ક્રિકેટ રમી શક્યા ન હતા.)

It rained yesterday so we could not play cricket.

(ગઈકાલે વરસાદ પડ્યો હતો તેથી અમે ક્રિકેટ રમી શક્યા ન હતા.)

4. Amit does not play football because he does not like it.

(અમિત ફૂટબોલ રમતો નથી કારણ કે તેને તે પસંદ નથી.)

Amit does not like football therefore he does not play it.

(અમિતને ફૂટબોલ પસંદ નથી તેથી તે ફૂટબોલ રમતો નથી.)

5. I have money. I can buy camera.

(મારી પાસે પૈસા છે. હું કેમેરા ખરીદી શકું.)

I have money so I can buy camera.

(મારી પાસે પૈસા છે તેથી હું કેમેરા ખરીદી શકું.)

6. They did not attend the party because they were tired.

(તેઓ પાર્ટીમાં હાજર રહી શક્યા નહીં કારણ કે તેઓ થાકી ગયા હતા.)

They were tired therefore they did not attend the party.

(તેઓ થાકી ગયા હતા તેથી તેઓ પાર્ટીમાં હાજર રહી શક્યા નહીં.)

7. Sunita has passed the exam because she has worked hard.

(સુનિતા પરીક્ષામાં પાસ થઈ કારણ કે તેણે સખત મહેનત કરી છે.)

Sunita has worked hard so she has passed the exam.

(સુનિતાએ સખત મહેનત કરી છે તેથી તે પરીક્ષામાં પાસ થઈ.)

8. You eat vegetable because you want to remain healthy.

(તું શાકભાજી ખાય છે કારણ કે તારે તંદુરસ્ત રહેવું છે.)

You want to remain healthy therefore you eat vegetables.

(તારે તંદુરસ્ત રહેવું છે તેથી તું શાકભાજી ખાય છે.)

9. Rakesh solves sum easily. He is good at Mathematics.

(રાકેશ દાખલો સરળતાથી હલ કરે છે. તે ગણિતમાં સારો છે.)

Rakesh is good at Mathematics so he solves sum easily.

(રાકેશ ગણિતમાં સારો છે તેથી તે દાખલો સરળતાથી હલ કરે છે.)

10. Anita goes to library everyday. She loves to read books.

(અનિતા દરરોજ પુસ્તકાલય જાય છે. તેને પુસ્તકો વાંચવાનું ગમે છે.)

Anita loves to read books therefore she goes to library everyday.

(અનિતાને પુસ્તકો વાંચવા ગમે છે તેથી તે દરરોજ પુસ્તકાલય જાય છે.)

Same...as / Such...as

- **Same...as** નો અર્થ “એ જ.....કે જે” એવો થાય છે.
- **Such...as** નો અર્થ “એવું જ.....કે જે” એવો થાય છે.
- **Same** અને **Such** ચોક્કસ વ્યક્તિ અથવા વસ્તુની ઓળખાણ આપે છે. જેમ કે,
 - ✓ **Such apples** - એવા જ સફરજન.
 - ✓ **Same boy** - એ જ છોકરો.
- વાક્યમાં આપેલ વ્યક્તિ અથવા વસ્તુ વિશે વધારાની માહિતી આપે છે, જેમ કે
 - ✓ **Such apples...as are big.** - એવા જ સફરજન...કે જે મોટા હોય.
 - ✓ **Same boy...as I saw on TV** - એ જ છોકરો... કે જેને મેં ટીવી પર જોયો હતો.

Same...as

- વાક્યમાં **Same** શબ્દ પહેલા આર્ટિકલ “**The**” મૂકવો ફરજિયાત છે.
- વાક્ય રચના :

...**the** + **same** + એકવચન અથવા બહુવચનનું નામ + **as...**

Examples :

1. **I want to buy the mobile, which I saw yesterday in the shop.**
I want to buy the same mobile as I saw yesterday in the shop.
 (હું એ જ મોબાઈલ ખરીદવા માંગુ છું કે જે મેં ગઈકાલે દુકાનમાં જોયો હતો.)

2. *He is reading a magazine. Kavita often reads that magazine.*
He is reading the same magazine as Kavita reads often.
 (તે એ જ સામાયિક વાંચી રહ્યો છે જે કવિતા ઘણીવાર વાંચે છે.)
3. *This is the man whom we met at the shopping mall yesterday.*
This is the same man as we met at the shopping mall yesterday.
 (આ એ જ માણસ છે જેને આપણે ગઈકાલે શોપિંગ મોલમાં મળ્યા હતા.)
4. *Sunil told us a joke yesterday. This is that joke.*
This is the same joke as Sunil told as yesterday.
 (આ એ જ જોક છે જે સુનિલે આપણને ગઈકાલે કહ્યો હતો.)
5. *This is the thief, who was caught by police two weeks ago.*
This is the same thief as was caught by police two weeks ago.
 (આ એ જ ચોર છે જેને પોલિસ દ્વારા બે અઠવાડિયા પહેલા પકડવામાં આવ્યો હતો.)

Such...as

► વાક્ય રચના :

...Such + a/an + એકવચન નામ + as...

OR

...Such + બહુવચન નામ + as...

- પછી જો એકવચન નામ હોય તો આર્ટીકલ અથવા મૂકવો પડે.
- પછી જો બહુવચન નામ હોય તો કોઈ આર્ટીકલ આવે નહીં.

Examples :

1. *Children like books that have colourful pictures in them.*
Children like such books as have colourful pictures in them.
 (બાળકોને એવા પુસ્તકો ગમે છે જેમાં રંગીન ચિત્રો હોય.)

2. ***He is a trustworthy person. He cannot tell a lie.***
He is such a trustworthy person as cannot tell a lie.
 (તે એવો વિશ્વાસપાત્ર માણસ છે જે ખોટું બોલી શકે નહીં.)
3. ***Go to a university that can give you practical knowledge.***
Go to such a university as can give you practical knowledge.
 (એવી યુનિવર્સિટીમાં જાઓ જે તમને વ્યવહારિક જ્ઞાન આપે.)
4. ***Bachu told us story which was very interesting.***
Bachu told us such a story as was interesting.
 (બચુએ અમને એવી વાર્તા કહી હતી જે રસપ્રદ હતી.)
5. ***It was very comfortable journey, which cannot be forgotten.***
It was such a comfortable journey as cannot to be forgotten.
 (તે એવો આરામદાયક પ્રવાસ હતો જે ભૂલી શકાય નહીં.)

Though / Although / Eventhough / Even if

- ***Though/Although/Eventhough/Even if*** નો અર્થ “છતાં પણ” થાય છે.
- બે વાક્યોને જોડવા માટે તેનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- ***Though/Although/Eventhough/Even if*** વાક્યની શરૂઆતમાં મૂકાય છે.
- વિરોધાભાસ દર્શાવવા માટે ***Though/Although/Eventhough/Even if*** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- ***But / Because*** વાળા વાક્યને ***Though/Although/Eventhough/Even if*** માં ફેરવતી વખતે ***But / Because*** નીકળી જાય.

Examples :

1. ***He is clever. He does not get good marks.***
 (તે હોંશિયાર છે. તેને મારા ગુણ મળતા નથી.)
Though he is clever, he does not get good marks.
 (તે હોંશિયાર છે છતાં પણ તે સારા ગુણ મેળવતો નથી.)

2. Atul is strong. He cannot carry heavy things.

(અતુલ મજબૂત છે. તે વજનવાળી વસ્તુઓ ઉઠાવી શકતો નથી.)

Although Atul is strong, he cannot carry heavy things.

(અતુલ મજબૂત છે છતાં પણ વજનવાળી વસ્તુઓ ઉઠાવી શકતો નથી.)

3. Manish works hard. He does not earn enough money.

(મનિષ સખત મહેનત કરે છે. તે પૂરતા પૈસા કમાતો નથી.)

Eventhough Manish works hard, he does not earn enough money.

(મનિષ સખત મહેનત કરે છે છતાં પણ તે પૂરતાં પૈસા કમાતો નથી.)

4. We walked very fast. We missed the train.

(અમે ખૂબ ઝડપથી ચાલ્યા. અમે ટ્રેન ચૂકી ગયા હતા.)

Even if we walked very fast, we missed the train.

(અમે ખૂબ ઝડપથી ચાલ્યા છતાં પણ અમે ટ્રેન ચૂકી ગયા હતા.)

5. Jitu is poor but he is honest.

(જીતુ ગરીબ છે પણ તે પ્રામાણિક છે.)

Though Jitu is poor, he is honest.

(જીતુ ગરીબ છે છતાં પણ તે પ્રામાણિક છે.)

6. We are weak in English but we can understand it easily.

(અમે અંગ્રેજીમાં નબળા છીએ પણ અમે તે સરળતાથી સમજી શકીએ છીએ.)

Although we are weak in English, we can understand it easily.

(અમે અંગ્રેજીમાં નબળા છીએ છતાં પણ અમે તે સરળતાથી સમજી શકીએ છીએ.)

7. It was easy question but I did not understand it.

(તે સરળ પ્રશ્ન હતો પણ હું તેને સમજ્યો ન હતો.)

Although it was easy question, I did not understand it.

(તે સરળ પ્રશ્ન હતો છતાં પણ હું તેને સમજ્યો ન હતો.)

8. They have lot of money. They are not happy.

(તેમની પાસે ખૂબ પૈસા છે. તેઓ ખુશ નથી.)

Eventhough they have lot of money, they are not happy.

(તેઓ પાસે ખૂબ પૈસા છે છતાંપણ તેઓ ખુશ નથી.)

9. Hetal has not prepared lunch because she is ill.

(હેતલે જમવાનું બનાવ્યું નથી કારણ કે તે માંદી છે.)

Though Hetal is ill, she has prepared lunch.

(હેતલ માંદી છે છતાં પણ તેણે જમવાનું બનાવ્યું છે.)

10. Harsh has bought a new computer but is is costly.

(હર્ષે નવું કોમ્પ્યુટર ખરીદ્યું છે પણ તે મોંઘું છે.)

Although a new computer is costly, Harsh has bought it.

(નવું કોમ્પ્યુટર મોંઘું છે છતાં પણ હર્ષે તે ખરીદ્યું છે.)

Till / Until

- **Till** નો અર્થ “જ્યાં સુધી...ત્યાં સુધી” એવો થાય છે.
- **Until** નો અર્થ “જ્યાં સુધી નહીં...ત્યાં સુધી નહીં” એવો થાય છે.
- **Till / Until** નો ઉપયોગ કાર્યની પૂર્ણાહુતિ દર્શાવવા માટે થાય છે.
- **Till** મોટાભાગે હકાર વાક્યોમાં ઉપયોગ લેવાય છે.
- **Until** મોટાભાગે નકાર વાક્યોમાં ઉપયોગ લેવાય છે.
- **Till / Until** નો ઉપયોગ કાર્ય પછી ભવિષ્યની ક્રિયાઓ / ઘટનાઓ માટે પણ (**Present Tense**) વર્તમાનકાળનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

Examples :

191

1. *Do not go from here. I will come.*
Do not go from here until I come.
2. *I watched the TV. I was midnight.*
I watched the TV till midnight.
3. *You cannot go out. You will finish your homework.*
You cannot go out until you finish your homework.
4. *They waited for me. I reached there.*
They waited for me till I reached there.
5. *Harsh worked very hard on project. He finished it.*
Harsh worked very hard on project till he finished it.

To be used to

- **To be used to** નો અર્થ “ના થી ટેવાયેલા હોવું” એવો થાય છે.
- **To be used to** નો ઉપયોગ વર્તમાનકાળમાં કરી શકાય છે.
- **To be** એટલે **Am/Is/Are** માંથી કોઈ એકનો ઉપયોગ કરવો પડે.
- **To be used to** પછી ક્રિયાપદનું **ing** રૂપ આવે.
(**Going / Reading / Eating / Talking**)

ઉપયોગની રીત

- ✓ સાદુ વાક્ય :
કર્તા + **am / is / are** + **used to** + **ing** ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો
- ✓ નકાર વાક્ય :
કર્તા + **am / is / are** + **not** + **used to** + **ing** ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો
- ✓ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય :
Am / is / are + કર્તા + **used to** + **ing** ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

1. ***My uncle is used to drinking milk without sugar.***
(મારા કાકા ખાંડ વિનાનું દૂધ પીવા ટેવાયેલા છે.)
કર્તા (***My uncle***) + ***is*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***drinking***)
2. ***Hitesh is used to walking in the evening.***
(હિતેશ સાંજે ચાલવા ટેવાયેલો છે.)
કર્તા (***Hitesh***) + ***is*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***walking***)
3. ***We are used to reading magazines.***
(અમે સામયિકો વાંચવા ટેવાયેલા છીએ.)
કર્તા (***We***) + ***is*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***reading***)
4. ***They are not used to eating homemade food.***
(તેઓ ઘરનું જમવાનું ખાવા ટેવાયેલા નથી.)
કર્તા (***They***) + ***are*** + ***not*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***eating***)
5. ***Bhavana is not used to singing poem.***
(ભાવના કવિતા ગાવા ટેવાયેલી નથી.)
કર્તા (***Bhavana***) + ***is*** + ***not*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***singing***)
6. ***Kishan is not used to working on computer.***
(કિશન કોમ્પ્યુટર પર કામ કરવા ટેવાયેલો નથી.)
કર્તા (***Kishan***) + ***is*** + ***not*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***working***)
7. ***Are you used to cooking Gujarati dishes ?***
(શું તમે ગુજરાતી થાળી રાંધવા ટેવાયેલા છો ?)
કર્તા (***you***) + ***is*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***cooking***)
8. ***Is Jitu used to watching TV ?***
(શું જિતુ ટીવી જોવા ટેવાયેલો છે ?)
કર્તા (***Jitu***) + ***is*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***watching***)
9. ***Are they used to travelling ?***
(શું તેઓ મુસાફરી કરવા ટેવાયેલા છે ?)
કર્તા (***They***) + ***is*** + ***used to*** + ***ing*** ક્રિયાપદ (***travelling***)

Used to

- **Used to** નો અર્થ “ના થી ટેવાયેલા હોવું” એવો થાય છે.
- **Used to** પછી ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ આવે. (**Get / Go / Read / Eat**)
- **Used to** નો ઉપયોગ ભૂતકાળની ટેવો અથવા પરિસ્થિતી દર્શાવવા માટે થાય છે. (ફક્ત ભૂતકાળ માટે જ)

ઉપયોગની રીત

✓ સાદુ વાક્ય :

કર્તા + **used to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ નકાર વાક્ય :

કર્તા + **did + not + use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ પ્રશ્નાર્થ વાક્ય :

Did + કર્તા + **use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

1. **I used to tell stories in my childhood.**

(હું બાળપણમાં વાર્તાઓ કહેવા ટેવાયેલો હતો.)

કર્તા (**I**) + **used to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**tell**)

2. **My uncle used to drink milk when he was young.**

(મારા કાકા જુવાન હતા ત્યારે દૂધ પીવા ટેવાયેલા હતા.)

કર્તા (**My uncle**) + **used to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**drink**)

3. **Ankita used to read books in the school.**

(અંકિતા શાળામાં પુસ્તકો વાંચવા ટેવાયેલી હતી.)

કર્તા (**Ankita**) + **used to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**read**)

4. Varun did not use to do his homework.

(વરુણ તેનું ઘરકામ કરવા ટેવાયેલો ન હતો.)

કર્તા (**Varun**) + **did** + **not** + **use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**do**)

5. Kavita did not use to dance in college.

(કવિતા કોલેજમાં નૃત્ય કરવા ટેવાયેલી ન હતી.)

કર્તા (**Kavita**) + **did** + **not** + **use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**dance**)

6. Sunil did not use to work on computer.

(સુનિલ કોમ્પ્યુટર પર કામ કરવા ટેવાયેલો ન હતો.)

કર્તા (**Sunil**) + **did** + **not** + **use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**work**)

7. Did we use to play cricket during vacation ?

(શું આપણે વેકેશન દરમિયાન ક્રિકેટ રમવા ટેવાયેલા હતા ?)

Did + કર્તા (**we**) + **use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**play**)

8. Did they use to watch television in village ?

(શું તેઓ ગામડામાં ટીવી જોવા ટેવાયેલા હતા ?)

Did + કર્તા (**they**) + **use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**watch**)

9. Did you use to buy vegetables from market ?

(શું તમે બજારમાંથી શાકભાજી ખરીદવા ટેવાયેલા હતા ?)

Did + કર્તા (**you**) + **use to** + ક્રિયાપદનું મૂળરૂપ (**buy**)

- યાદ રાખો કે **used to** નો ઉપયોગ ફક્ત “ભૂતકાળની ક્રિયા અથવા પરિસ્થિતી” માટે જ થાય છે.

Get used to

Get used to નો અર્થ એ છે કે કઈક સામાન્ય બનવાની પ્રક્રિયામાં છે.

મતલબ કે હજુ તે સામાન્ય નથી પણ જલ્દી બની જશે. જેમ કે,

- મને ઘોંઘાટ પસંદ નથી પણ બહુ જલ્દી હું તેનાથી ટેવાઈ જઈશ.
- રવિનાને ગુલાબની સુગંધ ગમતી નથી પણ તેનાથી તે ટેવાઈ જશે.

યાદ રાખો : **get used to** પછી **NOUN** (નામ) અથવા **GERUND** (**ing** ક્રિયાપદ) આવે છે. જેમ કે,

1. *I will get used to walking fast (gerund)*
2. *Arun got used to his laptop. (noun)*

Examples :

1. *He does not like that small town, but he will get used to it.*
તેને નાના નગર પસંદ નથી પણ તે ટેવાઈ જશે.
2. *She will get used to her new life.*
તે તેની નવી જીંદગીથી ટેવાઈ જશે.
3. *I got used to living in cold weather.*
હું ઠંડા વાતાવરણમાં રહેવા ટેવાઈ ગયો હતો.
4. *Kishan got used to the loud noise.*
કિશન મોટા અવાજથી ટેવાઈ ગયો હતો.
5. *Jitu got used to waking up early in the morning.*
જિતુ સવારમાં વહેલો ઉઠવા ટેવાઈ ગયો હતો.

With a view to / in order to

- **With a view to / In order to** નો અર્થ “ના હેતુ થી અથવા ના ઈરાદાથી” એવો થાય છે.
- **With a view to - ing** ક્રિયાપદ (*sayig, walking, going*)
- **In order to - To** વિનાનું મૂળક્રિયાપદ (*say, walk, go*)
- **In order that** અને **so that** ના બદલે **With a view to / In order to** નો ઉપયોગ કરી શકાય છે. પણ વાક્ય રચના અલગ હોય છે.

✓ સાદુ વાક્ય :

મુખ્ય ક્રિયા દર્શાવતુ વાક્ય + **With a view to** + **ing** ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ નકાર વાક્ય :

મુખ્ય ક્રિયા દર્શાવતુ વાક્ય + **In order to** + **To** વિનાનું ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

1. *I went to the market to buy apples yesterday.*
I went to the market with a view to buying apples yesterday.
I went to the market in order to buy apples yesterday.
2. *Many people go abroad to earn money.*
Many people go abroad with a view to earning money.
Many people go abroad in order to make money.
3. *People must grow trees so that they can reduce the pollution.*
People must grow trees with a view to reducing the pollution.
People must grow trees in order to reduce the pollution.
4. *Ashish works hard to get success.*
Ashish works hard with a view to getting success.
Ashish works hard in order to get success.
5. *Dhara and Jigar go to the garden so that they can get fresh air.*
Dhara and Jigar go to the garden with a view to getting fresh air.
Dhara and Jigar go to the garden in order to get fresh air.
6. *I eat vegetables to remain healthy.*
I eat vegetable with a view to remaining healthy.
I eat vegetable in order to remain healthy.
7. *They will visit Agra so that they can see the Taj Mahal.*
They will visit Agra with a view to seeing the Taj Mahal.
They will visit Agra in order to see the Taj Mahal.

8. *Harsh has worked very hard to score good marks.*

Harsh has worked very hard with a view to scoring good marks.

Harsh has worked very hard in order to score good marks.

9. *I have to walk faster to catch the train.*

I have to walk faster with a view to catching the train.

I have to walk faster in order to catch the train.

How many / How much

- **How many / How much** એટલે કેટલું / કેટલા / કેટલો અને કેટલી થાય છે. રોજબરોજના વ્યવહારમાં ખૂબ જ ઉપયોગી છે.

How many

- જે વસ્તુઓ ગણી શકાય છે (ફક્ત નંગમાં) તેના માટે નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. ૧ સફરજન, ૧૦ કેળા, ૧૫ કેરી, ૧૦ વિદ્યાર્થી, ૨૦ ખુરશી વગેરે...

યાદ રાખો કે ફક્ત ૧, ૨, ૩ એવી રીતે ગણી શકાય તેના માટે જ **How many** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જો આંકડા પાછળ ગ્રામ, લીટર, કીલો જેવા શબ્દો વપરાય તો **How much** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમ કે ૧ ગ્રામ, ૧૦ લિટર, ૧૨ કિલો.

How much

- જે વસ્તુઓ નંગમાં ગણી શકાય નહીં તેના માટે **How much** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. મોટાભાગે **Liquid** (પ્રવાહી) વસ્તુઓ માટે **How much** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. ૧૦૦ ગ્રામ દૂધ, ૧ કિલો પાઉડર, ૫૦૦ ગ્રામ લોટ, ૧૦ લિટર કેરોસીન, ૨ લિટર પેટ્રોલ
- ઉપરના તમામ ઉદાહરણોમાં આંકડા પાછળ ગ્રામ, લીટર, કીલો જેવા શબ્દો વપરાયેલ છે તેથી **How much** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.

ઉપયોગની રીત

✓ સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ :

How many / How much + વસ્તુનું નામ + **do/does** + કર્તા +
મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ ચાલુ વર્તમાન કાળ :

How many / How much + વસ્તુનું નામ + **am/is/are** + કર્તા + **ing** ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ પૂર્ણ વર્તમાન કાળ :

How many / How much + વસ્તુનું નામ + **have/has** + કર્તા + ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ સાદો ભૂતકાળ :

How many / How much + વસ્તુનું નામ + **did** + કર્તા + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ :

How many / How much + વસ્તુનું નામ + **was/were** + કર્તા + **ing** ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ :

How many / How much + વસ્તુનું નામ + **had** + કર્તા + **(Past Participle)** ક્રિયાપદનું ભૂતકૃદંત + અન્ય શબ્દો

✓ સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ

How many / How much + વસ્તુનું નામ + **will** + કર્તા + મૂળ ક્રિયાપદ + અન્ય શબ્દો

Examples :

1. *I buy two apples everyday.* (સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ)

How many apples do I buy every day ? (apples છે એટલે How many)

2. *We drink 1 litre milk daily.* (સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ)

How much milk do we drink everyday ? (milk છે એટલે How much)

3. *Anil works two hours.* (સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ)

How many hours does Anil work ? (hours છે એટલે How many)

4. *Sunita bought three apples yesterday. (સાદો ભૂતકાળ)*
How many apples did Sunita buy yesterday ? (apples છે એટલે How many)
5. *They are purchasing two pairs of shoes. (ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ)*
How many pairs of shoes are they purchasing? (shoes છે એટલે How many)
6. *You have purchased 2 kilo flour. (પૂર્ણ વર્તમાનકાળ)*
How much flour have you purchased ? (flour છે એટલે How much)
7. *Yash was reading three magazines yesterday evening. (ચાલુ ભૂતકાળ)*
How many magazines was Yash reading yesterday evening ?
(magazines છે એટલે How many)
8. *Two trains had come on platform. (પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ)*
How many trains had come on platform ? (trains છે એટલે How many)
9. *Ramesh had drunk 2 litre water. (પૂર્ણ ભૂતકાળ)*
How much water had Ramesh drunk ? (water છે એટલે How many)
10. *Students will play with two bats. (સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ)*
How many bats will students play with ? (bats છે એટલે How many)
11. *They will buy 2 kilo sugar. (સાદો ભવિષ્યકાળ)*
How much sugar will they buy ? (sugar છે એટલે How much)
12. *She tells two stories everyday. (સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ)*
How many stories does she tell everyday ? (stories છે એટલે How many)
13. *I wasted too much time. (સાદો ભૂતકાળ)*
How much time did I waste ? (time છે એટલે How much)
14. *They are solving two questions. (ચાલુ વર્તમાનકાળ)*
How many questions are they solving ? (questions છે એટલે How many)

15. *We walked two kilometres yesterday. (સાદો ભૂતકાળ)*
How many kilometres did we walk yesterday ?
(kilometres છે એટલે How many)

Question Tags

- **Question Tag** નો મતલબ “ખરું ને” એવો થાય છે.
- એક વાક્ય બોલ્યા પછી તેનો ઉપયોગ થાય છે. જેમ કે,
 ✓ કૌશલ નથી આવવાનો, ખરું ને ?
 ✓ અનિતા હોંશિયાર છોકરી છે, ખરું ને ?
 ✓ હાર્દિક દરરોજ મોડો ઉઠે છે, ખરું ને ?
- વાક્ય બોલ્યા પછી “અલ્પવિરામ” અને **Question Tag** મૂક્યા પછી “પ્રશ્નાર્થ ચિહ્ન” મૂકવું જરૂરી છે.
- જો વાક્ય હકાર હોય તો **Question Tag** નકાર થાય.
- જો વાક્ય નકાર હોય તો **Question Tag** હકાર થાય.

હકાર પ્રશ્ન	જવાબ નકાર	નકાર પ્રશ્ન	જવાબ હકાર
Am	Aren't	Am not	Am
Is	Isn't	Is not	Is
Are	Aren't	Are not	Are
Do	Don't	Do not	Do
Does	Doesn't	Does not	Does
Was	Wasn't	Was not	Was
Were	Weren't	Were not	Were

હકાર પ્રશ્ન	જવાબ નકાર	નકાર પ્રશ્ન	જવાબ હકાર
Did	Didn't	Did not	Did
Has	Hasn't	Has not	Has
Have	Haven't	Have not	Have
Had	Hadn't	Had not	Had
Will	Won't	Will not	Will
Shall	Shan't	Shall not	Shall
Can	Can't	Can not	Can
Should	Shouldn't	Should not	Should
Could	Couldn't	Could not	Could
Must	Mustn't	Must not	Must
Would	Wouldn't	Would not	Would
Let's	Shan't	Shall not	Let's

હકાર પ્રશ્ન	જવાબ નકાર	નકાર પ્રશ્ન	જવાબ હકાર
સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ (એક વચન) (Works)	Doesn't	Does not	Does
સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ (બહુ વચન) (Work)	Don't	Do not	Do
સાદો ભૂતકાળ (એકવચન / બહુ વચન) (Worked)	Didn't	Did not	Did

Examples :

1. Kaushal is in the classroom, isn't he ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**isn't he**), કર્તા **Kaushal** છે એટલે **he**.

2. I am a tall person, aren't I ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**aren't I**),
કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **I**. (**I am** નું **Question Tag aren't** થાય.)

3. We are not hungry, are we ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને નકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ હકાર (**are we**),
કર્તા **We** છે એટલે **We**.

4. They do not go to garden everyday, do they ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને નકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ હકાર (**do they**),
કર્તા **They** છે એટલે **They**.

5. Dhoni plays cricket very well, doesn't he ? (સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ એકવચન)

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**doesn't he**),
કર્તા **Dhoni** છે એટલે **he**.

6. Anil and Anita eat apples, do they ? (સાદો વર્તમાનકાળ બહુવચન)

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**don't they**),
કર્તા **Anil and Anita** છે એટલે **They**.

7. He was working last night 8 pm, wasn't he ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**wasn't he**),
કર્તા **He** છે એટલે **he**.

8. Sunita was not happy, was she ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને નકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ હકાર (**was she**),
કર્તા **Sunita** છે એટલે **she**.

9. You were angry with Kaushal, weren't you ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**weren't you**),
કર્તા **You** છે એટલે **you**.

10. Students did not work hard during exam, did they ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને નકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ હકાર (**did they**),
કર્તા **Students** છે એટલે **they**.

11. Amit went to school yesterday, didn't he ? (સાદો ભૂતકાળ)

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**didn't he**),
કર્તા **Amit** છે એટલે **he**.

12. They will go Baroda tomorrow, won't they ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**won't they**),
કર્તા **They** છે એટલે **they**.

13. I shall not sing a song, shall I ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને નકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ હકાર (**shall I**),
કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **I**.

14. We should not cut trees, should we ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને નકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ હકાર (**should we**),
કર્તા **We** છે એટલે **we**.

15. Anil would buy a new computer, wouldn't he ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**wouldn't he**),
કર્તા **Anil** છે એટલે **he**.

16. Birds can fly in the sky, can't they ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**can't they**),
કર્તા **Birds** છે એટલે **they**.

17. Children must watch this program, mustn't they ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને હકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ નકાર (**mustn't they**),
કર્તા **Children** છે એટલે **they**.

18. Let's read magazines, shall we ?

Let's વાળું વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ **shall we**.

19. There is no water in the glass, is there ?

There વાળું નકાર વાક્ય છે (**no**) તેથી જવાબ **is there**.

20. I am not tall, am I ?

વાક્ય પછી અલ્પવિરામ અને નકાર વાક્ય છે તેથી જવાબ હકાર (**am I**),
કર્તા **I** છે એટલે **I**. (**I am not** નું **Question Tag am I** થાય.)

Remove or Use "Too...To"

- **Too** એટલે મતલબ ખૂબ જ વધારે અથવા અતિશય એવો થાય છે. સામાન્ય વાક્યમાં તેનો મતલબ “પણ” એવો થાય છે.
- આવા વાક્યમાં પહેલા **Too** હોય છે અને પછી **To** હોય છે.
- આ વાક્ય નકાર હોય છે એટલે કે “નહીં” ના અર્થમાં **Too...To** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- **Too** ના બદલે **so**નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે અને **To** ના બદલે **That** નો ઉપયોગ થાય છે.
- વાક્ય નકાર હોય છે તેથી **That** પછી **Can not** અથવા **Could not** નો ઉપયોગ જરૂરી છે.
- જો વાક્ય વર્તમાનકાળમાં હોય તો **Can not** અને જો વાક્ય ભૂતકાળમાં હોય **Could not** તો નો ઉપયોગ કરવો પડે.
- જો વાક્યમાં કર્તા ના હોય પણ **For Them / Him / Her / Me / Us / You / કોઈ છોકરાનું નામ / કોઈ છોકરીનું નામ** હોય તો નીચે મુજબ કર્તાનું રૂપ મૂકવું પડે.

For me	I can not / could not
For them	They can not / could not
For her	She can not / could not
For him	He can not / could not
For us	We can not / could not
For you	You can not / could not
For Ramesh	Ramesh can not / could not
For Anita	Anita can not / could not

- જો વાક્યમાં **To** ને બદલે **To be** હોય તો તે વાક્ય **Passive** કહેવાય તેથી જવાબ પણ **Passive** બનાવવો પડે એટલે **Can not be** અથવા **Could not be** કરવું પડે.

Remove "Too" Examples :

205

1. Naresh is too old to walk fast.

Neresh is so old that the he cannot walk fast.

કર્ત્ત **Neresh** + **so old** (**too old** ના બદલે) + **that (to** ના બદલે) +
he (**Naresh** ના બદલે) + **cannot** (વર્તમાનકાળ) + બાકીના શબ્દો

2. The milk is too hot to drink.

The milk is so hot that I cannot drink it.

કર્ત્ત **The milk** + **so hot** (**too hot** ના બદલે) + **that (to** ના બદલે) +
I (કોઈ કર્ત્ત નથી એટલે) + **cannot** (વર્તમાનકાળ) + બાકીના શબ્દો

3. Mr. Patel is too busy to go to market.

Mr. Patel is so busy that he cannot go to market.

કર્ત્ત **Mr. Patel** + **so busy** (**too busy** ના બદલે) + **that (to** ના બદલે) +
he (**Mr. Patel** ના બદલે) + **cannot** (વર્તમાનકાળ) + બાકીના શબ્દો

4. This lesson was too difficult for us to understand. (ભૂતકાળ)

This lesson was so difficult that we could not understand it.

કર્ત્ત **This lesson** + **so difficult** (**too difficult** ના બદલે) + **that (to** ના બદલે) +
We (**for us** છે એટલે) + **could not** (ભૂતકાળ) + બાકીના શબ્દો

5. That phone is too costly for Rakesh to buy.

That phone is so costly that Rakesh cannot buy it

કર્ત્ત **That phone** + **so costly** (**too costly** ના બદલે) + **that (to** ના બદલે) +
Rakesh (**Rakesh** ના બદલે) + **cannot** (વર્તમાનકાળ) + બાકીના શબ્દો

6. The box is so heavy to be lifted. (Passive)

The box is so heavy that it cannot be lifted by you.

કર્ત્ત **The box** + **so heavy** (**too heavy** ના બદલે) + **that (to be** ના બદલે)
+ **It** (**box** + **passive** એટલે) + **cannot be** (વર્તમાનકાળ) **by**
+ **You** (કોઈ કર્ત્ત નથી એટલે)

7. The lesson was too long to be finished. (Passive)

The lesson was so long that it could not be finished by students.

કર્તા *The lesson* + *so long (too long ના બદલે)* + *that (to be ના બદલે)*

+ *It (lesson + passive એટલે)* + *cannot be (ભૂતકાળ) by*

+ *Students* (કોઈ કર્તા નથી એટલે)

Use "Too" Examples :

1. The movie is so boring that I cannot watch it.

The movie is too boring to watch for me.

Too boring (so boring ના બદલે) + *for me (I ના બદલે)* +
to watch (cannot watch છે એટલે)

2. Tea was so hot that we could not drink it.

Tea was too hot to drink for us.

Too hot (so hot ના બદલે) + *for us (for us છે એટલે)* +
to drink (could not drink છે એટલે)

3. He is so weak to work hard.

He is too weak to work hard.

Too weak (so weak છે એટલે) + *to work hard (cannot work hard છે એટલે)*

4. It is so hot to go out for them.

It is too hot to go out for them.

Too hot (so hot છે એટલે) + *for them (they છે એટલે)*
+ *to go out (cannot go out છે એટલે)*

5. The sum is so difficult it cannot be solved by students.

The sum is too difficult to be solved.

Too difficult (so difficult ના બદલે) + *to be solved (cannot be solved છે એટલે)*

6. She was so hungry that she could not wait for her friend.

She was too hungry to wait for her friend.

Too hungry (so hungry ના બદલે) + *to wait (could not wait છે એટલે)*

Reflexive Pronouns

207

- **Reflexive Pronouns** નો અર્થ આત્મલક્ષી સર્વનામો થાય છે.
- તેનો ઉપયોગ કર્તા પ્રમાણે થાય છે. જેની વિસ્તૃત માહિતી નીચે આપેલી છે.

કર્તા	આત્મલક્ષી સર્વનામ
I	Myself (મારી જાતે)
We	Ourselves (અમારી જાતે)
You	Yourself (તારી જાતે)
You	Yourselves (તમારી જાતે)
He	Himself (તેની જાતે)
She	Herself (તેની જાતે)
It	Itself (તેની જાતે)
They	Themselves (તેમની જાતે)

Examples :

1. **I saw myself in the mirror.** (કર્તા **I** એટલે **myself**)
2. **We blame ourselves** (કર્તા **we** એટલે **ourselves**)
3. **Why do you blame yourself ?** (કર્તા **you** એટલે **yourself**)
4. **Jigar sent himself a copy.** (કર્તા જીગર છે - **he** એટલે **myself**)
5. **Mamta goes to temple herself.** (કર્તા **she** એટલે **herself**)
6. **My dog hurt itself.** (કર્તા **It** એટલે **itself**)
7. **They cannot look after themselves.** (કર્તા **they** એટલે **themselves**)
8. **Children, keep your books clean yourselves.**
(કર્તા બાળકો છે - **you** બહુવચન - એટલે **yourselves**)



Self Practice

AM / IS / ARE

209

1. It an onion. (am / is / are)
2. Ahmedabad a city. (am / is / are)
3. Jasmine a student. (am / is / are)
4. He a postman. (am / is / are)
5. We friends. (am / is / are)
6. It nine o'clock. (am / is / are)
7. I hungry. (am / is / are)
8. Manhattan an island. (am / is / are)
9. Mark 20 years old. (am / is / are)
10. Mr. Richards a lawyer. (am / is / are)
11. A bee a big insect. (am / is / are)
12. I ill. I happy. (am / is / are)
13. Newsweek a magazine. (am / is / are)
14. London a big city. (am / is / are)
15. I a professional football player. (am / is / are)
16. Sunita and Anita sisters. (am / is / are)
17. You in my class. (am / is / are)
18. New York near to New Jersey. (am / is / are)
19. Cows mammals. (am / is / are)
20. Susan and I teachers. (am / is / are)
21. We students. (am / is / are)

HAVE / HAS / HAD

1. I _____ a pen and my sister _____ ten pens.
(have / has / had)
2. Shimon _____ two books. (have / has / had)
3. She _____ two dresses yesterday. (have / has / had)
4. The cat _____ long tails. (have / has / had)
5. The pupil _____ many books. (have / has / had)
6. Anita _____ three diaries last week. (have / has / had)
7. Tom _____ one brother and sister. (have / has / had)
8. They _____ one brother. (have / has / had)

9. Sunil _____ a laptop last month. (have / has / had)
10. You _____ two sisters. (have / has / had)
11. Harsh _____ a ball yesterday. (have / has / had)
12. Grandmother and grandfather _____ three grandchildren.
(have / has / had)
13. I _____ two chairs two years back. (have / has / had)
14. My friends _____ three snakes as pets. (have / has / had)
15. Tom _____ a big tractor. (have / has / had)
16. Sharon _____ two cousins. (have / has / had)
17. Kapil _____ a nice pen four days ago. (have / has / had)
18. Jigar _____ a lot work last night. (have / has / had)
19. Binita _____ good food in her kitchen. (have / has / had)
20. They _____ a good time at the party yesterday.
(have / has / had)
21. Shila _____ a new bag pack. (have / has / had)

WAS / WERE

1. How many people _____ at your house last weekend?
(was / were)
2. The book wasn't difficult. It _____ easy. (was / were)
3. Those _____ my best jeans. (was / were)
4. Dinosaurs _____ prehistoric animals. (was / were)
5. _____ your friends at school yesterday? (was / were)
6. Sudha _____ not at school yesterday. (was / were)
7. You _____ angry with me last night. (was / were)
8. _____ your grandparents designers? (was / were)
9. John and I _____ in the garden. (was / were)
10. _____ your parents in the restaurant? (was / were)
11. My grandmother _____ a nurse. (was / were)
12. I _____ thin when I was 6 years old. (was / were)
13. When I _____ younger, I played with teddy bears.
(was / were)
14. We _____ away on vacation last month. (was / were)
15. _____ you at the cinema last night? (was / were)
16. Ten years ago, I _____ a baby. (was / were)
17. _____ the exam difficult? (was / were)

18. The film _____ not exciting. (was / were)
19. _____ there many people at the party? (was / were)
20. _____ the girls in the park? (was / were)
21. Her name wasn't Kavya. It _____ Ishita. (was / were)
22. Pankaj wasn't happy. He _____ sad. (was / were)
23. _____ the boys at the football game? (was / were)
24. The books _____ not on the shelf. (was / were)
25. _____ Tinu at a concert? (was / were)

Fill in the blanks. (Do / does / did)

1. _____ you go to school everyday? (do/ does/ did)
2. Where _____ she go yesterday? (do/ does/ did)
3. He _____ not like English. (do/ does/ did)
4. _____ Sunita live in Ahmedabad? (do/ does/ did)
5. I _____ not like coffee. (do/ does/ did)
6. _____ she get up early in the morning daily. (do/ does/ did)
7. Kapil _____ not play chess. He plays football. (do/ does/ did)
8. _____ they get the pictures yesterday? (do/ does/ did)
9. What _____ Shila read everyday? (do/ does/ did)
10. _____ he win a gold medal last week? (do/ does/ did)
11. Karuna _____ not enter in college last year. (do/ does/ did)
12. _____ Rahul drive his car well? (do/ does/ did)
13. What time _____ she usually come home? (do/ does/ did)
14. Jitu _____ not take your note book yesterday. (do/ does/ did)
15. Sam _____ not like sports. He is lazy. (do/ does/ did)
16. _____ he forget his books at home often? (do/ does/ did)
17. How long _____ they train last year? (do/ does/ did)
18. We _____ not often watch football matches. (do/ does/ did)
19. _____ Sunil watch Olympics games? (do/ does/ did)
20. _____ you like rainy weather? (do/ does/ did)
21. What subject _____ he choose last year? (do/ does/ did)
22. _____ you clean your room yesterday? (do/ does/ did)
23. Tom _____ not grammar rules. (do/ does/ did)
24. She _____ not receive letters every day. (do/ does/ did)
25. What book _____ he read last week? (do/ does/ did)

WH QUESTION

212

1. Columbus discovered America in 1492. (what)
2. I graduated from school two years ago. (when)
3. The mechanic repaired the car last week. (who)
4. He is always late because he never sets the alarm clock. (why)
5. Mandy phoned her uncle last Tuesday. (when)
6. I am going to wear the yellow dress at the ball. (what, which)
7. Ronaldo is the best football player in the world. (who)
8. The library is right across the street. (where)
9. The shops open at 9 in the morning. (when)
10. We need a nanny because my wife has too much to do. (why)
11. Her favorite color is red. (what, which)
12. That book is mine. (whose)
13. You have 5 minutes to finish the test. (how long)
14. The university is about 2 km from the house. (where)
15. I take Bus 52 to work. (which, how)
16. My flight leaves Rome at 7.39. (when)
17. The red shirt costs \$99. (how much)
18. That pen is mine. (whose)
19. John is talking to my sister. (who)
20. The traffic in the city makes me nervous. (what)
21. We have to start work at three o'clock. (when)

HOW MUCH / HOW MANY

1. I collected twenty coins yesterday. (how many)
2. Jayesh has got three hours. (how many)
3. There were one hundred cows yesterday. (how many)
4. We buy two kilo cheese daily. (how much)
5. They walk three kilometers everyday. (how many)
6. I would like to buy three pencils. (how many)
7. There is a one liter of juice in the glass. (how much)
8. There are twenty carrots in the basket. (how many)
9. She wanted to buy two kilos of meat. (how much)
10. That rich man has five cars. (how many)
11. We need two eggs for the cake. (how many)
12. A cow has four legs. (how many)
13. You earned enough money last month. (how much)
14. I drink one liter of orange juice a day. (how much)
15. Sudha got seventy five marks in English. (how many)

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms of verbs.

213

1. Mishita always _____ fast. (to run)
2. Hetal _____ to Baroda last week. (to go)
3. They _____ just _____ their home work. (to finish)
4. Kishan wanted _____ an engineer. (to become)
5. The room _____ by the servant and now he is washing. (to clean)
6. Ice cream _____ there now. (to serve)
7. People _____ more and more trees. (should + plant)
8. When I came back, he _____ football. (to play)
9. Our result _____ by the end of next month. (to declare)
10. All the tickets _____ before we reached the hall yesterday.
(to sell)
11. When I reached to his home, they _____ their dinner. (to take)
12. Carom _____ by me yesterday 8 pm. (to play)
13. Many toys _____ by Anita so she is happy. (to buy)
14. Sweepers _____ the roads of city everyday. (to sweep)
15. Manisha is eager _____ the college. (to join)
16. My father _____ new home next year. (go + buy)
17. We _____ not _____ mistakes often. (must + make)
18. English _____ all over the world. (to speak)
19. If you run fast, you _____ the bus. (to catch)
20. It is compulsory _____ this book. (to read)
21. _____ you ever _____ the Tajmahal? (to visit)
22. If she passes this examination, she _____ admission in college
(to get)
23. _____ is good for our health. (to walk)
24. The mechanic _____ before I reached the garage. (to repair)
25. We _____ not _____ poems in school last year. (to sing)
26. Water _____ to the villages by government. (should + supply)
27. Listen, Sunita _____ a nice song. (to sing)
28. I _____ already _____ a new TV for my new home. (to buy)
29. All answers _____ in answer sheet. (must + write)

30. Anil is trying _____ the lock. (to open)
31. I am fond of _____ Hollywood movies. (to watch)
32. While he _____ the light went off. (to work)
33. When we reached home, Kishan _____ for me.
(to wait)
34. Kapil's magazine _____ tomorrow by Amit. (to give)
35. We _____ just _____ action movie. (to see)
36. Students started shouting after the teacher _____.
(to go)
37. Do not _____ playing until you are told. (to start)
38. Mr. Patel _____ English. (to teach)
39. Keep quiet. The baby _____ now. (to sleep)
40. Before the match started all _____ seats in stadium. (take)
41. Tomorrow, we _____ a grand party. (to give)
42. Sarita expects _____ this work early. (to finish)
43. I _____ letter from my father last week. (to get)
44. Our English teacher _____ already _____ whole course. (to finish)
45. Sarita wants _____ Baroda after her marriage. (to visit)
46. Where _____ you _____ him yesterday? (to see)
47. The result of SSC examination _____ next year. (to declare)
48. My brother is eager _____ his new car. (to see)
49. Everything _____ to control pollution. (must + do)
50. Do not play cricket at the time of _____. (to read)
51. The law of Gravity _____ by Newton. (to discover)
52. The teacher asked Sunita if she _____ the letter. (to post)
53. Every year a prize distribution function _____ in our school.
(to hold)
54. They _____ her if she is found guilty. (to punish)
55. We _____ just _____ the last bus. (to miss)
56. Some people do not like _____ politics. (to discuss)
57. All _____ after the lecture was over. (to leave)
58. We stood up while the teacher _____. (to enter)
59. Look, the cat _____ away. (to run)
60. Water _____ its own level. (to find)
61. Honest people _____ everywhere. (to respect)

62. People _____ the building before it fell down.
(to leave)
63. A children's film _____ at the theatre tomorrow.
(to show)
64. While we _____ a serial, the door bell rang.
(to watch)
65. If I see Anil, I _____ him a gift. (to give)
66. Can anyone _____ the stars? (to count)
67. How much _____ this phone _____ you last week?
(to cost)
68. Before we reached the school, the prayer _____ (to begin)
69. The doctor tried hard _____ the patient. (to save)
70. _____ is injurious to health. (to smoke)
71. Work _____ not _____ at that day. (to finish)
72. Listen, Amit _____ a song. (to sing)
73. Sunil is ready _____ French language. (to learn)
74. In future, solar energy _____ in place of electricity. (to use)
75. Jitendra _____ not _____ his homework yet. (to show)
76. _____ dogs seldom bite. (to bark)
77. Our bus station _____ last month. (to build)
78. We saw students _____ in the class. (to talk)
79. _____ is a good exercise. (to walk)
80. Apples _____ by the truck from Kashmir. (to bring)
81. If you are satisfied, you _____ life better. (to enjoy)
82. I do not want _____ that motorbike. (to ride)
83. All the doors _____ when the play began. (to shut)
84. Kanak _____ two essays yesterday. (to write)
85. I met Kishan while I _____ to school. (to go)
86. If you have money, you _____ buy many things. (can+ buy)
87. Cancer _____ not _____. (can+ cure)
88. A leap year _____ once in four years. (to come)
89. Urdu _____ from right to left. (to write)
90. You _____ not _____ the magazines yet. (to read)
91. Light food _____ at the time of examination. (should + eat)
92. Anil _____ in the show since 2010. (to be)

93. _____ you ever _____ by air? (to travel)
94. Nothing _____ in this matter now. (can + do)
95. He _____ there before others came. (to arrive)
96. The cotton clothes _____ with 50% discount every year. (to sell)
97. When _____ you _____ office? (go+ construct)
98. When my brother came from office, I _____ my dinner.
(to take)
99. The next Olympics _____ in future. (to hold)
100. My madam _____ already _____ two assignments. (to give)
101. It is easy _____ comments on others. (make)
102. If you work regularly, you _____. (to succeed)
103. She _____ never _____ the talking parrot. (to see)
104. Watch, the stars _____ in the sky. (to twinkle)
105. The question _____ not _____ by Amit. (could+ answer)
106. _____ you _____ me your mobile tomorrow? (to give)
107. Vegetables _____ by Manubhai everyday. (to sell)
108. The earth _____ on its axis. (to rotate)
109. My students _____ Rekha yesterday. (to see)
110. I _____ only one letter by now. (to send)
111. Don't call me, while I _____ my important work. (to do)
112. I _____ not _____ Jaswant for a long time. (to meet)
113. The magazine _____ twice monthly. (to give)
114. The method of testing pupils _____. (must + change)
115. Neeta _____ the study of the Geeta before she was ten. (to complete)
116. Your work _____ by you in time. (must + finish)
117. The bell _____ already _____. Let us go to our class. (to ring)
118. The cleverest boys in the class _____ the monitor. (will + make)
119. Furniture _____ of wood and iron. (to make)
120. The thief tried to ran away but he _____ by police.
(to catch)
121. The examination _____ since 8th October. (to start)
122. Shilp _____ for USA last year. (to leave)
123. Ghee _____ from butter. (to make)

124. The glass _____ last night. (to break)
125. Mishita wants _____ a doctor. (to become)
126. America _____ by Columbus. (to discover)
127. The sun _____ before I awoke. (to rise)
128. They wish _____ the old temple. (to see)
129. Darshan _____ in my class last year. (to study)
130. We _____ television at night. (to watch)
131. The people of Kerala _____ Onam. (to celebrate)
132. Taraba _____ to temple daily. (to go)
133. Mr. Trivedi _____ not _____ for a walk everyday. (to go)
134. What _____ I _____ for you? (can + do)
135. We never _____ in the examination. (to copy)
136. The question paper was hard. I _____ not _____ good marks.
(to get)
137. My friends _____ to Delhi next week. (to go)
138. They _____ an entertainment program on Sunday.
(go + have)
139. The farmer opened the cage and the tiger _____ out. (to come)
140. What _____ you _____ now? (to do)
141. See, the monkey _____ on the tree. (to climb)
142. Mr. Bhatt _____ Gujarati next Monday. (to teach)
143. Aamir sat under a tree and _____ songs. (to sing)
144. Edison was eager _____. (to study)
145. Who likes _____ birds? (to cage)
146. I am not ready _____ without invitation. (to come)
147. Look, the principal _____. (to come)
148. I _____ just _____ calendar. Don't move it. (to fix)
149. I _____ today's news after the prayer. (go + read)
150. Our dog _____ now. (to bark)
151. _____ you _____ home work regularly? (to bring)
152. Why _____ you _____ by your English teacher yesterday?
(to punish)
153. Our principal _____ prizes tomorrow. (to distribute)
154. The rose plant _____ by gardener everyday. (to plant)
155. Look that child _____ across the road. (to walk)

156. Obedient pupils _____ always _____ by this teacher. (to praise)
157. Geeta _____ to the music class daily. (to go)
158. I _____ not _____ to drink tea. (to like)
159. Look, they _____ football. (to play)
160. A new umbrella _____ by them tomorrow. (to buy)
161. She always _____ coffee. (to drink)
162. The pupils _____ the School Day next Tuesday.
(to celebrate)
163. Who _____ near the principal's office now? (to stand)
164. I _____ a white peacock in the zoo last week. (to see)
165. When _____ the sun _____ everyday? (to set)
166. I was eager _____ a good English film. (to watch)
167. We _____ with our eyes. (to see)
168. I like _____ short stories. (to read)
169. The librarian _____ me this book yesterday. (to show)
170. See, the watchman _____ after the thief. (to run)
171. Our school building _____ last year. (to paint)
172. They _____ in Chicago for 20 years. (to be)
173. I _____ a wonderful film in the cinema last night. (to see)
174. The sun _____ at 6:38 yesterday morning. (to rise)
175. The sun _____ when the climber reached Mount Everest.
(to shine)
176. I promise that I _____ not _____ this secret to anyone. (to tell)
177. They _____ to the movies only once in a while. (to go)
178. I was tired yesterday because I _____ not _____ well the
night before. (to sleep).
179. Someone _____ to our conversation. (listen)
180. When I left the house this morning, it _____. (to rain)
181. I think Bob _____ for London this very moment. (to leave)
182. The plane _____ off in a few minutes. (to take)
183. I _____ not _____ my watch because it is being fixed (to
wear).
184. I decided _____ in the cake shop. (to go)
185. They _____ in an apartment right now because

- they can't find a cheap house. (to live)
186. Everyone _____ when the earthquake hit the small town. (to sleep)
187. She _____ by herself since her divorce. (to live)
188. I was angry that I _____ such a stupid mistake. (to make).
189. I predict that by 2020, man _____ on Mars. (to land)
190. He _____ his job a couple of years ago. (to quit)
191. Our daughter _____ not _____ from the university yet. (to graduate)
192. They _____ not _____ any Christmas cards last year. (to send)
193. She _____ to a doctor once a year for an examination. (to go)
194. They _____ about me when I interrupted their conversation. (to talk)
195. Nothing much _____ when I got to the meeting. (happen).
196. My parents _____ in New York two weeks from today. (to be)
197. I _____ two mistakes in the last quiz. (make)
198. Unfortunately, our team _____ not _____ any game last year. (to win)
199. My family _____ some land in South recently. (to buy)
200. They are _____ a summer house at the moment. (to build)

Fill in the blanks. (Function words) Part-I

220

1. My neighbour is photographer. (a, an, the)
2. you stand on your head? (Can, Should, Would)
3. I had no key I could not close the door. (so, because, and)
4. Nobody has seen him last Monday. (since, for, as)
5. you like another cup of coffee? (Should, Would, Could)
6. I brought my umbrella, was necessary. (who, which, why)
7. A policeman saved the child danger. (of, from, on)
8. He must be punished he was guilty. (and, or, because)
9. Sunil died cancer two years ago. (of, from, to)
10. Take care of yourself you will be ill. (otherwise, and, but)
11. He is poor he is honest. (and, but, or)
12. youngest boy is going to school. (A, An, The)
13. I do not agree your proposal. (to, with, of)
14. She feels proud her wealth. (of, from, that)
15. He is slow he is steady. (and, but, or)
16. I shall not go i am invited. (if, unless, and)
17. I had very bad night. (a, an, the)
18. it was hot, we went out. (Though, But, And)
19. She did not work hard she failed. (therefore, and, but)
20. There are books on the table. (few, a few, little)
21. Do you have message for me. (any, many, some)
22. You obey the traffic rules. (must, could, would)
23. Bachu is fond playing. (of, for, from)
24. He suffered fever and died it. (of, for, from)
25. He finished first he began late. (as, but, and)
26. He is not honest man. (a, an, the)
27. There is water in the bucket. It is empty. (little, a little, few)
28. I haven't been to Ahmedabad 1985. (since, for, as)
29. She invited me dinner. (of, to, in)
30. I met a man knows you. (who, whom, whose)
31. There is at the door. (someone, anyone, all)
32. I have not got money. (any, many, some)
33. Sureshbhai is self employed man. (a, an, the)

34. Suraj not work hard everyday. (do, does, did)
35. The girl laughed joker. (on, at, to)
36. Distribute these sweets children. (among, between, in)
37. He is a man you can trust. (who, whom, whose)
38. You play carefully if you want to win. (should, and, had to)
39. Walk fast you will miss the bus. (and, but, otherwise)
40. wants to live a happy life. (All, Everyone, Some)
41. Where is the shop sells toys? (who, which, whom)
42. magazines are there in the library?
(How many, How much, How often)
43. student was with uniform. (Each, Of, Both)
44. Hindi is easy language. (a, an, the)
45. Do you have flower? (any, many, some)
46. Jigar and Harsh respect (one another, each other, both)
47. Kanu is absent his not well. (because, but, and)
48. There was a quarrel two friends. (among, between, in)
49. earth is round. (A, An, The)
50. There are students in this class. (may, much, any)
51. Suresh or Ramesh got the prize. (either, neither, all)
52. We went to Rajkot foot. (in, on, at)
53. The sun is dark there is a solar eclipse. (but, because, and)
54. I have two motorbikes. is yellow and is black.
(one...the other, some...the others, each...other)
55. Anita made coffee the guests. (of, for, from)
56. the books are useless. He wants another. (each, every, both)
57. Kanak not swim in the river. (can, may, will)
58. mangoes are there in this bucket?
(How many, How much, How long)
59. I will fail you guide me properly. (if, unless, though)
60. Is there hope of your passing the exam? (some, any, little)
61. peacock is our national bird. (A, An, The)
62. Many people suffered malaria in last season. (of, from, in)
63. Be careful you will lose your purse.
(though, otherwise, therefore)

64. Sardar Patel was a leader people loved. (who, whom, whose)
65. We should not hate poor. (an, a, the)
66. you help me with this luggage? (should, would, could)
67. People must live in peace and try to help.....
(each other, one another, others)
68. You are tired you have worked hard. (and, because, so)
69. Ramesh tells the truth, the principal will not believe him.
(if, unless, even if)
70. Japanese are good at arranging flowers. (an, a, the)
71. I have not visited Kashmir (already, still, yet)
72. Hardik was afraid the dog. (of, from, on)
73. Bachu has not eaten rice his birth. (since, for, from)
74. can be God in the world. (Nobody, Anybody, Everybody)
75. Amit and Amita often visit house.
(each, other's, one another's)
76. This is the student, watch was stolen. (who, whom, whose)
77. Karuna is ashamed her defect. (of, from, on)
78. That was worst experience. (a, an, the)
79. You not waste your time at the time of study.
(must, should, could)
80. milk do you drink everyday?
(How much, How many, How often)
81. of the students wears the uniform. (every, all, each)
82. Eat healthy food you will suffer from diseases. (and, or, but)
83. tiger is our national animal. (an, a, the)
84. Mr. Patel is a history teacher knows English also.
(who, whom, whose)
85. I work hard to get the prize. (have to, has to, had to)
86. Jigar never agrees Dhara. (with, on, to)
87. I have two grammar books. One is old and is new.
(other, the other, the others)
88. Is there coin in your wallet? (any, many, much)
89. You should pay attention what the teacher is teaching.
(for, to, of)
90. What I do to improve my Maths. (should, would, could)

91. We must do to save the environment.
(anything, something, nothing)
92. The boy has won is Kishan. (who, whom, whose)
93. Praful Bachu likes music. They like reading.
(Either...or, neither...nor, both)
94. I have to finish this work today I will be punished.
(and, but, otherwise)
95. While sitting in the library, don't talk with
(each other, one another, every other)
96. Kanu met Manu the railway station. (at, in, by)
97. It was an easy question, I wrote easily. (so, because, but)
98. My dictionary is stolen lost. I am not sure.
(either...or, neither...nor, both)
99. The apple is better the mango. (than, then, as)
100. Please wait here Anita comes. (before, till, after)
101. Laughter is best medicine. (a, an, the)
102. We have to pay for smile. (everything, nothing, anything)
103. I am fond..... cycling. (of, from, on)
104. Rahul speak three languages. (can, may, should)
105. Sudha has brought vegetables. (already, yet, still)
106. they play football often? (do, does, did)
107. Kavita cook yesterday as her mother was ill.
(has to, have to, had to)
108. is always better than nothing.
(something, anything, everything)
109. They want to remain healthy they do exercises.
(therefore, and, because)
110. Shakespeare wrote plays. (any, many, much)
111. I have been living here the last twenty years. (since, for, yet)
112. This is the place, I lost my pen yesterday. (where, when, why)
113. I don't know the reason he is angry. (where, when, where)
114. Kishan was driving, he saw Bachu. (when, while, where)
115. Mumbai is famous its textiles. (of, for, from)
116. he is ill, he keeps reading. (Though, But, And)

Fill in the blanks. (Function words) Part-II

224

1. You are advised to spend only..... your salary and deposit the rest with a bank. (some of, none of, much of)
2. The person Sudhaben talked on the telephone was the Police Inspector. (to whom, for whom, to which)
3. There is no rosehas some thorns. (same, but, such)
4. Columbus had gone to America India, but he found America there. (due to, in order that, in search of)
5. Doctors do not know the reason a person develops cancer. (why, where, when)
6. The new manager works so amicably everyone in the office likes him. (as, that, therefore)
7. This is the same beggar I saw yesterday. (as, whom, who)
8. We went to Agra seeing the Tajmahal. (with a view to, because, and)
9. going to Mumbai, he went to Poona. (In order to, on account of, instead of)
10.clever he was, he could not get first class. (Though, As, However)
11. The match had hardly started It began to rain. (as, when, since)
12. A patient should eat nothing is light and simple. (as, but, which)
13. Many Indians have gone to the U.S.A. earning money. (in order to, because of, with a view to)
14. The girl I met yesterday was very clever. (who, whose, whom)
15. his illness, he could not attend the marriage. (Instead of, Owing to, In spite of)
16. Is he in such a critical stage he cannot be taken to the hospital? (as, so, that)
17. Only brave deserve the fair. (a, an, the)
18. Congratulations, Mohini, you type quickly accurately. (either ...or, neither...nor, not only... but also)
19. I read "The times of India" daily increasing my knowledge of English. (in order to, with a view to, owing to)

20. The time is lost, is lost forever, (when, which, who)
21. I don't know the time they will go to Kashmir. (when, how, why)
22. had I finished my work when I switched off the light. (As soon as, No sooner, Hardly)
23. There was nobody in the hall wept on the death of the leader. (who, but, that)
24.his great success, he got a good job. (In spite of, On account of, Instead of)
25. Two friends love..... . (one another, each other, each another)
26. Take some water from this glass and leave In it. (less, the rest, little)
27. Intelligent he is he is cheated even by a child. (though, however, as)
28. Bhavi is M.A. student of this college. (a ,an, the)
29. He reads the book as I read last week. (such, same, so)
30. Do you know he passed the examination? (that, whether, how)
31. That is the hospital I was born. (when, where)
32. All a child wants is its mother's love. (what, that)
33. Kinnu worked hard, she did not get good marks. (However, Though)
34. give them a pleasant surprised, we did not inform them about our arrival in advance. (In order to, With a view to)
35. The match was cancelled heavy rain. (instead of, on account of)
36. The higher you go, thinner the air becomes. (a, the)
37. The policeman had hardly opened fire people ran here and there. (than, when)
38. life is not a bed of roses, our young people ran here and there. (Since, For)
39. The officer I complained, took immediate action. (for whom, to whom)
40. He bought a textbook of English a grammar book. (because of, instead of)
41. Candidates will be selected Their merits. (due to, according to, instead of)

42. do you think is the best actor now? (Who, Whom, Whose)
43. Do you know who can repair my car? (somebody, anybody, everybody)
44. She talks she was mad. (as, that, as if)
45. The higher you go thinner the air will be. (a, an, the)
46. All glitters is not gold. (which, that, as)
47. He has got up early this morning He can catch the train for Vadodara. (in order to, so that, because of)
48. speedy you are, you are always last to finish. (Though, However, As)
49. I still remember the way he performed that act. (why, how, where)
50. No sooner did Sweta finish her work the light went off. (than, then, when)
51. Mr Jadeja could not join college his poor economic condition. (in spite of, because of, with a view to)
52. The nurse failed to understand the reason the patient had collapsed. (where, why, how)
53. Hardly had the umpire declared Kapil out the crowd rushed on to the field. (then, when, as soon as)
54. Good he is, he is not loved by the people. (however, as, though)
55. We should always prefer the company of wise. (a, an, the)
56. My friend prefers swimming boating. (in spite of, instead of, on account of)
57. Dr. Prakash Modi started his dispensary in a village treating the poor. (on account of, with a view to, according to)
58. This is the boy I would like to talk. (with which, with whom, with whose)
59. Lata could not join the medical college poverty. (owing to, due to)
60. He is M.A. from Oxford University. (a, an, the)
61. The article appeared in Times of India is interesting. (a, the)
62. Do you want to know the reason he was dismissed? (when, why)

63. He worked day and night securing first class. (in order to, with a view to)
64. do you think is clever among you? (Whom, Who)
65. This is a camera as we saw yesterday. (such, the same)
66. That was the woman had cheated you a year ago. (whom, who)
67. clever Mayank is, he is not industrious. (Though, However)
68. It is no use asking to help you when none has sympathy for you. (anyone, someone)
69. my warning, he touched a live wire. (Instead of, In spite of)
70. Hardly had I opened the door the dog began to bark. (that, when)
71. The higher you go, lighter you feel. (a, an, the)
72. Would you like to drink? Yes, certainly. (something, anything, anyone)
73. A: Sugar? B: please? (a few, a little, few)
74. Your success is always your sincerity and hard work. (in spite of, due to, instead of)
75. It's urgent, so could you phone..... telex? (either...or, neither ... nor)
76. I don't know the reason Gauri left her study. (when, why, where)
77. So terrible was the storm whole roofs were ripped off. (as, that, because)
78. Hardly had the performance begun the lights went out. (when, then, and)
79. poorly dressed the beggar was, she walked gracefully and with dignity. (Though, As, However)
80. bad weather the devotees carried on their 'Padyatra'. (Instead of, On account of, In spite of)
81. No sooner did he come she ran to receive him. (when, then, than)
82. They all were laughing at me I were a mad man. (like, as, as if)
83. Gandhiji was not expected to die in jail because he was liked by the Government by everybody else. (not only...but also, neither... nor,either... or)

84. Some wise men say that..... you find man you find jealousy.
(whenever, wherever, however)
85. Jay Lalita celebrated her adopted son's marriage..... gorgeously
..... it became a very sensitive issue in the state politics.
(such...that, so... as, so...that)
86. baseless the news was, it created a great uproar among
people. (Since, However, Though)
87. Give me the spade I want to remove blockage of this water.
(with whom, with which, for which)
88. Mehul set up his hospital in the slum area treating the poor.
(on account of, with a view to, owing to)
89. Scarcely had the child seen beautiful butterflies he tried to
catch them. (that, when, as)
90. Hardly had the match started it began to rain. (as, when, since)
91. Regular he was in his work, he did not get a first class. (since,
however, as)
92. Spring is the season nature is the most beautiful. (which, as,
when)
93. words from you will put him on the right path. (A little, A few,
The few)
94. warmer the weather, better I feel. (a, an , the)
95. Many villagers are illiterate, they are wise. (as, yet, though)
96. Monaben is so fat she can't walk fast. (as, that, so)
97. Your success is your hard work. (due to, inspite of, because
of)
98. Has he become so poor he cannot pay for cheap commodities
? (that, as, therefore)
99. The film had scarcely started a big sound was heard inside.
(when, yet, therefore)
100. Useful English is, we should not neglect our mother tongue,
(though, as, however)
101. Give me the same pen you bought yesterday. (which, that,
as)
102. He takes exercise regularly keeping himself fit. (because of, in
order to, with a view to)

103. I have appointments to keep before tonight. (much, a few, a little)
104. Only educated who are wise can lead the nation. (a, an, the)
105. The bus was completely empty. There wasn't on it. (anything, anyone, anywhere)
106. He is so tired he is disinclined to work. (therefore, that, as)
107. June and July are the months the results of examinations are declared. (when, where, why)
108.ugly should not be hated. They too are human beings. (A, An, The)
109. highly qualified he is, he cannot get a suitable job. (Though, As, However)
110. making sincere efforts, we cannot remove poverty. (With a view to, Instead of, In spite of)
111. They are poor, they are generous. (though, still, as)
112. He called me home he could discuss the matter. (so that, so as, in order to)
113. A child wants such books have beautiful picture in them. (that, which, as)
114. We are so sick of the widespread indiscipline we have no interest in doing any excitement. (that, therefore, as)
115. There is hope of her recovery, so all the family members are upset. (little, few, a few)
116. he opened his umbrella, it turned up in the wind. (No sooner, Hardly, As soon as)
117. This is the same beggar I saw yesterday. (as, who, whom)
118. Scarcely had he opened the cage the bird flew away. (when, and, then)
119. Rich he was, he was not happy. (though, as, yet)
120. The boy refused to tell to(anything, anywhere, anybody)
121. earlier we leave, the sooner we will arrive. (A, An, The)
122. If a man plants Trees during his life, he has proved his worth as a human being. (much, little, a few)

123. You have granted most of our proposal but what about ? (the rest, a few, a little)
124. I've got in my pocket. What's it ? (somebody, somewhere, something)
125. If needs help. he can ask me. (anyone, someone, none)
126. Only students can write correct English. (a little, a few, all)
127. I had two dozen notebooks. I used some were given to my brother. (The rest, One, Some)
128. We learn not only Gujarati Sanskrit. (and, but also, both)
129. We went to Agra seeing the Taj Mahal. (with a view to, because of, inspite of)
130. That is the reason he failed in the examination. (why, when, where)
131. No sooner did the police leave the ground the bomb exploded. (when, then, than)
132. clever he was, he could not get first class. (Though, As, However)
133. his poor health, he had to leave the states. (On account of, Inspite of, Instead of)
134. I take interest in the home affairs. (the rest, a few, little)
135. Only fit can survive. (a, an, the)
136. This is the same edition we had seen in the library. (which, as, that)
137. The stage programme had hardly begun the audience shouting. (as, when, since)
138. Sincere she had been in her study, she did not secure the first class. (since, however, as)
139. I didn't say to him. Not a word. (anyone, anything, anywhere)
140. Famine is the time everyone should try to help others. (as, when, which)
141. The more expensive is the hotel, Better is the service. (a, an, the)
142. Indian freedom is Gandhiji. (according to, due to, owing to)
143. Many people die hunger. (owing to, due to, inspite of)
144. Are you really so depressed you cannot over a new plan ? (as, that, so)

145. I can't find my watch I've looked all over the house. (any one, anything, anywhere)
146. easy she takes it, she is in great tension. (Though, However, As)
147. I have done most of the work. is left to you. (Much, The rest, A few)
148. The plane had hardly taken off it began to roll violently. (when, then, than)
149. Open the window Sunlight and fresh air may come in. (therefore, so, so that)
150. He is such a reliable person is believed by all. (so, that, as)
151. No sooner did he open the door the dog ran out. (than, when, since)
152. Mehul started his hospital in the slum area treating the poor. (on account of, with a view to, instead of)
153. What's wrong with your eyes ? Have you got in it ? (someone, somebody, something)
154. his illness, he could not attend the marriage party. (Instead of, Owing to, Due to)
155. Science stream is hard many students join it. (yet, as, though)
156. Is he in such a critical stage he cannot be taken to the hospital ? (as, so, that)
157. I know the place he met with an accident. (when, why, where)
158. Scarcely had the child seen beautiful butterflies he tried to catch them. (that, when, as)
159. trying several other places, the answer was always the same. (With a view to, Instead of, In spite of)
160. more electricity you use, higher your bill will be. (An, A, The)
161. travelling by bus, Maulik prefers to travel by train. (In spite of, Instead of, with a view to)
162. Congratulations, Nirali. You type quickly accurately. (either...or, neither...nor, not only...but also)
163. Mr. Smith requires a clerk is experienced and efficient in offer. (such...as, same...as)

164. I read 'The Times of India' daily increasing my knowledge of English. (in order to, with a view to, owing to)
165. Let proud be taught the wisdom of politics. (a, an, the)
166. Hardly had Ashish cried Shobhana ran to help him. (then, than, when)
167. Picasso painted his pictures so cleverly they looked real. (as, so that, that)
168. intelligent Chirag is, he is not industrious. (Though, As, However)
169. Mr. Jadeja could not join college his poor economics condition. (in spite of, because of, with a view to)
170. The nurse failed to understand the reason the patient had collapsed. (where, why, how)
171. The children like such books have colourful, beautiful picture in them. (as, that, which)
172. Good he is, he is not loved by people. (however, as, though)
173. Open the window the sunlight and fresh air may come in. (so, in order that, therefore)
174. I will keep some books with me. will be sent to you. (Other, The rest)
175. We should always prefer the company of wise. (a, an, the)
176. My friend prefers swimming Boating. (inspite of, instead of, on account of)
177. No sooner had he entered the hall all the members stood up. (when, than, as)
178. Columbus had gone India, but he found America there. (due to, in order to, in search of)
179. whom God loves, dies young. (None, Somebody, Anybody)
180. Bombay is a polluted city, people live there to earn their bread. (as, still, though)
181. Doctors do not know the reason a person develops cancer. (why, where, when)
182. regularly Dipak works, he is not appreciated by his master. (As, However, Though)
183. The new manager work so amicably everyone in the office likes him. (as, that, therefore)

184. The older I get, Happier I become. (a ,an, the)
185. Dr. Oza started his dispensary in rural area treating poors. (on account of, with a view to, in search of)
186. He is M.A. form Oxford University. (a, an, the)
187. This is the place he was stabbed. (when, why, where)
188. he was dishonest, he was expelled from the service. (Though, As, Because)
189. Mrs. Varma decided to move to the court getting justice in the matter of property. (in order to, inspite of, with a view to)
190. smart Harendra may be, he is bound to make some mistake in life. (Though, However, As)
191. We eat we may live. (so that, so, therefore)
192. Divya dances well plays her role nicely. Appoint her for this serial. (either...or, neither...nor, not only...but also)
193. Sometimes we feel that virtuous are not rewarded. (a ,an, the)
194. A thief entered the house stealing ornaments but he could not succeed. (inspite of, in order to, with a view to)
195. learning is a dangerous thing. (little, a little, few)
196. Show me A person as must not have committed a sin in his life. (same, such, yet)
197. No sooner did I meet the manager he asked me to join the service immediately. (than, when, as soon as)
198. Save money in youth you may be happy in old age. (therefore, so, so that)
199. Travelling has become not only expensive Full of hardships today. (but also, either, both)
200. Many villagers are illiterate wise they are. (though, however, inspite of)
201. the name is enchanted island, they are not enchanted. (despite of, inspite of, as)
202. There was nobody in the hall has not mourn the death of the leader. (but, who, as)
203. He eats such food he can digest easily. (as, that, which)
204. Manisha's not attending the class was her sickness. (because of, due to, in order to)

205. shailesh, I attended the meeting with his proxy letter. (in place of, on behalf of, for the sake of)
206. I have done some of the work is left for you. (much, the rest, a few)
207. Both of the friends are blind so of them can drive a car. (none, neither, both)
208. Do the parents want to know the reason their children fail ? (how, why, as)
209. No sooner, did the rain start the match stopped. (when, than, then)
210. reading is to the mind, exercise is to the body. (why, what, where)
211. Only fittest can survive. (a, an, the)
212. Give me some papers and keep with you. (none of, the rest of, the rest)
213. Travel by a fast train save your time and energy. (in order to, in order that, with a view to)
214. It was the Sabarmati Ashram Dandi March started. (to where, from where, at where)
215. It is not wise to speak a lie your fault has already been detected. (why, where, when)
216. of the two vehicles was in working order. I had to hire a rickshaw. (Either, Neither, None)
217. Ya-toe was poor yet she wanted to give to the making of Lord Buddha's statue. (anything, something, nothing)
218. It is believed by many those who die early are dear to God. (why, what, that)
219. Useful English is, most of the students do not learn it wholeheartedly. (though, however, as)
220. everyone should be honest is good for saying but hard to put into practice. (what, that, when)
221. You have not visited my house since long. Please do come you are free. (when, whenever, wherever)
222. If you are selfish and self-centered will come to your help. (all, everyone, none)

223. the life is not a bed of roses, our young people should be prepared for hard ships. (since, for, why)
224. This epidemic is the pollution in the city. (with a view to, due to, because of)
225. Is there any valid reason a big country like India should not take stern actions against terrorism ? (that, why, so)
226. Water is the simple liquid animal and plant life is impossible. (with which, without which, for which)
227. Gandhiji gave message was given by Mahavir and Buddha long ago. (the same...as, such...as, such...that)
228. Children like to imitate the elders do. (when, why, what)
229. Wisdom can be imparted only to one has a desire to learn. (who, whom, whose)
230. You will soon know the reason I have called you. (when, why, where)
231. While you are in Rome do the Romans do. (as, unless, because)
232. Bangladesh is poor under-developed. (not, not only, but too, but also)
233. The time is lost, is lost forever. (which, what, when)
234. The man I called a sportsman. (who, whom, whose)
235. I had done some of the work and is left for you. (much, a few, the rest)
236. clever he was, he could not get good marks. (Though, However, As)
237. learned are respected everywhere. (A, An, The)
238. there is a will, there is a way. (When, Where, Why)
239. her sickness, she could not appear in the examination. (Owing to, In spite of, According to)
240. Scarcely had he opened the cage, the bird flew away. (when, and, then)
241. Good he is, he is not loved by the people. (however, as, though)
242. This is same car was seen in the rally last year. (which, as, that)
243. reading everything, I could not do well. (In spite of, because, Instead of)

244. Listen to he says. (which, as, that)
245. I have come here meeting him personally. (with a view to, due to, because of)
246. Mr. Patel started his dispensary in village treating the poor. (on account of, with a view to, according to)
247. her running fast, she could not catch bus. (instead of, since, inspite of)
248. Rita sings on the stage she was Anuradha. (as, like, as if)
249. had I finished my work, when I switched off the light. (Hardly, As soon as, No sooner)
250. the boys was selected as the captain of the team. (Some of, one of, All of)
251. intelligent Chetan is, he is not industrious. (Though, However, As)
252. The film had, hardly started a big sound was heard inside. (than, then, when)
253. words of advice from his father will put him on the right path. (few, a few, a little)
254. Komal's failure in the examination was her carelessness. (owing to, due to, in spite of)

Similar Words

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| 1. Fast | : quick / energetic / slow / calm |
| 2. Terrible | : great / good / awful / fantastic |
| 3. Invoice | : pen / sheet / paper / bill |
| 4. Stupid | : brilliant / fast / dumb / intelligent |
| 5. Comes | : does / arrives / goes / sees |
| 6. Inexpensive | : cheap / expensive / good / over priced |
| 7. Loud | : soft / blaring / pleasant / catchy |
| 8. Required | : needed / threw / found / got |
| 9. Big | : small / tiny / large / great |

10. Pretty : ugly / strange / beautiful / stupid
11. Generate : add / produce / waste / get
12. Obstacle : opportunity / difficulty / choice / chance
13. Kind : nice / wild / funny / best
14. Difficult : short / easy / simple / hard
15. Glad : broken / happy / open / round
16. Fast : clear / clean / quick / easy
17. Noisy : first / loud / afraid / small
18. Tiny : soft / happy / thick / small
19. Tired : kind / worn out / ready / angry
20. Skinny : small / little / thin / strong
21. Weird : strange / great / calm / typical
22. Rich : collect / wealthy / different / good
23. Scared : happy / sad / angry / afraid
24. Smart : dumb / wide / intelligent / old
25. Sure : likely / doubtful / certain / smart
26. Angry : happy / mad / tired / sad
27. Amazing : small / irregular / incredible / crazy
28. Fair : equal / large / false / right
29. Huge : light / tiny / giant / hard
30. Hilarious : large / small / funny / smart
31. Lovely : shy / tired / nice / effective
32. Many : a few / a lot / some / none
33. Value : good / price / worth / number
34. Worker : boss / employee / helper / friend
35. Robber : thief / officer / banker / police
36. Help : assistant / aid / payment / application
37. Move : stand / sit / stay / travel
38. Kept : played / saved / bought / hide
39. Buying : trading / compromising / purchasing / selling
40. Watched : heard / saw / touched / understood
41. Talk : walk / hear / speak / listen
42. Stealing : helping / robbing / holding / making
43. Told : touched / made / smile / said
44. Start : win / break / build / begin

45. Like : love / enjoy / hate / dislike
46. Clean : wash / dirty / soil / use
47. Got : made / helped / received / showed
48. Twist : open / tighten / lock / turn
49. Produce : buy / make / sell / find
50. Quit : help / accept / stop / rain
51. Increase : subtract / grow / remove / decrease
52. Annoy : scold / punish / establish / bother
53. Think : sleep / decide / wonder / watch
54. Create : write / make / hurt / run
55. Mistake : mark / error / game / job
56. Decide : choose / steal / think / attempt
57. Try : fail / attempt / score / shoot
58. Hurry : rush / drive / sail / run
59. Turn : assemble / generate / rotate / change
60. Occupation : job / man / do / see
61. Entire : half / whole / most / part
62. Wicked : wrong / evil / smart / helpful
63. Brief : half / short / near / close
64. Broad : thin / wide / small / big
65. Harsh : pretty / strange / cruel / angry
66. Terrified : horrified / anxious / nervous / scared
67. Apart : joined / separate / moving / together
68. Hasty : novel / creative / sweet / impatient
69. Proper : complicated / appropriate / obvious / wrong
70. Sturdy : strong / unstable / textured / light
71. Immature : retired / experienced / intelligent / young
72. Steady : fast / certain / complete / consistent
73. Genuine : phony / personal / generous / real
74. Grateful : supportive / thankful / healthy / tiny
75. Local : distant / global / nearby / regional
76. Keen : easy / loose / sharp / good
77. Warning : attention / emergency / victim / caution
78. Affection : hate / danger / dislike / love
79. Liberty : law / freedom / moral / rights

80. Region : area / onion / pencil / plate
81. Decline : mountain / discipline / hill / decrease
82. Recommendation: rejection / idea / claim / suggestion
83. Conservation: environment / prevention / agriculture / technology
84. Enthusiasm : passion / goal / will / entertainment
85. Consciousness: vision / understanding / books / awareness
86. Result : decision / cause / outcome / data
87. Search : see / find / hunt / be
88. Proceed : begin / end / engage / continue
89. Contemplate: learn / study / think / forget
90. Permit : hide / protect / allow / defend
91. Analyze : write / help / understand / study
92. Establish : show / maintain / create / break
93. Thrill : disturb / calm / move / excite
94. Wreck : pop / grasp / dash / crash
95. Precious : necessary / valuable / irregular / simple
96. Unique : allow / simple / typical / singular
97. Assist : help / apply / reproach / help
98. Authorize : permit / question / verify / disallow
99. Jump : juggle / leap / swim / run
100. Hungry : bumpy / happy / starving / hard
101. Silent : noisy / boring / early / quiet
102. Award : hotel / great / prize / necessary
103. Mend : break / repair / car / call
104. Cheerful : sad / clown / jolly / curtain
105. Truthful : lie / naughty / honest / worthy
106. Frighten : tell / scare / shout / call
107. Harm : damage / run / walk / swim
108. Loyal : correct / strong / faithful / worthless
109. Fearless : peacefulness / brave / great / coward
110. Cry : weep / tear / laugh / eye
111. Sick : well / spots / ill / horn
112. Lazy : work / idle / bed / school
113. Pleased : angry / fearful / confused / satisfied
114. Gift : present / answer / surprise / freedom

Select the correct question to get the underlined word/words as answer

240

1. He studies regularly to get good marks in the exam.
2. He studies regularly to get good marks in the exam.
3. Ramesh wanted to go to Kanpur in the last vacation.
4. Ramesh wanted to go to Kanpur in the last vacation.
5. Our final examination will be held next year.
6. Our final examination will be held next year.
7. Karuna often forgets her important work and meetings.
8. Arjun is the most hardworking students in my class.
9. Bachu gave a nice shirt to Harsh on his birthday.
10. Bachu gave a nice shirt to Harsh on his birthday.
11. Jitendra went to the garden to pick some beautiful flowers yesterday.
12. Jitendra went to the garden to pick some beautiful flowers yesterday.
13. You cannot follow the lesson.
14. They will discuss the matter tomorrow.
15. They will discuss the matter tomorrow.
16. Ants might have eaten the cake.
17. Ants might have eaten the cake.
18. The servant might have broken the China plate.
19. The servant might have broken the China plate.
20. A meeting will be held tomorrow at 6 p.m.
21. A meeting will be held tomorrow at 6 p.m.
22. Last year he was promoted to the tenth class.
23. Last year he was promoted to the tenth class.
24. I should send this letter by register post.
25. Anu can appeal to a higher court and apply for a fresh trial.
26. Boys competed with one another to get a single scholarship.
27. Boys competed with one another to get a single scholarship.
28. "Shanti Sadan" is the oldest house in the town.
29. I found a beautiful pen at the bus station yesterday.
30. I found a beautiful pen at the bus station yesterday.

31. Pari goes to a girls school everyday.
32. The teacher advised me to improve my spelling.
33. The teacher advised me to improve my spelling.
34. A child should start learning a language at primary school.
35. A child should start learning a language at primary school.
36. Atul writes letters beautifully.
37. Atul writes letters beautifully.
38. The boy stole the briefcase yesterday from the shop.
39. The boy stole the briefcase yesterday from the shop.
40. He would not come because he was ill.
41. I will always remember that terrible day.
42. The holiday has passed very quickly.
43. The holiday has passed very quickly.
44. Ajay must walk fast to catch the bus on time.
45. I am busy today so I have asked him to come tomorrow.
46. This new machine works faster.
47. This new machine works faster.
48. Rahim was the first one to get there.
49. Arun had missed the beginning of the speech.
50. Hetal will come tomorrow morning to watch the programme.
51. Hetal will come tomorrow morning to watch the programme.
52. Kaushal goes to the market everyday to sell the fruits.
53. Kaushal goes to the market everyday to sell the fruits.
54. Jigar saw the lion while visiting the Gir sanctuary.
55. You should give up smoking to improve your health.
56. The book fair will be held at the GMDC ground tomorrow.
57. The book fair will be held at the GMDC ground tomorrow.
58. Two days ago Atul finished his lessons and reading.
59. Two days ago Atul finished his lessons and reading.
60. Hiral is the cleverest girl in my family.
61. Anuradha came to my home to borrow my maths notes.
62. I always drink green tea to keep myself healthy.
63. I always drink green tea to keep myself healthy.

Turn the following sentences into indirect.

1. She says, "I will get myself a drink."
2. He said, "I cannot drive them home."
3. Amit says, "I am glad to be here this evening."
4. Kapil often says, "German is easy to learn."
5. Teacher said, "The earth moves round the sun."
6. John said, "I know her name and address."
7. Karan says, "I am homesick."
8. She says, "I feel tired almost every evening."
9. He said to us, "The earth is round."
10. Arun said, "My brother is living in Australia."
11. Amita said, "They are late once again."
12. She said, "I am going to the market."
13. Kishan said, "I will be late."
14. She says, "I have done my duty."
15. He says to her, "I will wait for you at the railway station."
16. Jigar says, "I am not coming."
17. Aruna will say, "I do not want to go."
18. He will say, "I cannot wait any longer."
19. Tutor says, "Two plus two is equal to four."
20. The girl said, "It gives me great pleasure to be here this evening."
21. The man said, "I must go as soon as possible."
22. She said, "I don't want to see any of you."
23. The teacher says to me, "If you work hard, you will pass."
24. He said, "I have won."
25. He said to me, "Where are you going?"
26. Mr West said, "I am very tired."
27. He said, "I am flying to Rome tomorrow."
28. George said, "I have lived in this village all my life."
29. Peter said to me 'I can't go out with you because I am not feeling well.'
30. Helen said to me, "I hope you have enjoyed yourself."
31. She said, "I have been to Paris many times."

32. Jane said, "I want to study medicine, father."
33. Her friend said, "You are wrong, Mary."
34. He said to me, "I saw your friend at the cinema yesterday."
35. She said to him "I called you up but you didn't answer an hour ago."
36. He said to me, "How much did you pay for this book?"
37. The nurse said to him, "How are you feeling".
38. The teacher said to me, "Have you written your homework?"
39. He said to me "Do you know anything about the accident?"
40. She said to me "Do you know where Mrs. Baker lives?"
41. He said to her, "Has the plane left?"
42. She said, "How much does this coat cost?"
43. She said to me "Where are you from?"
44. She said to him "When will you meet your friends?"
45. Helen says, "I want to be a doctor."
46. Jean said, "I want to go out, mother."
47. His father said, "You are right, Tom."
48. She said to him, "Have you paid the bill?"
49. He always says to them "You must pay more attention."
50. "What do you want?" she said to him.
51. "Are you coming with us?" he said to me.
52. "Do you come from China?" said the prince to the girl.
53. "Which way should I go?" asked the little girl.
54. Alladin said to the magician, "What have I done to deserve so severe a punishment?"
55. "Don't you know the way home?" I said to her.
56. "Do you write a good hand?" the teacher said to the student.
57. "Have you anything to tell me, little bird?" asked Uma.
58. "Can you solve this problem?" he asked me.
59. She said, "He works in a bank."
60. He said to me, "We went out last night."
61. Kavita said, "I am coming."
62. Kaushal told Anu, "He was waiting for the bus when she arrived."
63. Anil said to Anita, "I didn't go to the party."
64. He said, "Lucy will come later."
65. Karuna said to me, "I haven't eaten breakfast."

66. Aruna said, "I can help tomorrow."
67. She said to me, "You should go to bed early."
68. She said, "I won't see you tomorrow."
69. Harsh said to me, "I visited my parents at the weekend."
70. He said to me, "What are you doing now?"
71. Anita said to Naman, "Why did you go out last night?"
72. Sandip said to Sudha, "What are you going to do at weekend?"
73. Harsh said to Jigar, "Where will you live after graduation?"
74. Hetal said to Mishita, "What were you doing when I saw you?"
75. She said to me, "Did he arrive on time?"
76. Dhara said to Hardik, "Are you working tonight?"
77. Passenger said to driver, "Is this the road to the station?"
78. Parth said to the students, "Did you do your homework?"
79. Jitendra said to Bachu, "Have you studied reported speech before?"
80. Hardik said to Heena, "I will come and help you."
81. Anita said to the boy, "Could you tell me where the post office is?"
82. The girl said to Kavya, "Do you usually cook at home?"
83. Atul said to me, "Have you ever seen 'Lord of the Rings'?"
84. Pankti said to Mittal, "How often do you go to the cinema?"
85. Kanu said to Manu, "Where did you spend your holidays last year?"
86. Rama said to Arjun, "Go away."
87. He said to him, "Please wait here till I return."
88. "Bring me a drink of milk", said the master to his servant.
89. The teacher said, "Sit down boys."
90. The teacher said to him, "Do not read fast."
91. The principal said to me, "Bring your examination fee tomorrow."
92. Pankti said to Kavya, "Good morning"
93. The saint said, "Let me be alone."
94. He said to the pupils, "Let us stop the game."
95. Sunita said to Sunil, "Let me sit here."
96. He said to my friend, "Be careful about your study."
97. The teacher said to the pupils, "Write your answers fully."
98. My tutor said to me, "Do not waste your time during your exam."
99. Kavita said to her head mistress, "Please let me go home early today."

100. Mahesh said to Praful, "May God give you the strength to bear this loss!"
101. Hetal said to her friends, "Let's go for a picnic tomorrow."
102. Akshay said to Anil, "Let's go for a walk today evening."
103. He said to his children, "Don't quarrel."
104. I said to Mary, "Please lend me a pencil."
105. Atul said to Amit, "Let's wait for the award."
106. I said to my friend, "Please help me to get some job."
107. Nalin said to Nasir, "Follow my advice and start a factory."
108. He said to his son, "Do as I tell you."
109. "Go and post this letter.", she said to her maid.
110. The doctor said to the boy, "Don't be nervous."
111. Mira said, "Let me look out of the window."
112. The police man said to the person, "Show me your license."
113. I said to my friends, "Let us go to the Gandhi Park this evening."
114. He said to me, "Please give me your pen."
115. The doctor said to him, "Don't move from your bed."
116. The captain said to his team, "Let us bat first."
117. He said to me, "Let's read together."
118. "Don't play on the grass, boys," she said.
119. The captain said, "Let's have a race."
120. He said to the people, "Let's take him to the doctor."
121. The child said to us, "Let me go home."
122. He said to them, "Let us not quarrel with each other."
123. Atul said to his wife, "Let's go for shopping."
124. The host said to the boy, "Let the guests start their dinner."
125. The nurse said to his relatives, "Let the patient take rest for some time now"
126. Sonia said, "What a beautiful sunset!"
127. The old man said, "Alas! My youth has gone."
128. He said to him, "What a stupid fellow you are!"
129. Mona said to Sonal, "How smart you are!"
130. Amit said, "Alas! I am ruined."
131. The boy said, "Hurray! We have won the match."
132. The old man said, "Alas! I have lost my purse."

133. Jitendra said, "What a pleasant morning this is!"
134. Shila said, "What a nice child you are, Sanket!"
135. Kalpana said to her sister, "What a wonderful dress this is!"
136. The principal said, "What a clever boy Amit is!"
137. I said to him, "How wonderful the Taj Mahal looks!"
138. Kishan said, "What a beautiful gift this is!"
139. Hardik said, "Oh! I have lost all my hopes."
140. Dipti said to Dipak, "How smart you look in this shirt!"

Turn into indirect speech. (Conversation)

1. Shopkeeper : Madam, I think this sari will suit you well.
Sarladevi : Yes, I shall buy it. How much is it?
Shopkeeper : Only Rs. 1500/-
Sarladevi : oh! It is very costly. Will you give me some discount?
2. Ahmad : Good morning, Zara, How are you?
Zara : Not very fine.
Ahmad : What happened? Can I help you?
Zara : I have got Geometry test tomorrow and I can't understand this theorem.
3. Uncle : Mitlali, good evening. Congratulations on your winning a prize in the debate competition.
Khshuboo : Good evening. Thank you uncle. I spoke well but I was not sure that I would win a prize.
Uncle : I have heard that you are now going to take part in the competition at the district level.
Khshuboo : Yes, I am. I will try my luck.
Uncle : Good luck and good bye.
4. Ragini : How are you Nirali, today?
Nirali : Fine. What shall we do now?
Ragini : Let's go to the library and borrow some books.
Nirali : What a fine idea!
5. Passenger : Take this heavy bag to my office.
Coolie : Sir, it will cost more.
Passenger : Don't worry, I will pay 100 rupees for it.

6. Coolie : Thank you, sir. How kind you are!
 Anand : You don't really want to go out with me?
 Milly : I do. but I need some time to get ready myself.
 Anand : Ok. But please hurry up.
 Milly : Where shall we go?
 Anand : We will go to the seashore.
 Milly : What a wonderful idea!
7. Nirali : What are you doing now?
 Akash : I am doing my exercises.
 Nirali : Please help me with my homework.
 Akash : Don't worry. I'll surely help you this evening.
8. Harsh : Prem, Will you please help me with this word?
 Prem : sure dear! What is it?
 Harsh : 'Aklemetize' . I even do not know this spelling.
 Prem : It is a special word. It is spelt ACCLIMATIZE. But where did you hear it?
9. Mother : What are you doing now?
 Keta : I am watching a serial on the T.V.
 Mother : Don't waste time in watching T.V serial. You are in the S.S.C. class.
 Keta : Sorry, Mummy, I want to relax.
10. Mira : What are you doing now?
 Meena : I am doing my regular exercises and yoga.
 Mira : Please teach me some steps in Aerobic exercises.
 Meena : Well, don't worry. I am in hurry. I will surely help you this evening.
11. Vatsal : Where are you going?
 Nirav : I am going to play.
 Vatsal : Let's go to the library.
 Nirav : What a wonderful Idea!
12. An angel : Why are you taking too much care for creating this creature?
 Lord : I am creating a standard model of mothers.
 An angel : Don't take this much trouble in a single day.
 Lord : But I have completed most of the work now.

13. Lal : Will you read out this letter to me, please?
 Khan : Who is it from?
 Lal : I don't know. The postman has just given it to me.
14. The visitor : How beautiful the Taj looks!
 The Guide : We are proud of this historical monument.
 The visitor : Who built this wonder of the world?
 The Guide : Shahjhan the great emperor.
15. Rakesh : I want to give you a nice gift today.
 Meenal : Are you really thinking so?
 Rakesh : Let's visit the 'Suhag Gift Articles' for the gift of your choice.
 Meenal : How kind you are!
16. Raju : What are you reading here in this magazine now?
 Ramila : Please don't disturb me while I am reading.
 Raju : What a curious reader you are! Will you tell me about it?
 Ramila : O.K. I will tell you everything after reading it.
17. The King : What are you doing here? Didn't you go home?
 The beggar : Sir, I have lost a rupee. I have been searching for it since morning.
 The King : You are a very greedy fellow.
18. Pappu : Hello, uncle! Good morning. How are you? Glad to meet you.
 Natukaka : Hey, naughty boy, what are you doing here? Where are your parents?
 Pappu : They are at home
 Natukaka : It is already noon. Are you not hungry? I will bring some food for you.

Turn into indirect speech. (Conversation)

249

(They just don't care about how I feel. / Why do you always complain about your parents?)

1. Nina:
Mark: That's because they never stop criticizing me.
Nina: Why don't you try telling them how you feel about it?
Mark: Do you think I haven't?

(No, I'm okay. / You can't keep your eyes open.)

2. Pritesh: You better go home and take rest.
Anil: I can wait until the end of the meeting.
Pritesh: I don't think so.
Anil: I guess you're right. I'll see you tomorrow.

(I have stopped eating bread. / I know but it's only a beginning)

3. Pari:
Dipti: But it's not enough if you want to lose weight.
Pari:
Dipti: Sure, it's better than doing nothing.

(Then you should start wearing glasses. / I already have contact lenses)

4. Shalini: I cannot see the sentences on the board.
Gaurang:
Shalini:, but still I can't see clearly.
Gaurang: It's time you changed them, then.

(Shall we leave the car here and walk? / I can't walk up to the bank in this weather.)

5. Chris:
Nick: I don't think we should, because the bank is almost five hundred meters from here.
Chris: I agree but the bank will have been closed by then.
Nick: I don't care.

(I might come with you. / I will go later in the evening.)

6. Ishita: Are you going to the post office?
Pankaj: Why are you asking?

Ishita: That is why I am asking.
 Pankaj: I am not going to the post office.

(Have you heard about Timmy? / Really? I hope it is not too serious.)

7. Jack:
 Pete: No, is there something wrong with him?
 Jake: It could be but I am not sure.
 Pete:

(Why not find another laundry? / Then, you should try washing them yourself.)

8. Maria: I am not able to handle the laundry.
 Jenny:
 Maria: I have already done that, but nothing changed.
 Jenny: That might help.

(The lamp in my room is not working. / Then we will ask your father to look at it when he comes home.)

9. Mother: Why are you studying in the living room?
 Son:
 Mother:
 Son: It will be great as I can't concentrate on my lessons thoroughly in this room.

(How much of a tip should we leave? / The service was slow and the soup was cold.)

10. Kavita:
 Sanjay: No more than a dollar.
 Kavita: Why do you say that? Wouldn't it be too little?
 Sanjay: No, not at all.

(She certainly was / She made the company refund her money)

11. Jane: Alice was so angry when the toaster that she bought didn't work.
 Julie:
 Jane: What did she do when she found out?
 Julie:

(Were you able to get some sleep last night? / What was the problem? / I was disturbed by the noisy traffic.)

12. Amit: I know you were really tired
 Anu: I was able to sleep only a little bit.
 Amit: Oh, really.
 Anu:

(Have you started your research project for management class? / Actually, I went to the library yesterday, but wasn't sure where to look.)

13. Prakash:
 Manish: Well, I have decided on a topic, but haven't actually started the research yet.
 Prakash: Didn't you hear what the professor said yesterday?
 Manish: I know.

(Have you done anything about it? / No, I wanted to see a doctor first)

14. Patient: I have had sleep disorder for nearly 3 months.
 Doctor:
 Patient:
 Doctor: You did the right thing. Now I will give you some pills for that.

(Oh God! How is she right now? Anything serious? / Not really. All she has to do is to follow a strict diet)

15. Anup: You haven't been looking so well recently. Anything wrong?
 Sarita: Yes. Yesterday I had to take my mother to hospital due to high blood sugar.
 Anup:
 Sarita:

(No, we have time until the end of this month / I'm still trying to find some reference books but I haven't found any yet)

16. Harsh: Are we supposed to hand in our assignments by Friday?
 Ashita: Have you finished it yet?
 Harsh: No, I haven't.
 Ashita: Neither have I. I really don't know what to do.

(She would never forgive us if we forgot it / let me check my calendar / Don't tell me you have forgotten to celebrate her birthday)

17. Bharat: Do you remember when Lili's birthday is?
 Sumit:
 Bharat: I hope it is not past yet.
 Sumit: You are absolutely right.

(Yes I am / can you please prescribe another one? / Take this medicine for a week and you'll start to feel better.)

18. Doctor:
 Patient: But I've used it before and it did not help at all.
 Doctor: Are you sure? It's the best on the market.
 Patient:

(How did you like the movie you saw last night? / Certainly not. Do not waste your time.)

19. Jinal:
 Keta: I can't say it was the best I've ever seen.
 Jinal: Then you wouldn't recommend it, would you?
 Keta:

(This is the third accident you have had this year / But it wasn't my fault / you've got to believe me)

20. Father: What? You crashed the car again?
 Son:
 Father: I'm sure it wasn't.
 Son: You're very angry now, dad. We had better talk about this later on.

(I don't think it's because she hasn't got over her anger / Whenever we meet, she pretends not to see me)

21. Chirag: It seems that Martha is still angry with me.
 Suman: Why do you think so?
 Chirag:
 Suman: She's having a bad time at work nowadays.

Arrange the jumbled parts to make meaningful sentences.

253

1. the train/ to catch/ ran fast/ Archana/ yesterday.
2. that/ do/ gentleman/ know you?
3. woman/ was/ what/ Rani Laxmibai/ a brave!
4. Shahnaiwada/ was/ Bismillah Khan/ what a nice.
5. should/ If I / not get upset/ I/ make mistakes.
6. was crossing/ while/ the bridge/ Mr. Johny/ his hat/ blew off.
7. taking too much/ this creature/ you are/ creating/ care for.
8. ornaments/ as a symbol of/ he decorated/ and used them/ love and status/ with them.
9. And knocked/ the Giant took/ the wall down/ a big hammer.
10. is the sweetest/ with the world/ my mother tongue/ English links me/ but.
11. its rich and varied heritage/ I am/ I love/ proud of/ and/ my country.
12. excellent performance/ and students/ let me/ congratulate/ the teachers/ on their/ first.
13. at the airport/ the great pilot/ to welcome/ people had gathered.
14. and turned/ Bunty/ at the corner/ raced down the road.
15. my dog has damaged/ I am sorry/ your flowerbed/ to hear that.
16. in six minutes/ the woman/ for the past thirteen months/ who had been in his thoughts/ Blandford was going to see.
17. to understand other people's/ flexible enough/ I should be/ point of view.
18. people/ has always attracted/ the diamond/ its sparkling beauty/ because of.
19. Because/ everybody likes her/ she is very helpful.
20. take rest/ you are tired/ if/ you may.
21. we were going home/ this is / who helped us/ the girl/ when.
22. Taught the people/ the real/ Vivekanand/ to humanity/ and service/ lesson/of hard work.
23. Gandhiji/ more than/ used to/ twenty letters/ write/ a day.
24. One of the founders/ Nehru was/ in our country/ of democracy.
25. become rich/unless he/ No man/ works hard/ can.

26. for us/ The sun is/ to sit outside/ too hot.
27. the function/ we/ when/ was over/ returned home.
28. a stubborn/ don't have/ I/ to be.
29. gave him/ near the cross-roads, / standing/ the old man, / money.
30. my plane/ A few years later, / landed/ in Seattle.
31. was/ I / went/ I/ invited/ because.
32. otherwise/ overtake/ walk quickly / him /will not /you
33. he/ honest/ is/ he is / poor/ although.
34. Returned/ I/ therefore/ was tired/ I home.
35. carefully / listen/or take/notes/ either.
36. tried/ he/ succeed/ did not/ hard he / though.
37. cry/ will die/ if she/she/does not.
38. theatre/ I went/ to the cinema/neither to the / nor.
39. thanked/ not only him/ but also/ rewarded him /Atul.
40. he gave /called him/ Nisha/no answer/ although.
41. The girl/ my cousin/ long hair /who/ has/ is.
42. were a born /if he /he as/speaker/ speaks.
43. is not /foolish/ him /she/ more than.
44. I was/ which/ I had / read before/ reading the book.
45. He / has been in hospital/ improved a lot/ has/ because he.
46. that / the teacher/ be forgiven by / mischievous student/ will.
47. The earth/ the moon/ as large as / is
48. Picture/what a/it was/ wonderful!
49. as well as/Mruga /Kalyani/type /does not.
50. the supervisor/ them to do so/wanted to copy/ did not allow /
though students.
51. Rajesh gives /unless/ be / safe/out secret/he will.
52. the /what/ an ugly/ creature/camel is!
53. are you/return /when/ my camera/ going to?
54. toothache so /he consulted /a doctor /had a severe a /his uncle.
55. not /as thick as/ is / milk/ water.
56. greater than /of India/ was/ any other singer/ Kalidas.
57. will be/two chairs/ next week/ Arjun/ bought by
58. is/German language/Bachu / able /to read.
59. be/the bicycle/ next Sunday/ repaired/ will.

60. he is /work hard/ he/ because/ rich/ does not.
61. Ruby/or/ coming/ Gita is / either.
62. Tony/ his parents/ neither/ came/to school/ nor.
63. but also / take/ we/ tea dinner/ will/ not only.
64. was/yesterday 8 pm/being/ by/ Rajesh/ noise made/.
65. Enjoyed/ the programme/ last Monday/ by everyone/ was.
66. going /you are/ will/ you do that/ to regret/ when.
67. you/pain will increase/ unless a doctor/ your/consult.
68. yesterday/ ran fast/ the train /Akash/ to catch.
69. is/ that/ beautiful dress / how!
70. was /yesterday/ window /broken /by/ Amit.
71. very hard /He/could get /Atul worked/ so that/ the first prize.
72. reading /disturb me / I am / don't/ while.
73. Do you /yesterday/where I / know the place/ lost the keys?
74. anything /It is so/ cannot see/ dark the driver / that.
75. India could/batted fast/ win/so that/ Virat Kohli/ the match.
76. Aruna/ she / though/ the magic show/ was ill/ attended.
77. I will not /does not/his marriage/If/ invite me/ attend / Manish.
78. went to watch/ instead of /going to school / the movie / He.
79. is / is rich/ very happy/so he /Hardik.
80. came/ the students / as soon as/ stood up/ the teacher.

EITHER.....OR / NEITHER.....NOR

1. You can eat ice cream or chocolate.
2. Rahul and Ravina were not in the class yesterday.
3. I do not like Michael Jackson and Madonna.
4. Sunil and Sanjay will help you with your children.
5. Jigar like tea and coffee both.
6. Bank and credit union will not give you a loan.
7. The store owner isn't here today. The store manager isn't here today.
8. The team is practicing in the gym. The team is practicing outdoors.
9. I am not watching the movie on TV. I am not watching the movie on my laptop.

10. My mom will be home. My sister will be home.
11. She can have coffee. She can have tea.
12. He did not come. He did not call.
13. Kanu will not come here. He will not send representative.
14. He may attend the function. His wife may attend the function.
15. Give me freedom. Give me death.
16. Sunil must have done this. His brother must have done this.
17. I cannot find my towel. I cannot find my glasses.
18. We can rent an apartment. We can stay in a hotel.
19. Hardik never reads newspapers. He does not read magazines.
20. We will pay cash. We can pay with a credit card.
21. Anil's father is not alive. His mother is not alive.
22. Ankit is studying German. He is studying French.
23. Kavita will come for lunch. Kanak will come for lunch.
24. When I go to the restaurant, I eat Punjabi or Gujarati dish.
25. I don't need your help. I don't need your sympathy.

APOSTROPHE' S / OF

1. This is the girl's shoe.
2. We are at the hotel's room.
3. This is the house of Julie and Joe.
4. Please close the door of the car.
5. The plants' flowers are red.
6. The college's website is confusing.
7. I want to ride in the car of Mayur.
8. The school's principal could not come.
9. Cousin of Jim is my best friend.
10. Are you ready to swim in neighbour's pool?
11. The actor's cupboard is very stylish.
12. Cat of Lisa was very shy.
13. The plant's leaves are yellow.
14. Karan's books are lying on the table.
15. This is the show of National Geographic.

1. She learned Russian the age of 45. (in, by, at)
2. The book was written Mark Twain. (by, with, to)
3. I'll show you the picturethe palace. (without, of, to)
4. We can only get to the camp foot. (at, with, on)
5. He reminds me..... his old history teacher. (of, without, to)
6. What are you talking.....? (about, without, from)
7. the end of next year we will have made over £ 100,000.
(at, by, on)
8. She always gets up early..... the morning and goes to bed late.....
night. (in, at, to)
9. I went to work..... Tuesday but I didn't go..... Friday. (at, from, on)
10. You'll have to wait. He'll be..... you in a minute. (in, by, with)
11. Philip waited for her..... the movie theatre. (at, to, on)
12. He started learning English..... 2005. (in, into, on)
13. You have to pay..... the tickets on the day you order them.
(to, for, at)
14. We are very proud..... this company. (of, by, in)
15. It's very kind..... you to help us. (in, to, of)
16. The old man suffered..... a heart attack. (from, of, at)
17. Please write..... pencil. (on, in, to)
18. It's..... time you told him the truth. (without, about, for)
19. The manager didn't take part..... the discussion. (from, in, at)
20. He's very good..... telling jokes. (to, from, at)
21. I'll see you..... the conference. (to, on, at)
22. We sat down..... the grass and ate our lunch. (above, on, into)
23. My parents got married..... the 1970s. (in, into, from)

24. There's a good restaurant..... the end of the street.
(from, with, at)
25. We usually have turkey..... thanks giving. (above, for, to)
26. I would like to travel..... Italy next summer. (to, from, at)
27. I took a plane..... Munich to Rome. (from, without, with)
28. I'd like to speak..... the manager, please. (on, to, with)
29. I don't usually feel tired..... the morning. (at, to, in)
30. My mother is abroad so my dad is taking care..... us at the moment. (from, of, by)
31. Sonja gets..... the seven o'clock bus in the morning.
(above, of, on)
32. She always looks at herselfthe mirror. (in, into, with)
33. I met Donna..... a party..... Friday night. (at, on, by)
34. My friend always borrows money..... me. (of, from, with)

IF

Complete the Conditional Sentences (Type I) by putting the verbs into the correct form.

1. If you (send) _____ this letter now, she (receive) _____ it tomorrow.
2. If I (do) _____ this test, I (improve) _____ my English.
3. If I (find) _____ your ring, I (give) _____ it back to you.
4. Peggy (go) _____ shopping if she (have) _____ time in the afternoon.
5. Simon (go) _____ to London next week if he (get) _____ a cheap flight.
6. If her boyfriend (phone / not) _____ today, she (leave) _____ him.
7. If they (study / not) _____ harder, they (pass / not) _____ the exam.

8. If it (rain) _____ tomorrow, I (have to / not) _____ water the plants.
9. You (be able/ not) _____ to sleep if you (watch) _____ this scary film.
10. Susan (can / move / not) _____ into the new house if it (be / not) _____ ready on time.
11. If it doesn't rain, we (can / go) _____ swimming tomorrow.
12. If you train hard, you (might / win) _____ first prize.
13. If we go to Canada next year, we (can / improve) _____ our English.
14. I (May / go) _____ to the disco in the evening if I do the washing-up now.
15. If we go on holiday next week, I (not / can / play) _____ tennis with you.
16. If you see Gareth tomorrow, you (should / tell) _____ him that you love him.
17. If my parents go shopping in the afternoon, I (must / look) _____ after my little sister.
18. He (must / be) _____ a good drummer if he plays in a band.
19. If you are listening to the radio after 10 pm, you (should / turn) _____ the volume down.
20. If you like that shirt, you (can / have) _____ it.

UNLESS

- ❖ Use “unless” in the following sentences.
1. If you do not drive carefully, you will meet with an accident.

2. If someone does not show him way, he will get lost.
3. If you do not practice Russian, you cannot improve it.
4. If Shila does not hurry, she will be late for school again.
5. If there is no oxygen, fire cannot burn.
6. My parents will be angry if I do not pass my exams.
7. You cannot travel abroad if you do not have a valid passport.
8. If Ramesh does not finish his homework, he cannot watch TV.
9. If they do not lower the price, I will not buy that computer.
10. If I do not see you tomorrow, I will call you.
11. If you do not finish your work, you cannot go out.
12. If Robin does not have time on the weekend, he will not come to see us.
13. If there is no traffic, we will not use the subway.
14. If Rachana does not get cheap ticket, she will not go to Agra.
15. If we do not get good marks in English, teacher will not take us to the cinema.

EXCLAMATORY

1. He is very obedient.
2. New York is a very big city.
3. You sing very well.
4. It was a splendid performance.
5. He is very brave.
6. You are very fortunate.
7. She is a brilliant actor.
8. You are very kind.
9. Iron is very useful.
10. Sophia is a gorgeous young lady.
11. You have a lovely smile.
12. He is very generous.
13. She is very knowledgeable.
14. It was a pleasant surprise.
15. Gold is very precious.

16. He is a very intelligent boy.
17. It is a very nice bird.
18. This was the most exciting match.
19. The rose is a very beautiful flower.
20. He plays nicely.
21. The day is very hot.
22. It was a horrible night.
23. India is a very peaceful country.
24. The crow is very black bird.
25. We loved him very warmly.
26. It was a very lovely day.
27. Mr. Patel is a very honest person.
28. Kavita has a wonderful pen.
29. The sun shines very hotly.
30. China grows so fast.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. I put my soda down on the table, but _____ moved it!
(somebody, anybody, none)
2. There is _____ in the clothes basket. It is empty. (something, anything, nothing)
3. The party is going to be great! _____ will be there.
(someone, everyone, anyone)
4. _____ of the students wears the uniform. (all, each, every)
5. Does _____ have change for a dollar so I can buy a soda?
(anyone, everyone, someone)
6. I am new in this town so I know _____ here. (anybody, everybody, nobody)
7. I was disappointed because _____ came to the party.
(nobody, somebody, everybody)
8. He sat at the table but didn't have _____ to eat. (anything, nothing, something)
9. Rachel was so popular that _____ wanted to sit next to her.
(all, any, more)

10. How _____ rupees did you pay for this watch? (much, many, more)
11. _____ left the freezer open and the ice cream melted. (everybody, anyone, someone)
12. The teacher said I could bring cupcakes for _____ in the class. (anything, someone, everyone)
13. Two women were quarrelling. One was fat and _____ thin. (other, the other, others)
14. Henry was surprised that _____ sent him a birthday card in the mail. (nothing, someone, anyone)
15. Has _____ seen my blue notebook? (anyone, someone, somebody)
16. The third question on the test was so difficult that _____ could answer it. (nobody, anything, someone)
17. Please do not buy _____ from this shop. (something, anything, nothing)
18. I cannot help you because I have _____ money. (little, a little, a few)
19. This class is empty. There are _____ students. (few, a few, little)
20. She had 200/- rupees. She gave me 100/- rupees and kept _____ with her. (rest, the rest, some)
21. There is _____ water in the jug so you can drink it. (little, a little, a few)
22. _____ girl of the class keeps silence. (each, every, all)
23. _____ of these two roads goes to railway station. (every, each, both)
24. _____ likes being poor. (nobody, anybody, everybody)
25. _____ told me that Tom was leaving the town. (everyone, someone, anyone)
26. There are only a _____ of us who know the secret. (few, a few, little)
27. Can _____ please turn on the kitchen lights? (anyone, someone, everyone)

28. There are _____ questions I have. (few, a few, little)
29. Does _____ know the truth? (anyone, everyone, all)
30. Calm down. There is _____ to worry about. (something, anything, nothing)
31. The program was in German so I did not understand _____ (anything, something, nothing)

QUESTION TAGS

1. She is an accountant, _____?
2. I am here, _____?
3. You and I are very busy, _____?
4. It is not very windy today, _____?
5. I am cooking tonight, _____?
6. He is not a baby, _____?
7. It will be all right, _____?
8. She doesn't feel well, _____?
9. They have left early, _____?
10. Kavita needs some help, _____?
11. They are away for a few weeks, _____?
12. It's warm, _____?
13. It wasn't your turn, _____?
14. You're not serious, _____?
15. You come here often, _____?
16. She isn't Italian, _____?
17. You don't forget _____?
18. Kanu smokes, _____?
19. Sharks don't like vegetables, _____?
20. David will not come, _____?
21. All these lessons start at 8.00, _____?
22. He sometimes reads the newspaper, _____?
23. Pankti didn't use the pencil, _____?
24. Mary has answered the question, _____?
25. She wasn't listening, _____?

1. I did not feel well yesterday. I _____ not eat anything. (can, could, would)
2. You _____ look at me when I am talking to you. (should, would, could)
3. I was using my pencil a minute ago. It _____ be here somewhere. (should, can, must)
4. If you do not work harder, you _____ repeat the course. (must, can, would)
5. Shila _____ the piano very well. (can, should, would)
6. Bags _____ not be left unattended at the airport. (must, should, can)
7. _____ I take a photograph you? (may, should, could)
8. Karuna _____ speak more than one language. (can, could, should)
9. I _____ talk already before I was two years old. (should, would, could)
10. Karina _____ work hard to get good marks. (has to, had to, have to)
11. You _____ not eat so much chocolate. (should, would, could)
12. The test starts at 10.30. You _____ not be late. (must, can, should)
13. We _____ go now or we will be late. (has to, have to, had to)
14. She _____ dance very well but she can't sing. (can, should, would)
15. You _____ buy a new alarm clock. This one is broken. (should, could, would)
16. She looks pretty sick. I think she _____ go to a doctor. (should, would, could)
17. I know he speaks five languages, but _____ he speak Arabic? (can, should, has to)
18. I _____ not speak to him. I didn't have time. (should, could, would)
19. I think you _____ learn Spanish if you want to work in export department. (should, would, could)
20. Everyone who crosses the border _____ show his/her passport.

- (must, can, should)
21. When Sunil was five, he _____ read and write. (can, could, must)
 22. I _____ wear uniform at my school. (has to, have to, had to)
 23. You _____ do your homework if you want to go out. (must, should, can)
 24. _____ you help me with the cleaning? (would, could, can)
 25. We _____ respect the elders. (should, could, would)
 26. She _____ not win the match because she was ill. (could, would, should)
 27. Ketan _____ like to go to Baroda. (would, should, could)
 28. My father is very talented. He _____ paint very well. (can, must, would)
 29. It is raining heavily. You _____ take your umbrella. (have to, has to, had to)
 30. _____ I borrow your camera tonight? (may, can, should)
 31. You _____ be careful while driving. (must, can, should)
 32. _____ elephants jump? (can, would, should)

WHO / WHOM / WHOSE / THAT / WHICH

1. The book _____ I got from the library is due tomorrow. (who, which, whose)
2. My father, _____ I respect, congratulated me on a job well done. (who, whom, whose)
3. I am always frustrated by people _____ talk while watching a movie. (whom, which, who)
4. The store no longer sold the computer _____ I wanted. (that, who, whom)
5. We walked past the church in _____ I was baptized. (which, who, whose)
6. The child to _____ you have spoken is my sister. (who, whom, which)

7. The tallest man _____ came to the show is my Uncle James. (whose, whom, who)
8. The man _____ restaurant burned down was very sad. (whose, which, whom)
9. My first novel, _____ was published last year, was about my family. (whose, whom, which)
10. The hit song, _____ composer won an award, has been playing all day. (whom, who, whose)
11. The building _____ was scheduled for demolition was knocked down. (who, whose, that)
12. The young girl _____ lives next door needs a babysitter. (who, whom, whose)
13. The singer _____ was very talented won the contest. (whom, whose, who)
14. The reckless driver _____ ran the red light crashed his car. (whose, which, who)
15. Clearance sales, _____ happen rarely, are great ways to save money. (which, who, whose)
16. Spiders, _____ build beautiful webs, eat the flies they catch. (who, which, whom)
17. The bicycle _____ I ride to school is quite old and needs some repairs. (that, who, whom)
18. The truck, _____ was a huge machine, could carry all their belongings. (whose, whom, which)
19. My cousin, _____ guitar playing you have heard, wants to be a musician. (whom, whose, who)
20. I have a hard time believing _____ she really told such a lie. (which, that, whose)
21. Last summer they traveled to Rome, _____ is in Italy. (whose, whom, which)
22. What did you buy with the money _____ you got for your birthday? (that, who, whose)
23. The delightful little boy, _____ is wearing a baseball cap, is her son. (who, whom, whose)
24. Mrs. Anderson, _____ daughter is also a teacher here, teaches first

- grade. (whom, whose, which)
25. Your response to my question, _____ I received today, was appreciated. (which, who, whom)
 26. John, _____ is my younger brother, went to do the shopping. (who, whom, whose)
 27. His work, _____ is very difficult, exhausted him. (whose, who, which)
 28. Tom, _____ mother is French, speaks the language very well. (which, whom, who)
 29. Mr Smith, _____ I was talking to, is a carpenter. (whom, whose, who)
 30. Your problem, _____ I have thought about a lot, is a difficult one. (who, whom, which)
 31. Our friends, _____ advice we sought, were very helpful. (whose, whom, who)
 32. He met Mary _____ is now his wife. (who, whom, whose)
 33. The treaty, _____ was signed yesterday, is an excellent one. (which, whose, whom)
 34. His father, _____ works very hard, has just bought this house. (whom, whose, who)
 35. Yesterday I met Harry, _____ works nearby. (who, whose, which)

SO / THEREFORE

1. I cannot go out. I am tired.
2. He failed in the exam because he did not work hard.
3. Kanu cannot attend the meeting because he is out of country.
4. I left the movie in the middle because it was boring.
5. I decided not to go out. It began to get dark outside.
6. Atul was born in Paris. He can speak French like a native.
7. There was no one there because they went away.
8. I like reading books. I keep buying it.
9. They cannot buy the house because they do not have enough money.
10. Ketul did not get any milk because all the shops were closed.
11. This is a nice home because it has a garden.

12. He worked very hard. He wanted promotion.
13. Shila went to market. She wanted to buy fruits.
14. We could solve all the answers because we had calculator.
15. They do not read English newspaper because they do not know English.

THOUGH / ALTHOUGH / EVEN THOUGH / EVEN IF

1. It was raining. We went to the beach. (Though)
2. We were tired. We continued working. (Even though)
3. It was getting late. We decided to stay and talk a little longer. (Though)
4. She had to drive twenty minutes to get to his house. She gave him a ride to home. (Even though)
5. It was very cold out. We decided to go for a walk in the park. (Although)
6. She was getting impatient and wanted to leave. He stayed at the computer for a little while longer. (Though)
7. The roads were really bad, and many people decided not to drive that night. (Although)
8. The prices are a little higher at that supermarket. We like to go shopping there anyway. (Even though)
9. They said they were on a diet. They had chocolate cake for dessert. (Although)
10. I'm sick, but I will still go to work. (Even though)
11. It is hot outside, but I still want to go jogging. (Though)
12. Learning English is hard, but I enjoy it. (Even if)
13. Jack is a vegetarian, but he sometimes eats fish. (Even if)
14. I like the weekends, but I like going to school too. (Though)
15. It was very hot outside. We went to the market anyway. (Even though)
16. I studied hard. I did not pass the test. (Even though)
17. That mobile was expensive but Kanu bought it. (Though)
18. Ravina is overweight but she is healthy. (Although)
19. Jigar eats only healthy food. He often gets sick. (Even if)

20. I understand English very well. I cannot speak it very well. (Though)
21. I was late. I did not miss the bus. (Although)
22. In spite of being in a hurry, I did not forget to lock the door. (Though)
23. She knew the answer but she did not help him. (Although)
24. Despite being the boss, he works as hard as his employees. (Though)
25. It was snowing but they went shopping. (Although)

TO BE ABLE TO

1. I can remember his name.
2. Diana can play the piano.
3. She cannot come on holiday next month.
4. They can play football and cricket.
5. Can you lend me some money?
6. You can solve this problem.
7. If he studied harder, he could pass the exam.
8. We could not go to the party.
9. Can we use our dictionaries?
10. Jim can run very fast.
11. Sunita can sing well.
12. Could you swim when you were 18?
13. We can get to the meeting on time.
14. He can speak 5 languages including Chinese.
15. I could not find my glasses anywhere yesterday.
16. She is just 7 years old but she can read very fast.
17. John cannot play tennis really well.
18. I cannot open this window.
19. Could Kanak drive a car?
20. I could not go to the party last night because I was sick.
21. Can Mishita cook Italian food?
22. My sister could swim last year.
23. They could not go shopping yesterday.
24. I can ride a bicycle.
25. How many chocolates can you eat at one time?

TO BE GOING TO

270

1. Next week you will use computer.
2. We shall finish at three o'clock.
3. Janki will design websites.
4. Harsh will be a film director.
5. Hardik will not work with the computers.
6. Hetal and Mishita will be rich.
7. Sarah will not be a writer.
8. Will you visit the Taj Mahal?
9. What will you do this evening?
10. Will you and your family go out this weekend?
11. What will they buy for their friends?
12. How shall we solve this problem?
13. Tonight Kavita will cook.
14. This weekend they will visit Canada.
15. Jitendra and Harsh will not visit a computer shop.
16. Sam will visit the town with his friends.
17. Will you buy a new phone?
18. My sister will leave school next year.
19. She will listen to music this afternoon.
20. We shall watch TV at the weekend.
21. They will arrange a party on Saturday.
22. I shall not visit my best friend tomorrow.
23. He will do his homework this evening.
24. Will my brother go to a restaurant?
25. Tomorrow Kanu will surf the internet.

ALREADY / YET / STILL

- 1) I haven't finished my homework I'll do it tonight. (Already, still, yet)
- 2) We arewaiting for the teacher to give us the results. (Already, still, yet)
- 3) Binita had seen the film twice so we went for a pizza instead. (Already, still, yet)

- 4) You want another piece of cake! You've eaten three slices! (Already, still, yet)
- 5) I've made some coffee. Would you like some? (Already, still, yet)
- 6) Haven't you phoned Lola? I thought you had.....called her. (Already, still, yet)
- 7) I had sat down to watch TV when Dad asked me to help him. (Already, still, yet)
- 8) She hasn't bought anything to wear for the party. (Already, still, yet)
- 9) My parents haven't booked their holidays (Already, still, yet)
- 10) She told me that she hadbroken up with him. (Already, still, yet)
- 11) You've got that tennis racket that I lend you. (Already, still, yet)
- 12) She has not taken that book to the library. (Already, still, yet)
- 13) I've made plans to go out on Friday. (Already, still, yet)
- 14) Hasn't Ana given you her phone number? (Already, still, yet)
- 15) He has not danced in the streets (Already, still, yet)
- 16) Sangita has called her friend. (Already, still, yet)
- 17) My parents havegot up. (Already, still, yet)
- 18) We have not unpacked everything. (Already, still, yet)
- 19) We haven't got any furniture (Already, yet, still)
- 20) I have unpacked all the things. (Already, yet, still)

USED TO / TO BE USED TO

1. I _____ smoke when I was in college.
2. Karan _____ like drama but now he does not.
3. Hardik _____ driving a big car.
4. Gopal _____ drink tea five years ago.
5. In summer, Mehul _____ going for swimming daily.
6. I _____ living in London.
7. Jigar _____ driving in heavy traffic.
8. Karuna _____ live in a flat when she was child.
9. I _____ play tennis when I was at school.
10. She _____ eating chocolates.

11. Some people _____ not _____ using the internet.
12. Jitendra _____ play football when he was young.
13. She _____ exercise every morning two years back.
14. I _____ working late night.
15. Harsh _____ eat meat but he became a vegetarian 5 years ago.
16. Julie _____ hard work.
17. Tom _____ living in a noisy street.
18. They _____ eating spicy food.
19. Video tapes _____ be popular in past
20. Now I _____ speaking in public.

RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

1. Harry and Julie have given golden ring to _____ on their wedding. (each other, one another)
2. Teachers were talking to _____ about exam. (each other, one another)
3. Seema and Samir were laughing on _____ in the school ground. (each other, one another)
4. I and my friend have shared a gift to _____ on New Year. (each other, one another)
5. Seniors have congratulated _____ on their farewell party. (each other, one another)
6. Many kids are playing in the ground by kicking the ball to _____. (each other, one another)
7. Customers are fighting to _____ for a single product. (each other, one another)
8. Rama and Suman support and admire _____. (each other, one another)
9. Those people were very angry and warning _____. (each other, one another)
10. I have three sisters and they love _____. (each other, one another)

11. All the cars on road are hitting _____. (each other, one another)
12. David and Dhaval say goodbye to _____. (each other, one another)
13. Good students help _____ during exam time. (each other, one another)
14. Geeta and Seeta have helped _____. (each other, one another)
15. Both of my friends hate _____. (each other, one another)
16. They are sharing clothes to _____. (each other, one another)
17. Many prisoners were fighting to _____. (each other, one another)
18. They both love _____ very much. (each other, one another)
19. Two dogs always bark when they see _____. (each other, one another)
20. Why gangsters fight _____. (each other, one another)

NOT ONLY.....BUT ALSO

1. There are problems with the children. There are problems with their parents.
2. He can make people laugh. He can make people cry.
3. She writes plays for television. She acts in movies.
4. I sent him many letters. I also tried to telephone him.
5. We visit our grandfather's house in summer. We visit our grandfather's house in winter.
6. She can dance. She can sing.
7. They need food. They need medicine.
8. He has been late four times. He hasn't done any work.
9. She was upset. She was angry.
10. In winter the days are short. They are also cold and dark.
11. She is intelligent. She is beautiful too.
12. They need food and shelter.

13. Kavita is rich as well as generous.
14. Hardik visited France and Switzerland last year.
15. That place was clean. It was safe too.

BOTH.....AND

1. Anil does not speak French and Anita does not speak French.
2. Susan speaks German and she also speaks Italian.
3. He is clever and he is good looking, too.
4. Harry is a good swimmer and so is his brother.
5. Shila and Sunita did not come to my birthday party.
6. Janak is not married. Jayesh is not married either.
7. I like fruits and I like vegetables, too.
8. My brother does not smoke and my sister does not smoke, either.
9. He studies and works in the afternoon.
10. Palak has got blue eyes and so has her sister.
11. I know his name. I also know his address.
12. He did not have any breakfast and he did not have any lunch, too.
13. Neither fruits nor vegetables make you fat.
14. I am tired and I am ill, too.
15. Jigar and Jigisha like to wear glasses.

DEGRESS OF COMPARISON

FOR 8TH, 9TH, 10TH

1. This town is as large as my native place. (change into comparative)
2. Tina is more intelligent than Mina. (change into positive)
3. The heat is more harmful than the cold. (change into positive)
4. This song is the most beautiful in the world. (positive and comparative)
5. They are as stubborn as the donkeys. (change into comparative)
6. She is more polite than me. (change into positive)
7. The boy is the fastest runner of all. (positive and comparative)
8. It is as pleasant as a greeting card. (change into comparative)
9. The movie was more interesting than the book. (change into positive)

10. The cake was as sweet as the ice cream. (change into comparative)
11. Sometimes friends are more helpful than relatives. (change into positive)
12. Planes are the most convenient means of travelling of all. (positive and comparative)
13. Those cars are more expensive than these cars. (change into positive)
14. The trousers were as dirty as the jeans. (change into comparative)
15. This blanket is warmer than that blanket. (change into positive)
16. Mark is the tallest boy in his class. (positive and comparative)
17. Girls are as strong as boys. (change into comparative)
18. Hardik drove more carefully than Jigar. (change into positive)
19. My grandfather is the fattest woman in the family. (positive and comparative)
20. Cats are more dangerous than dogs. (change into positive)
21. Richa dances as beautifully as Rita. (change into comparative)
22. This T-shirt is as dirty as that one. (change into comparative)
23. Vistula is the longest river in Poland. (positive and comparative)
24. "Titanic" is the saddest film. (positive and comparative)
25. Dipak was the most talkative person in my class. (positive and comparative)
26. Surat is smaller city than Ahmedabad. (change into positive)
27. Mr. Patel is as honest as Mr. Shah (change into comparative)
28. Sharks are more powerful than lions. (change into positive)
29. Karan is as selfish as Ramesh. (change into comparative)
30. This is the strongest case in the shop. (comparative and positive)
31. It was the cheapest hotel in town. (comparative and positive)
32. She is younger than her husband. (change into positive)
33. Hindi films are as popular as English films. (change into comparative)
34. George runs as fast as Jim. (change into comparative)
35. Your house is more beautiful than mine. (change into positive)
36. This is the most expensive book in the store. (comparative and positive)

37. My mother was thinner than my aunt. (change into positive)
38. February is shorter than January. (change into positive)
39. The Narmada is the cleanest rivet in Gujarat. (comparative and positive)
40. The elephant is the biggest animal in the world. (comparative and positive)
41. Antartica is the coldest place in the world. (positive and comparative)
42. Our town is more attractive than Manchester. (change into positive)
43. Exercise 16 is as easy as exercise 15. (change into comparative)
44. Mother is always busier than father. (change into positive)
45. Carrots are worse than cakes. (change into positive)
46. My health is as good as yours. (change into comparative)
47. Winter is the best season of all. (comparative and positive)
48. We have the biggest garden in our area. (comparative and positive)
49. New York is bigger than Boston. (change into positive)
50. India is as powerful as China. (change into comparative)

ACTIVE- PASSIVE VOICE

1. He sings a song.
2. The boy killed the spider.
3. Are you writing a letter?
4. The workers were digging a canal.
5. I will finish the work tomorrow.
6. I have informed him of his mother's death.
7. Have you finished your job?
8. Many people begin new projects in January.
9. You must wash that shirt for tonight's party.
10. Mummy is going to prepare the food.
11. They make shoes in that factory.
12. They will have to examine you again.
13. We had finished the preparation by the time guests arrived.
14. The delegation will meet the visitors at the airport.
15. We have produced clothes here since 1980.

16. All workers read the memo.
17. Nobody can beat Tiger Woods at golf.
18. We must look into the question.
19. Someone reads the newspaper to him everyday.
20. The Chinese discovered fireworks thousands years ago.
21. Has he given you back the book yet?
22. The police locked up the criminals.
23. They must have left the keys behind.
24. The robbers made up the story.
25. The boy is eating the cake.
26. The guide will show us the Natural History Museum.
27. The dentist is cleaning the woman's teeth.
28. She showed her relatives the new house.
29. The Browns have built the large house.
30. They gave her a nice present.
31. Jinita is singing the new song.
32. How do you write that word?
33. Ben will direct the show.
34. The dog has broken the window.
35. You must pay the bills first.
36. They were interviewing her for the job.
37. The professor told him not to talk in the class.
38. Vishal should not speak bad words.
39. Do not leave the bicycle in the hall.
40. Do we like shopping regularly?
41. Can you learn French easily?
42. An unknown author wrote the book.
43. Our neighbors have invited us to dinner.
44. Why are they watching the movie?
45. She would have told you.
46. I will present my ideas at the conference tonight.
47. They are pushing the car.
48. They were discussing the news.
49. The headmaster will contact you.

50. Didn't she tell you the truth?
51. The thieves had stolen all the gold.
52. The students are using the computers right now.
53. Edison invented the gramophone.
54. They may take the old man to the hospital.
55. Did you see the cat?
56. Does Ankit listen to songs?
57. You should review the lessons before the test.
58. Can anyone count the stars?
59. The doctors have made the announcements.
60. The publishers are reading the book.
61. Have they seen the Taj Mahal?
62. Has the cleaner found your purse?
63. The government has built a new road in this area.
64. The assistant handed me a note.
65. They are still preparing the food.
66. They will launch the new ship next week.
67. You must not throw the garbage in the street.
68. We are decorating the wall.
69. Drivers must obey traffic rules.
70. People should read the safety instructions.
71. You can serve a meal.
72. Riddhi will eat apples tomorrow.
73. Did Karan bring homework yesterday?
74. Where did you find the diary?
75. She had taken the medicine.
76. Who will shut the door?
77. Why does he tell the lies?
78. The postman delivers the letters.
79. How do you wash your clothes?
80. Does Ravina sing a song everyday?
81. She is watering the plants.
82. I have not finished my work yet.
83. Am I making a kite?

84. We are playing a hockey.
85. Who has torn this letter?
86. Has Kantilal spoiled your clothes?
87. Did you make a noise?
88. Jenny wrote a letter two days ago.
89. When did he do his home task?
90. Which picture did you see last night?
91. He was revising his books.
92. Was she giving a lecture?
93. She was plucking the flowers.
94. The little boy had broken the window.
95. I had lost the key.
96. Had Manish cleaned the room?
97. What had you done?
98. Why will he pay the bill?
99. Will Mishita cook the food?
100. Amit will catch the train tomorrow.
101. The baby will break the toy.
102. She will have read this book.
103. You will not have learnt the lesson.
104. He will have milked the cow.
105. You should obey the parents.
106. Can I use your umbrella?
107. Should we respect our parents?
108. I can solve this sum easily.
109. He could not help us.
110. Who will break the chair?

MODAL PERFECT

1. I _____ bread but I did not know we needed it. (can + buy)
2. We _____ so many people to our party. (should + invite)
3. Money _____ by me years ago. (should + save)
4. We _____ at the restaurant but we could not get a babysitter. (would + join)

5. I _____ not _____ on time. There was heavy traffic. (can + arrive)
6. Anita _____ the work but she fell ill. (will + finish)
7. Lalita _____ earlier. She missed her flight. (should + leave)
8. Chocolates _____ by me when I was young. (can + eat)
9. The exam _____ by Lalit if he had studied. (can + pass)
10. This job _____ not _____ by you. (should + take)
11. Amit _____ to Cambridge University but he decided to travel instead. (can + go)
12. Some milk _____ by you. We do not have any milk. (should + buy)
13. They _____ for breakfast to us. (would + come)
14. John _____ on holiday. I saw him this morning. (must + go)
15. He _____ the wrong train. (may + catch)
16. I _____ more for my exam. (can + revise)
17. Nobody answered the phone at the clinic. It _____ early. (may + close)
18. I did not know you were going to party yesterday. You _____ me. (should + tell)
19. Something _____ to Shila. (must + happen)
20. A nice gift _____ by me if I had known. (will + give)

STANDARD 11TH & 12TH

Fill in the blanks. (Verb forms)

1. We..... this problem of fear for a long time. (Consider)
2. I..... of the importance of independent thinking since I read Krishnamurti. (think)
3. about his grand success. I decided to congratulate him personally. (hear)
4. I got my neighbor D.D.T. in our compound. (spray)
5. One of the six balls.....notcarefully when I came. (hit)
6. Sejalnot..... her parents..... Sweets everyday. (make + bring)

7.my home work, I went to bed. (have + complete)
8. The letter, I posted immediately. (write)
9. The speech by heart by Ruchita before I helped her. (learn)
10. When Bachchan was a child, he play cricket in Mumbai. (use to)
11. A big fund has to meet the expense of the programme. (Collect)
12. Mrs. Parmar English in our school since 1988. (teach)
13. We Computer programming by our school last year but the school did not get a computer. (be + to + teach)
14. Look, the news about you (telecast)
15. The milk when she rushed to the kitchen. (have + spill)
16. By the next June, Nadiadwala his new film. (would + complete)
17. The commissioner his level best since he resumed his duties in this city. (have + do)
18. Bharti suicide before anyone could stop her. (have + commit)
19. Did you talk to him on the telegram ? (receive)
20. It was in just the postman Ali's name. (call out)
21. Sweta cannot go to the U.S.A. because her passport..... not yet. (verify)
22. Look, the news about the strike of the teachers On T.V. (telecast)
23. Birju heartily when I saw her. (smile)
24. The terrorists by the police before they could escape. (arrest)
25. Had you not helped me in time, I (would + ruin)
26. Jignesh hard to get a job since he completed stenography course. (try)
27. Every effort to win the game. (should + make)
28. Since when Mrs Patel this dancing classes? (run)
29. The boys are not in the class. They to witness the one day cricket match. (may + go)
30. I got my house Last year. (paint)
31. The work by the workers, they left for their tents. (have + finish)

32. The mechanic repairs the machine accurately,.....? (do)
33. Success through hard and sincere work. (can + achieve)
34. I may get my father some new books. (buy)
35. Roshni.....not the classes for the last fifteen days. (attend)
36. The teacher Deepali if she had done her homework. (ask)
37. This poem by heart as it is a part of the examination. (learn)
38. Afterfor the six, Hardik was cheered by people. (hit)
39. The driver must the bus before starting. (check)
40. I hope Akash his writing the novel by the next week. (will + finish)
41. The old man for his turn since early morning, so he looks tired. (wait)
42. Letters at the post office by the postmen before they were delivered. (stamp)
43. The tickets alewys at this window at this time ? (sell)
44. The patient Chloroform before he is taken to the operation theatre. (give)
45. Madhuri desires to Sanjay. (marry)
46. If she had been more careful, the mirrornot..... . (might + break)
47. Had the doctor come in time, the patient (must + save)
48. Ramesh Heartily when I saw him. (smile)
49. Jaya cannot go to the U.S.A. as per papers not (verify)
50. It cats and dogs for an hour. (rain)
51. The doctor the patient, the nurse gave him medicine. (examine)
52. The manager will have his staff The project by Saturday. (complete)
53. Jack and Jill holidays since last Monday. (enjoy)
54. If Amol had tried hard, he First class. (could + secure)
55. Look, a nice picture Now by the painter. (paint)
56. I in this town since 1991. (live)
57. We shall have a gardener Our plants. (water)
58. You should get your eyes By a good eye specialist. (check)

59. Our leaders know our needs, They ? (do)
60. The film once, I don't want to see it again. (have + see)
61. We want the decision before the election. (take)
62. My friend is too young A career. (decide)
63. The room at the moment. (clean)
64. Mr. Shah waited for half an hour because his order them.
(type)
65. Sir, here are your shoes. They already..... . (have + polish)
66. When we got home last night, we found that the TV and the tape recorder..... (steal)
67. I hope the bus comes soon. I've for 20 minutes. (wait)
68. By next March, Jahir Computer programming. (will + learn)
69. Children the park, went to see the museum. (visit)
70. Could you please These papers For me ? (get + xerox)
71. Mummy, why don't you have your clothes ? (wash)
72. The commissioner his level best, since he resumed his duties in this city. (do)
73. the computer course, Nirali took up a job in a private firm.
(complete)
74. Dhruvi has not Her classes since January due to her illness, Still she is ill. (attend)
75. If she had studied seriously, she better result. (will + get)
76. Permission before you entered the chamber. (should + take)
77. Where were the injured men by the people at noon yesterday?
(take)
78. Why did you have your suit Today and today only? (wash)
79. Hardly the people About the accident, when they began to run to the scene. (hear)
80. I saw a book near that table yesterday. (lie)
81. What you here for last two hours? (do)
82. How can you anyone to your proposal without his willingness? (make + agree)
83. The farmer The crops by his farmworkers next week.
(will + cut)

84. Our result by the end of the next month. (will + declare)
85. We a boy all the odd jobs at our office. (have + do)
86. Had I seen her at the party, I surely her. (would + call)
87. It is already 12.10 p.m. All the teachers of the morning shift..... for home. (must + leave)
88. All the tickets before we reached the theatre last night. (sell)
89. Look there, a heavy log by the workers. (shift)
90. When I reached their place, a serious topic there. (discuss)
91. Some guests we could not go out for shopping. (arrive)
92. Yamini has to her passport this year. (get + renew)
93. These letters yesterday, but the clerk forgot to do that. (be + post)
94. Mitesh for the school since he joined the school. (play)
95. If our grandfather had purchased some estate in big cities like Ahmedabad, Surat or Vadodara, we rich men by this time. (would + become)
96. I already you a letter before you phoned me. (send)
97. any serious problem in your meeting at 10 p.m. yesterday? (discuss)
98. I never about their activities. I don't know anything about them. (inform)
99. By this time tomorrow we Agra. (will + reach)
100. I want my son in some good school. (would + admit)
101. All the letters the typist went home. (type)
102. Cold drinks there. Let's go and have it. (serve)
103. All the details We were waiting for the result. (have + submit)
104. Listen, a violin by someone here somewhere. (play)
105. For many years scientists To discover some cure for cancer. (have + try)
106. The room by the servant and now he is washing. (have + clean)
107. Tea please wait for a minute or two. (prepare)
108. The batsman the ball, the crowd cheered him loudly. (hit)
109. Mayuri often gets her sister her home-work. (write)
110. Mr. Sharma our principal since 1990. (be)

111. Our TV now. We will have it tomorrow. (repair)
112. The car by the driver before the tree fell on the road. (stop)
113. If he had not given me a lift, I the train. (will + miss)
114. Kindly have a servant this room by 5-00 p.m. (clean)
115. When we met him, he to the police station. (take)
116. Since they got married, they In this house. Still they are in it. (live)
117. I the garden yesterday. (get + water)
118. Her father ill for the last two months. (be)
119. You have failed in the examination; you hard. (should + work)
120. If the police had not come in time the boy by the rioters. (will + kill)
121. Take your seat. Meal right now. (serve)
122. Their names from the ministry before they left the party. (to drop)
123. The commissioner his level best since he resumed his duties in this city. (do)
124. The gundas the light before they rushed in. (put out)
125. Can you an elephant in a circus ? (make + dance)
126. the computer course, Nirali took up a job in the private firm. (complete)
127. Meera has not her classes since January due to her illness. Still she is ill. (to attend)
128. Take your ticket out. It by the inspector. (to check)
129. Pina, some vegetable, returned home. (buy)
130. Nikita the Home Science course since she left her school. (join)
131. The employer The workers to call off the strike if he had been a little tactful. (might + persuade)
132. a fish, the crane flew away. (catch)
133. The air-cooler In my room now. (use)
134. Sonali suicide before anyone could help her. (to commit)
135. If she had taken studies seriously, she better result. (would + get)

136. Pulin and Harshal holidays since Sunday last. (enjoy)
137. Permission before you entered the chamber. (should + take)
138. Please have a cook your meals. (cook)
139. Since he changed his house, he happy. (be)
140. It is too cold these days. I in the sunshine since the morning.
(sit)
141. The engine some trouble, the pilot brought the plane down.
(develop)
142. Where were the injured men..... by the people at noon yesterday
? (take)
143. Ice-cream when we reached the party place. (serve)
144. The aeroplane closely before the pilot took it off. (examine)
145. Why did he his reservation ? (get + cancel)
146. By this time tomorrow, I the book. (shall + complete)
147. When the guests arrived, we already lunch. (to take)
148. to the books, he started writing. (to refer)
149. Mr. Shaikh had a peon all his files. (to carry)
150. Crops when it rained heavily. (cut off)

Complete the following sentences. Part-I

1. John Milton was one of (great, epic, poets)
2. Pankaj exports such cars (excellent)
3. The teacher is so old (teach)
4. In spite of his being strong,(win, the game)
5. My father went to Mumbai with a view to (meet, his business partner)
6. However true your case may be (fight for it)
7. Give the child neither a tricycle (a rocking horse)
8. A school is a place (where, get education)
9. He was used to (visit, laughing club in the morning)
10. The Amul Dairy is bigger than (dairies in India)
11. Is this the same cat ? (stolen by someone last week)
12. Mr. Modi is one of the (popular, chief minister)
13. As soon as he found me in difficulty (help)
14. This poem is too difficult (they, understand)

15. A soldier ! (afraid of a gun)
16. You are honest but (your work , appreciated)
17. This is the same woman (meet, the book-stall)
18. Not only success (failure, in our hands)
19. As soon as the teacher came in (all, stand up)
20. Ankit is one of the (fine, players of the team)
21. Mr. Desai was too (deaf, hear anything)
22. Though he was seriously ill (appear, test)
23. My friend teaches in the class (as if, expert teacher)
24. Very few Indian batsman (bat, aggressively, Dhoni)
25. What a creative poet ! (Rabindranath Tagore)
26. Hardly had Shobhit receiving my message last night,
(when, run down, the hospital)
27. Arun has failed in his business (due to, negligence)
28. Gargi went to the court so that (get, justice)
29. One of his legs was injured ? (was, not ,it)
30. The man was too (climb up, ladder)
31. My friend rushed to help me (as soon as, find, difficulty)
32. Gandhiji used (say, truth, God)
33. Very few months of the year (cold, December)
34. He is not only greedy (but also, dishonest)
35. , he continued playing. (injured, Yuvraj)
36. The bible is one of in the world. (holy book)
37. Though she is blind, (work well)
38. As soon as I returned home, (switched on, T.V)
39. William realized his mistake (feel, greatly sorry)
40. The more a person reads, (information, gather)
41. I am very glad to know (you, come)
42. Parthiv Patel is one of India. (young, cricketer)
43. The more he earns (saves much)
44. Harsh plays cricket as if (Virendra Sehwag)
45. Though he is intelligent, (jobless)
46. It is certain that within ten years India (superpower)
47. The nearest house is over a mile away. (reside, people)

48. The light went out when an interesting story..... (was/read/by him)
49. I have given full satisfaction to you..... (Question tag)
50. Very few media (as/powerful/TV)
51. The lion (was/old/so/jump)
52. I do not know the place (where/lose/pen)
53. What a (large/river/the Ganga)
54. He could (neither/buy/borrow)
55. The Goans are (not only/exuberant/traditional)
56. While the teacher (scold/the pupils/the headmaster/enter/the class)
57. In spite of his blindness (came/cross the road/easy)
58. Mr. Trivedi has taught English for thirty years..... (Question tag)
59. Not only his father (but also/his mother/to be/kill)
60., your work will not be appreciated. (honest/however/you)
61. This is..... (same/woman/ we/ met/ bookstall)
62. The king was..... (so/happy/ arrange/ function/ welcome/ great champion)
63. Sardar Patel was (great/most other/ Indian leaders)
64. The teacher is (so/ old/ teach)
65. No sooner didme in difficulty (he/ find/ help/ me)
66. Alpa went to America (so that/she/ more money)
67. the price of a thing,people think it is. (high/ good)
68. This is (same/book/ I/ see)
69. Very few (Gujarati writers/ great/ Mr. Joshi)
70. They will finish their work..... (question tag)

Complete the following sentences. Part-II

289

1. The teacher is so old (showing contrast)
2. My father went to Mumbai with a view to (purpose)
3. He used to smoke (showing past habit)
4. This poem is too difficult (consequence)
5. A soldier and (exclamation)
6. You are honest but (showing contrast)
7. Arun failed in the business (provide reason)
8. Gargi went to the court so that (purpose)
9. Atul asked Vipul, "Will you join English Speaking course?" (Expressing choice)
10. May is hotter (comparison)
11. The more he earns (double comparison)
12. He could neither (expressing choice)
13. Sardar Patel was greater (comparison)
14. The teacher is so old (consequence)
15. Alpa went to America so that (purpose)
16. They will finish their homework (question tag)
17. Hardik was careless (result)
18. This is the same boy..... (adjective clause)
19. She used to..... (habitual past)
20. We could meet friends and..... (suggestion)
21. She is too weak (consequence)
22. Very few dairies (comparison)
23. Though he is clever (contrast)
24. Atul went to the market in order to (showing purpose)
25. Would you please (request)
26. Let's try (expressing suggestion)
27. I called Shila (reason)
28. Jitu would like to read either (expressing choice)
29. My parents went to my school with a view to (purpose)

30. What a.....(exclamation)
31. When I was a kid.....(habitual past)
32. Aruna would eat.....(habitual past)
33. Join science stream so that.....(purpose)
34. Karuna writes.....(comparison)
35. Books are too.....(consequence)
36. Harsh would.....(habitual past)
37. Ketan is saving money in order that.....(purpose)
38. In spite of.....(contrast)

Jumbling

1. your work / however / will not / you are / be appreciated / honest
2. had not / by him / been finished / his homework
3. there will be riots / is a rumor / the news that / in the next week / in the city
4. as was stolen / this is / by someone / the same cat / last week
5. is accepted / the fact that / can feel / as we / by all / the plants also
6. did not attend / On account of / he / the marriage / his sickness
7. as I met / this is / yesterday / the same man
8. he is / Mr. Patel / yet / has riches / unhappy.
9. Mr. Varma / it is / a car / that / cannot drive / a fact
10. are selected / none / but / in the army / the brave.
11. not / strong enough / in any critical situation / Vishal is / to lose confidence
12. letters / yet / directed / have not been / by the manager
13. he joined / had been passed / before / the H.S.C. examination / the diploma course.
14. immortal / is / man / not.
15. a dangerous / really / Boxing is / sport.
16. he was / poor / yet / Lallu was / honest.
17. your case / may be / you must / however true / fight for it.
18. could not / that man was / that / so weak / he walk.
19. is giving / BBC / now / the news
20. Her mother / enough / to forgive / anybody / is kind
21. illiterate / is clever / still she / Laxmi is

22. and / were punished / his companion / the robber / both
23. truth / he / Since Socrates / was punished / had spoken
24. a rocking horse / a tricycle / neither / give the child / nor
25. important / English is / language / really
26. old parents / looked after / Mr. Dixit's / are being / by him
27. some youth / Brown-sugar / is dangerous / use it / still
28. is short / that novel / interesting / as well as
29. was said / supreme / by Gandhiji / the truth is
30. the reason / why / I don't know / in the exam / Ketki failed
31. is one of / the kangaroo / animals / the fastest
32. you will be / if you / well / dismissed / don't work
33. Gandhiji / where / the house / was born / I visited
34. before / had been cut / a long distance / the sunset / by the traveller
35. he is / polite and gentle / yet / rich / he is
36. we borrow / where / the library is / books / a place
37. diamond / things are / very few / as precious as
38. as Rekha / please show me / wears / the same saris
39. Amitabh Bachchan is / actors of india / than most other / more popular
40. on the TV / no sooner did / I return / than I switched / home
41. the watchman / have been lost / the keys / by
42. so clever / she can / that / my sister is / become a doctor.
43. the museum / / for the day / we reach / no sooner did / than / it was closed
44. are flowers / by whom / to the guests / being offered
45. round / it is / the earth is / a fact / that
46. was disobedient / punished / as the boy / he was
47. seen / hardly had / he ran away / the policeman / in the corner / the thief / when
48. are selling / they / here / oil
49. the song / by whom / being sung / is / now
50. a very great / was / Shakespeare / dramatist.
51. That is / yesterday / in the show-room / the same scooter / as we saw
52. a drop / on account of / in the final test / had to take / my illness / I

53. the notorious criminal / to Bombay / the policeman went / catching / with a view to
54. playback signer / she were / Mitali signs / a good / as if
55. that / drink / so hot / this tea is / I cannot.
56. the strongest / this is / all over the city / one of / buildings
57. so strong / that / confidence / in any critical situation / Mayank is / he cannot lose
58. as if / Priti / a model / dressed up / she were
59. Nepal / temple of Pashupatinath / you can see / You are going to / the famous / so that
60. by you / not been invited / she has / to the party
61. more rhythm / like / the young people / as have / such film songs / and less meaning
62. books / it is / strange / that / a student / is afraid of
63. the less / he / the more / he / works / speaks
64. the world Trade Center / hardly had / when / into flames / the plane hit / it turned
65. to take anything / too sincere / for granted / the new Chief Minister is
66. as honest as / in India / very few / are / administrators / Mr. Patel
67. their lives / they could make / so that / many patriots / India free / laid down
68. people / animals / in olden days / carry / made / heavy loads
69. Viral / the higher / he feels / jumps / the lighter
70. one of the greatest / Sachin Tendulkar is / all over the world / cricketers

1. "For the last time, I pray you to answer my questions, wise man."
"You have already been answered," said the hermit.
"How answered? What do you mean?" asked the king.
2. The teacher said, "Dinesh, why are you disturbing the class?"
"I didn't do anything, sir."
"Stand up, you bloody boy, and get out. You are telling a lie."
"Why should I go? You can do whatever you like."
3. "Why don't you try to sleep? I'll wake you up for the medicine," said I to Schatz.
"I'd rather stay awake," said Schatz, "You don't have to stay in here with me, Papa, If it bothers you."
"It doesn't bother me", said I.
4. "What's the matter, Schatz?" said his father.
"I have got a headache."
"You better go back to bed."
"No, I am all right."
"You go to bed. I'll see you when I'm dressed."
5. "Have you any commissions for Egypt?" said the Swallow,
"I'm just starting."
"Will you not stay with me one night longer?" said the Happy Prince.
"I'm waited for in Egypt by my friend," answered the Swallow.
"Little Swallow, far away across the city I can see a miserable young man in his garret leaning over his desk," said the Happy Prince.
6. "What do you see up there?" said Ali, pointing to the sky.
"Heaven."
"Allah is there and in his presence, I am giving you this money. When it comes, you must forward my Miriam's letter to me."
"But where... where am I to send it?" asked the clerk.
"To my grave," said Ali.
7. "Dear me, how shabby the Happy Prince looks!" he said.
"How shabby indeed!" cried the Town Councillors, who always agreed with me Mayor.

- "The Ruby has fallen out of his sword, his eyes are gone, and he is golden no longer," said the Mayor.
 "In fact, he is little better than a beggar!"
8. "I am going to Egypt!" cried the Swallow.
 "I have come to bid you good-bye."
 "Swallow, Swallow, little Swallow," said the Prince, "will you not stay with me one night longer?"
 "It is winter" answered the Swallow, "and the chill snow will soon be here."
9. "Can I see the manager?" I asked.
 "Certainly," replied the accountant without smiling.
 "Are you the Manager?" I asked the man in his chamber.
 "Yes, please come in and take your seat," he politely said.
 "Thank you very much," I said.
10. "It's our duty to help the poor", said the father.
 "How would you like to help them father?" asked the son.
 "Not by giving alms, but by giving them work", said the father. How the fine idea is!
 "But what work can we give them in the village?" asked the son.
11. Natalia: Pardon the interruption. You said. "My meadows" –but are they yours?
 Lomov : Yes, they belong to me.
 Natalia: What non-sense! The meadows belong to us not to you.
 Lomov : No, to me! Now, my dear Natalia.
12. "How do you find our new scheme of English? It is tougher?" Jayesh asked Neha.
 "Not at all. Only the translation from Gujarati into English is definitely beyond my capacity", said Neha.
 What about the prose and the poetry section?"
 How nice! I like all the lessons as well as poems", she said smilingly.
13. "What a fine dress you are wearing! Did you buy it from here?" Vipul asked Devyani.
 "No, I bought it from Bombay", she replied.
 "How much did you pay for it, Madam?"

- “Oh! Only sixteen hundred rupees”, she laughed.
14. “How delicious this sweet dish is! ” said Nayana.
 “Do you like it, Vipa?”
 “Certainly, who prepared this for us, Nayana?” said Vipa.
 “My mother,” said Nayana.
 “Let's go and thank her,” said Vipa.
15. “Look at this radio. What a beautiful piece!” said the sales-girl.
 “How much is it?” asked the youngman.
 “Only six hundred and ninety-nine rupees,” said the girl.
 “That is a big amount. How can I buy it? I am sorry to have troubled you.” replied the youngman.
16. “Let's visit Abu next week,” said Sudha to her brother Sunil.
 “What an excellent idea! We will enjoy the scenery there,” said Sunil at once.
 “Shall we go by bus or by train?” asked Sudha.
 “By neither, Let's go by a car,” said Sunil.
17. “Do you play tennis?” asked the Maharaja.
 “Yes, I played a little bit at school,” said Uncle Ken.
 “Good! The job is yours. Get ready for it. By the way, were you at Cambridge?”
 “No, at Oxford,” replied Uncle Ken.
18. “Could you, please lend me your pen for a moment?” said the stranger.
 “No, I don't like to give my pen to anybody”, said I.
 “Why, sir? Do you think you won't get it back?” said the stranger.
 “You are right, sometimes I forget to take it back and many times the borrower forgets to return”, said I.
19. “All this time I have been waiting to take some work from your hands.” said the man. “What kind of work would you like?” asked the girl.
 “Will you give me one of your pitchers? One that you can spare.”
 “A pitcher! Do you want to draw water from the torrent?” she asked.
20. “Show me some new fashion purses, please,” said Himali to the salesman.

"Foreign or Indian?" said the salesman.

"Both," said Himali.

"Wait a minute, please." said the salesman.

21. Pooja : Hi Abhishek! How are you?
Abhishek : Not a well.
Pooja : Why? May I know the reason?
Abhishek : It is necessary for me to tell you everything? Please leave me alone.
22. "Are you free this evening?" asked Rina.
"Yes. Why?" asked Ruchir.
"I want to take you to a movie. Let's go to multiplex theatre and enjoy window-shopping there."
"Certainly. We shall go at least two hours earlier", said he.
23. "How stuffy it's here? I can't stay here even for a moment," said Lily.
"But we'll have to wait here till Mr. Bhatt returns," said Mr. Patil.
"Oh God! I will die here."
"Let's go to the garden and wait for him."
24. "Let me help you", said the young man to the old lady. "Thank you", she replied, "How kind of you!" "I consider it my duty to help you", he said.
25. "Let's visit the science exhibition," said Nirmal to Nikita.
"What a suggestion! We will surely go."
"Thank you for accepting my proposal."
"Is it worth-visiting?" asked Nikita.
"Certainly "

SUCH.....AS / SAME.....AS

1. Buy apples that are sweet. (such.....as)
2. Is he the person, who saved your father? (same.....as)
3. That is the cycle which we saw at the temple yesterday. (same.....as)
4. The persons having the command over English will be selected. (such.....as)
5. This is not the magazine, which he wanted. (same.....as)
6. I want a grammar book. It must increase my knowledge. (such.....as)
7. Mr. Patel is a teacher. He can work for ten hours a day. (such.....as)
8. This is the car. We had seen it in front of the mall. (same.....as)
9. Atul gave me a pen on my last birthday. I saw it in the shop. (same.....as)
10. We had a very bad meal, and we didn't like it. (such.....as)
11. Hindi is the language that can be learnt easily. (such.....as)
12. People like films. They are amusing. (such.....as)
13. He is the teacher, who is respected by all the students. (same.....as)
14. Kala sang a song. Kavita sang that song in the party. (same.....as)
15. You should buy clothes, which suit your personality. (such.....as)

REMOVE TOO

1. It is too hot to go outside.
2. These books are too expensive for students to buy.
3. The king was too perfect to make mistake.
4. Kavita is too tired to think anything.
5. He spoke too fast to be understood.
6. The Chief Minister was too busy to give us an appointment.
7. It became too dark for us to read easily.
8. The place was too noisy for me to hear anything.
9. Manu earns too little to keep his family in comfort.
10. The thief ran too fast for the police to catch.
11. The tea is too hot for Kishan to drink.
12. The bag was too heavy for Hardik to lift.
13. The task was too difficult for her to solve.

14. Kavita is too weak to come on foot.
15. The result was too bad to be published.
16. The language is too difficult to be understood.
17. The luggage is too heavy for Karuna to carry.
18. Mishita is too young to travel alone.
19. He was too late to catch the train.
20. It is too early to predict the outcome.
21. Jitendra is too simple minded to be a successful businessman.
22. He was too proud to accept his mistakes.
23. The news was too bad to be declared.
24. The movie was too boring for us to see.
25. The soup is too cold for Tina to drink.

IN ORDER TO / IN ORDER THAT / WITH A VIEW TO/ SO THAT

1. I went to his office because I wanted to meet him. (use in order to)
2. She is working hard to pass. (use in order that)
3. Kanti did everything to get the prize. (use in order that)
4. I am going to London to meet my family. (use with a view to)
5. Sunil went to the post office to buy some stamps. (use in order to)
6. I phoned Bhavin to invite him to dinner. (in order that)
7. Kaushal is saving money. He wants to buy a new car. (use so that)
8. I bought a dictionary so that I could help with my vocabulary. (use with a view to)
9. Kavita waited for an hour. She wanted to meet me. (use in order to)
10. My sister gave some English lessons in order to earn some money. (use in order that)
11. Make sure that your bags are tagged. You can identify them later. (use so that)
12. Do exercise regularly. You will have excellent health. (use in order to)
13. I am studying very hard at the moment. I want to pass my exam next month. (use with a view to)
14. We went to the principal to propose a picnic. (use with a view to)
15. Be careful while driving so that you might not meet with an accident. (use in order that)
16. Janakbhai saved a lot of money to become very rich. (use with a view to)

17. Read the Times of India to enrich your knowledge. (use in order that)
18. I ran fast to catch the bus. (use so that)
19. We must eat to live. (use in order to)
20. I switched on the television to see a comedy program. (use with a view to)

HARDLY HAD.....WHEN/ NO SOONER DID.....THAN / AS SOON AS

1. Hardly had she read the letter when she started crying.
2. No sooner did I close the door than someone knocked.
3. Hardly had I closed my eyes when the phone rang.
4. No sooner did I solve one problem than another popped up.
5. As soon as I left my apartment, I dropped my keys.
6. As soon as Kavita got out from bed, she got dressed.
7. Hardly had Samir reached the station when the train left.
8. No sooner did Kanu finish reading than he fell asleep.
9. Scarcely had they won the match when the coach had a heart attack.
10. No sooner did the company launch its new product than it went bankrupt.
11. As soon as I arrived home, my phone rang.
12. Hardly had the prisoner run out of the jail when the guard fired at him.
13. As soon as we arrived at station, the announcement started.
14. Scarcely had Jinal finished the book when Anu came in.
15. As soon the principal entered the examination hall, the students became quiet.
16. No sooner did the last bell ring than the students rushed to the class.
17. Seeing the teacher, the students entered the class.
18. No sooner did the sun rise than the travelers started their journey.
19. We had hardly reached the museum when it was closed for the day.
20. When I opened the cage, the parrot flew away.
21. As soon as the guard whistled, the train began to move.
22. Scarcely had the cat seen the dog when it ran away.
23. As soon as the accident occurred, the passengers screamed for help.
24. No sooner did Manish get the appointment letter than he jumped with joy.
25. Hardly had I entered the house when the light went off.

CAUSAL VERB

300

1. My teacher _____ me _____ for what I had said.
(make + apologize)
2. I _____ mechanic _____ the brakes yesterday. (have + check)
3. How can parents _____ their children _____ more? (get + read)
4. Did somebody _____ you _____ that hat? (make + wear)
5. She is going to _____ her room _____. (have + clean)
6. I really should _____ my teeth _____. (get + check)
7. My teacher _____ me _____ late after school. I didn't want to.
(make + stay)
8. Do you know where I can _____ my suit dry _____. (have + clean)
9. Has your girlfriend ever _____ you _____ her homework?
(get + do)
10. My parents _____ me _____ the dishes everyday.
(make + wash)
11. He will _____ his assistant _____ you tomorrow. (have + call)
12. I am going to _____ my hair _____ tomorrow. (get + cut)
13. How can we _____ all the employees _____ on time? (get + come)
14. The doctor will _____ the nurse _____ the patients. (have + call)
15. I _____ the cleaner _____ the cupboard yesterday. (get + clean)
16. We _____ the teacher _____ the lesson last week.
(have + explain)
17. Her supervisor _____ her _____ every Sunday. (make + work)
18. Atul's father _____ him _____ the car last Monday. (make + wash)
19. I always _____ servant _____ some water. (have + bring)
20. Shila _____ just _____ the taxi driver _____ her. (get + collect)
21. I _____ teenagers _____ to bed early last night. (get + go)
22. She _____ not _____ her daughter _____ fruits daily.
(make + eat)
23. Kavita _____ the shopkeeper _____ the food often.
(have + deliver)
24. Sunil always _____ the children _____ their homework.
(get + do)
25. Please do not _____ me _____ on the weekend. (make + work)

1. Jupiter is one of the biggest planets in our solar system.
2. This room is cleaner than most other rooms in this hotel.
3. Very few leaders were as honest as Sardar Patel.
4. Surat is one of the richest states in Gujarat.
5. Very few actors are as good as Akshay Kumar.
6. Sunita is more intelligent than most other students of my school.
7. Kavita is one of the best singers in the world.
8. Mount Everest is one of the highest peaks in the world.
9. I am one of the shortest members in the family. (comparative and positive)
10. Sam is younger than most other boys in my village.
11. Mr. Patel is one of the most polite persons in my society.
12. Very few rivers in India are as holy as the Ganga.
13. Kishan is better than most other players in my team.
14. Very few countries in the world are as large as China.
15. Hercules was stronger than most other men in the world.
16. Very few Indian saints were as famous as Vivekananda.
17. Apples are healthier than most other fruits.
18. Gold is one of the costliest metals on the earth.
19. Very few languages are as easy as English.
20. Ashoka was one of the greatest Indian kings.
21. Very few animals are as useful as the cow.
22. Greenland is one of the largest islands in the world.
23. Mukesh Ambani is one of the richest persons in the world.
24. Very few books are as popular as Shakespeare's dramas.
25. Rose is one of the most beautiful flowers in the world.
26. India is one of the most developing countries in the world.
27. Very few months of the year are as cold as February.
28. This dress is prettier than most other dresses in the shop.
29. Asia is one of the biggest continents in the world.
30. Very few animals are as fast as the kangaroo.
31. Diamond is one of the most precious things.
32. Amitabh is more popular than most other actors in India.
33. Very few persons work as sincerely as Mr. Dave.
34. Mr. Narendra Modi is one of the greatest presidents of India.
35. Somnath is holier than most other temples in Gujarat.

36. Advertisement is one of the best ways of selling products.
37. Tagor was one of the most emotional poets of India.
38. Simla is cooler than most other hill stations.
39. Very few countries are as hot as Africa.
40. Lalbahadur Shastri was one of the wisest leaders of India.
41. Eagle is one of the fastest birds.
42. Very few cricketers are as handsome as Virat Kohli.
43. Sparrow is smaller than most other birds.
44. Peacock is one of the most attractive birds.
45. Very few cities in India are as populated as Bombay.
46. Swimming is more helpful than most other exercises.
47. Canada is one of the most advanced countries in the world.
48. Very few facilities are as useful as electricity.
49. Bangalore is costlier than most other cities of India.
50. Very few singers sing so well as Shreya Ghoshal.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

1. Robin made this shirt
2. Lisa did homework.....
3. We helped at the party.
4. Ishita, did you take the photo by.....?
5. I have written this poem.....
6. He cut.....with the knife while he was working.
7. The lion can defend.....
8. My mother often talks to
9. Tiya and Jiya, if you want more milk, help.....
10. Akshay and Amit collected the stickers
11. I saw UFO.....
12. Hardik, you have to do your homework.....
13. You don't need to help them. They can help.....
14. I introduced to my neighbor.
15. Boys, can you make your bed?
16. She made a pullover.
17. We can move the tables
18. The father decided to repair the car.....
19. The dog went to the mall.
20. He gave a break.



Answer Keys

AM / IS / ARE

- | | | | |
|---------|--------|---------|------------|
| 1. is | 2. is | 3. is | 4. is |
| 5. are | 6. is | 7. am | 8. is |
| 9. is | 10. is | 11. is | 12. am, am |
| 13. is | 14. is | 15. am | 16. are |
| 17. are | 18. is | 19. are | 20. are |
| 21. are | | | |

HAVE / HAS / HAD

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|---------|----------|
| 1. have, has | 2. has | 3. had | 4. has |
| 5. has | 6. had | 7. has | 8. have |
| 9. had | 10. have | 11. had | 12. have |
| 13. had | 14. have | 15. has | 16. has |
| 17. had | 18. had | 19. has | 20. had |
| 21. has | | | |

WAS / WERE

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. were | 2. was | 3. were | 4. were |
| 5. were | 6. was | 7. were | 8. were |
| 9. were | 10. were | 11. was | 12. was |
| 13. was | 14. were | 15. were | 16. was |
| 17. was | 18. was | 19. were | 20. were |
| 21. was | 22. was | 23. were | 24. were |
| 25. was | | | |

DO / DOES / DID

- | | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. Do | 2. did | 3. does | 4. Does |
| 5. do | 6. Does | 7. does | 8. Did |
| 9. does | 10. Did | 11. did | 12. Does |
| 13. does | 14. did | 15. does | 16. Does |
| 17. did | 18. do | 19. Does | 20. Do |
| 21. did | 22. Did | 23. does | 24. does |
| 25. did | | | |

WH QUESTIONS

305

1. What did Columbus discover in 1492?
2. When did I graduate from school?
3. Who repaired the car last week?
4. Why is he always late?
5. When did Mandy phone her uncle?
6. What dress am I going to wear at the ball? Which dress am I going to wear at the ball?
7. Who is the best football player in the world?
8. Where is the library?
9. When do the shops open?
10. Why do we need a nanny?
11. What is her favorite color? Which is her favorite color?
12. Whose book is that?
13. How long do I have to finish the test?
14. Where is the university?
15. Which bus do you take to work? How do you get to work?
16. When does my flight leave Rome?
17. How much does the red shirt cost?
18. Whose pen is that?
19. Who is John talking to?
20. What makes me nervous?
21. When do we have to start work?

HOW MUCH / HOW MANY

1. How many coins did I collect yesterday?
2. How many hours has Jayesh got?
3. How many cows were there yesterday?
4. How much cheese do we buy daily?
5. How much time do they walk everyday?
6. How many pencils would I like to buy?
7. How much juice is there in the glass?
8. How many carrots are there in the basket?

9. How much meat did she want to buy?
10. How many cars does that rich man have?
11. How many eggs do we need for the cake?
12. How many legs does a cow have?
13. How much money did you earn last month?
14. How much orange juice do I drink a day?
15. How many marks did Sudha get in English?

VERB FORMS

- | | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. runs | 2. went | 3. have.....finished |
| 4. to become | 5. has been cleaned | 6. is being served |
| 7. should plant | 8. was playing | 9. will be declared |
| 10. had been sold | 11. were taking | 12. was being played |
| 13. have been bought | 14. sweep | 15. to join |
| 16. is going to buy | 17. must.....make | 18. is spoken |
| 19. will catch | 20. to read | 21. Have.....seen |
| 22. will get | 23. Walking | 24. had repaired |
| 25. did.....sing | 26. should be supplied | 27. is singing |
| 28. have.....bought | 29. must be written | 30. to open |
| 31. watching | 32. was working | 33. was waiting |
| 34. will be given | 35. have.....seen | 36. had gone |
| 37. start | 38. teaches | 39. is sleeping |
| 40. had taken | 41. shall give | 42. to finish |
| 43. got | 44. has.....finished | 45. to visit |
| 46. did.....see | 47. will be declared | 48. to see |
| 49. must be done | 50. reading | 51. was discovered |
| 52. had posted | 53. is held | 54. will punish |
| 55. have.....missed | 56. to discuss | 57. had left |
| 58. was entering | 59. is running | 60. finds |
| 61. are respected | 62. had left | 63. will be shown |
| 64. were watching | 65. will give | 66. count |
| 67. did....cost | 68. had been begun | 69. to save |
| 70. Smoking | 71. was.....finished | 72. is singing |
| 73. to learn | 74. will be used | 75. has.....shown |
| 76. Barking | 77. was built | 78. talking |
| 79. Walking | 80. are brought | 81. will enjoy |
| 82. to ride | 83. had been shut | 84. wrote |

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 85. was going | 86. can buy | 87. can.... be cured |
| 88. comes | 89. is written | 90. have.....read |
| 91. should be eaten | 92. has been | 93. Have.....travelled |
| 94. can be done | 95. had arrived | 96. are sold |
| 97. are.....going to construct | | 98. was taking |
| 99. will be held | 100. has.....given | 101. to make |
| 102. will succeed | 103. has.....seen | 104. are twinkling |
| 105. couldbe answered | | 106. Will...give |
| 107. are sold | 108. rotates | 109. saw |
| 110. have sent | 111. am doing | 112. have.....met |
| 113. is given | 114. must be changed | 115. had completed |
| 116. must be finished | 117. has.....been rung | 118. will be made |
| 119. is made | 120. was caught | 121. has been started |
| 122. left | 123. is made | 124. was broken |
| 125. to become | 126. was discovered | 127. had risen |
| 128. to see | 129. studied | 130. watch |
| 131. celebrate | 132. goes | 133. does.....go |
| 134. can.....do | 135. copy | 136. did.....get |
| 137. will go | 138. are going to have | 139. came |
| 140. are.....doing | 141. is climbing | 142. will teach |
| 143. sang | 144. to study | 145. to cage |
| 146. to come | 147. is coming | 148. have....fixed |
| 149. am going to read | 150. is barking | 151. Do....bring |
| 152. were.....punished | 153. will distribute | 154. is planted |
| 155. is walking | 156. are....praised | 157. goes |
| 158. do.....like | 159. are playing | 160. will be bought |
| 161. drinks | 162. will celebrate | 163. is standing |
| 164. saw | 165. does....set | 166. to watch |
| 167. see | 168. to read | 169. showed |
| 170. is running | 171. was painted | 172. have been |
| 173. saw | 174. rose | 175. was shining |
| 176. will....tell | 177. go | 178. had....slept |
| 179. is listening | 180. was raining | 181. is leaving |
| 182. will take | 183. have.....worn | 184. to go |
| 185. are living | 186. was sleeping | 187. has been living |
| 188. had made | 189. will land | 190. quitted |
| 191. has....graduated | 192. did....send | 193. goes |
| 194. were talking | 195. happened | 196. will be |

197. made
200. are building

198. did....win

199. has bought

308

Fill in the blanks. (function words) Part-I

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. a | 2. Can | 3. so | 4. slince |
| 5. Would | 6. which | 7. from | 8. because |
| 9. of | 10. otherwise | 11. but | 12. The |
| 13. with | 14. of | 15. but | 16. unless |
| 17. a | 18. Though | 19. therefore | 20. a few |
| 21. any | 22. must | 23. of | 24. from, of |
| 25. but | 26. an | 27. little | 28. since |
| 29. to | 30. who | 31. someone | 32. any |
| 33. a | 34. does | 35. at | 36. among |
| 37. whom | 38. should | 39. otherwise | 40. Everyone |
| 41. which | 42. How many | 43. Each | 44. an |
| 45. any | 46. each other | 47. because | 48. between |
| 49. The | 50. many | 51. Either | 52. on |
| 53. because | 54. one, the other | 55. for | 56. Both |
| 57. can | 58. How many | 59. unless | 60. any |
| 61. The | 62. from | 63. otherwise | 64. whom |
| 65. the | 66. Would | 67. one another | 68. because |
| 69. Unless | 70. The | 71. yet | 72. of |
| 73. since | 74. Nobody | 75. each other's | 76. whose |
| 77. of | 78. the | 79. must | 80. How much |
| 81. Each | 82. or | 83. The | 84. who |
| 85. have to | 86. with | 87. the other | 88. any |
| 89. to | 90. should | 91. something | 92. who |
| 93. Neither...nor | 94. otherwise | 95. one another | 96. at |
| 97. so | 98. either...or | 99. than | 100. till |
| 101. the | 102. nothing | 103. of | 104. can |
| 105. already | 106. Do | 107. had to | 108. Something |
| 109. therefore | 110. many | 111. for | 112. where |
| 113. why | 114. while | 115. for | 116. Though |

Fill in the blanks. (function words) Part-II

309

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. some of | 2. to whom | 3. but | 4. In search of |
| 5. Why | 6. That | 7. as | 8. with a view to |
| 9. Instead of | 10. However | 11. when | 12. But |
| 13. with a view to | 14. whom | 15. Owing to | 16. that |
| 17. the | 18. not only...but also | 19. with a view to | 20. which |
| 21. when | 22. Hardly | 23. but | 24. On account of |
| 25. each other | 26. the rest | 27. as | 28. an |
| 29. same | 30. how | 31. where | 30. how |
| 31. where | 32. that | 33. Though | 34. In order to |
| 35. on account of | 36. the | 37. when | 38. Since |
| 39. to whom | 40. instead of | 41. according to | 42. Who |
| 43. anybody | 44. as if | 45. the | 46. that |
| 47. so that | 48. However | 49. how | 50. than |
| 51. because of | 52. why | 53. when | 54. as |
| 55. the | 56. instead of | 57. with a view to | 58. with whom |
| 59. owing to | 60. an | 61. the | 62. why |
| 63. with a view to | 64. Who | 65. such | 66. who |
| 67. However | 68. someone | 69. In spite of | 70. when |
| 71. the | 72. anything | 73. a little | 74. due to |
| 75. Either...or | 76. why | 77. that | 78. when |
| 79. However | 80. in spite of | 81. Than | 82. as if |
| 83. not only...but also | 84. wherever | 85. so...that | 86. However |
| 87. with which | 88. with a view | 89. When | 90. when |
| 91. as | 92. when | 93. A few | 94. The, the |
| 95. yet | 96. that | 97. due to | 98. that |
| 99. when | 100. as | 101. as | 102. with a view to |
| 103. a few | 104. the | 105. anyone | 106. that |
| 107. when | 108. the | 109. However | 110. in spite of |
| 111. still | 112. so that | 113. as | 114. that |
| 115. little | 116. As soon as | 117. as | 118. when |
| 119. as | 120. Anything ...anybody | 121. The | 122. a few |
| 123. the rest | 124. something | 125. Anyone | 126. a few |

127. The rest	128. But also	129. With a view to,	130 why
131. than	132. However	133. On account of	134. little
135. the	136. as	137. when	138. as
139. anything	140. when	141. the	142. due to
143. owing to	144. that	145. anywhere	146. However
147. The rest	148. When	149. So that	150. As
151. than	152. with a view to	153. something	154. Owing to
155. yet	156. that	157. where	158. when
159. In spite of	160. The, the	161. instead of	
162. not only...but also	163. such...as	164. with a view to	165. the
166. When	167. that	168. However	169. because of
170. why	171. as	172. as	173. in order that
174. The rest	175. the	176. instead of	177. than
178. In search of	179. Anybody	180. still	181. why
182. however	183. That	184. the	185. with a view to
186. an	187. where	188. as	189. with a view to
190. However	191. so that	192. Not only...but also	
193. the	194. with a view to	195. Little	196. such
197. Than	198. So that	199. But also	200. however
201. Despite of	202. Who	203. that	204. due to
205. on behalf of	206. the rest	207. neither	208. why
209. than	210. What	211. the	212. the rest
213. in order to	214. from where	215. When	216. Neither
217. Something	218. that	219. as	220. That
221. whenever	222. none	223. since	224. due to
225. why	226. without which	227. the same...as	228. what
229. who	230. why	231. as	
232. not only...but also	233. when	234. whom	235. the rest
236. However	237. The	238. Where	239. Owing to
240. when	241. however	242. as	243. In spite of
244. what	245. with a view to	246. with a view to	247. In spite of
248. as if	249. Hardly	250. One of	251. However
252. when	253. A few	254. due to	

Similar Words

311

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. quick | 39. purchasing | 77. caution |
| 2. awful | 40. saw | 78. love |
| 3. bill | 41. speak | 79. freedom |
| 4. dumb | 42. robbing | 80. area |
| 5. sees | 43. said | 81. decrease |
| 6. cheap | 44. begin | 82. suggestion |
| 7. blaring | 45. love | 83. prevention |
| 8. needed | 46. wash | 84. passion |
| 9. large | 47. received | 85. awareness |
| 10. beautiful | 48. turn | 86. outcome |
| 11. produce | 49. make | 87. find |
| 12. difficulty | 50. stop | 88. begin |
| 13. nice | 51. grow | 89. think |
| 14. hard | 52. bother | 90. allow |
| 15. happy | 53. wonder | 91. study |
| 16. quick | 54. make | 92. create |
| 17. loud | 55. error | 93. excite |
| 18. small | 56. choose | 94. crash |
| 19. worn out | 57. attempt | 95. valuable |
| 20. thin | 58. rush | 96. typical |
| 21. strange | 59. rotate | 97. help |
| 22. wealthy | 60. job | 98. permit |
| 23. afraid | 61. whole | 99. leap |
| 24. intelligent | 62. evil | 100. starving |
| 25. certain | 63. short | 101. quiet |
| 26. mad | 64. wide | 102. prize |
| 27. incredible | 65. cruel | 103. repair |
| 28. equal | 66. scared | 104. jolly |
| 29. giant | 67. separate | 105. honest |
| 30. funny | 68. impatient | 106. scare |
| 31. nice | 69. appropriate | 107. damage |
| 32. some | 70. strong | 108. faithful |
| 33. price | 71. young | 109. brave |
| 34. employee | 72. consistent | 110. weep |
| 35. thief | 73. real | 111. ill |
| 36. aid | 74. thankful | 112. idle |
| 37. travel | 75. nearby | 113. satisfied |
| 38. saved | 76. sharp | 114. present |

Select the correct question to get the underlined word/words as answer

312

1. Why does he study regularly?
2. What does he do to get good marks in the exam?
3. Where did Ramesh want to go to in the last vacation?
4. When did Ramesh want to go to Kanpur?
5. When will our final examination be held?
6. What will be held next year?
7. What does Karuna often forget?
8. Who is the most hardworking student in my class?
9. When did Bachu give a nice shirt to Harsh?
10. What did Bachu give to Harsh on his last birthday?
11. Why did Jitendra go to the garden yesterday?
12. When did Jitendra go to the garden to pick some beautiful flowers?
13. What can you not follow?
14. When will they discuss the matter?
15. What will they discuss tomorrow?
16. What might Ants have eaten?
17. Who might have eaten the cake?
18. Who might have broken the China plate?
19. What might have the servant broken?
20. When will a meeting be held?
21. What will be held tomorrow at 6 p.m.?
22. Which class was he promoted last year?
23. When was he promoted to the tenth class?
24. How should I send this letter?
25. Where can Anu appeal and apply for a fresh trail?
26. Who competed with one another to get a single scholarship?
27. Why did boys compete with one another?
28. Which is the oldest house in this town?
29. What did I find at the bus station yesterday?
30. Where did I find a beautiful pen yesterday?
31. Where does Pari go to everyday?
32. Who advised me to improve my spelling?
33. What did the teacher advise me?

34. What should a child start at primary school?
35. Where should a child start learning a language?
36. How does Atul write letters?
37. What does Atul write beautifully?
38. When did the boy steal the briefcase from the shop?
39. What did the boy steal from the shop yesterday?
40. Why would he not come?
41. What will I always remember?
42. How has the holiday passed?
43. What has passed very quickly?
44. Why must Ajay walk fast?
45. Why have I asked him to come tomorrow?
46. How does this new machine work?
47. What does work faster?
48. Who was the first one to get there?
49. What had Arun missed?
50. When will Hetal come to watch the programme?
51. Why will Hetal come tomorrow morning?
52. Why does Kaushal go to the market everyday?
53. Where does Kaushal go everyday to sell the fruits?
54. What did Jigar see while visiting the Gir sanctuary?
55. Why should you give up smoking?
56. Where will the book fair be held tomorrow?
57. What will be held at the GMDC ground tomorrow?
58. When did Atul finish his lessons and reading?
59. What did Atul finish two days ago?
60. Who is the cleverest girl in my family?
61. Why did Anuradha come to my home?
62. What do I always drink to keep myself healthy?
63. Why do I always drink green tea?

1. She says that she will get herself a drink.
2. He said that he could not drive them home.
3. Amit says that he is glad to be here this evening.
4. Kapil often says that German is easy to learn.
5. The teacher said that the earth moves round the sun.
6. John said that he knew her name and address.
7. Karan says that he is homesick.
8. She says that she feels tired almost every evening.
9. He told us that the earth is round.
10. Arun said that his brother was living in Australia.
11. Amita said that they were late once again.
12. She said that she was going to market.
13. Kishan said that he would be late.
14. She says that she has done her duty.
15. He tells her that he will wait for her at the railway station.
16. Jigar says that he is not coming.
17. Arun will say that he does not want to go.
18. He will say that he cannot wait any longer.
19. Tutor says that two plus two is equal to four.
20. The girl said that it gave her great pleasure to be there that evening.
21. The man said that he must go as soon as possible.
22. She said that she did not want to see any of them.
23. The teacher tells me that if I work hard, I will pass.
24. He said that he had won.
25. He asked me where I was going.
26. Mr. West said that he was very tired.
27. He said that he was flying to Rome the next day.
28. George said that he had lived in that village all his life.
29. Peter told me that he could not out with me because he was not feeling well.
30. Helen told me that she hoped I had enjoyed myself.
31. She said that she had been to Paris many times.

32. Jane told her father that she wanted to study medicine.
33. Mary's friend told her that she was wrong.
34. He told me that he had seen my friend at the cinema the previous day.
35. She told him that she had called him up but he didn't answer an hour ago.
36. He asked me how much I had paid for that book.
37. The nurse asked him how he was feeling.
38. The teacher asked me if I had written my homework.
39. He asked me if I knew something about the accident.
40. She asked me if I knew where Mrs. Baker lived.
41. He asked her if the plane had left.
42. She asked how much that coat cost.
43. She asked me where I was from.
44. She asked him when he would meet his friends.
45. Helen says that she wants to be a doctor.
46. Jean told mother that she wanted to go out.
47. Tom's father told him that he was right.
48. She asked him if he had paid the bill.
49. He always tells them that they must pay more attention.
50. She asked him what he wanted.
51. He asked me if I was coming with them.
52. The prince asked the girl if she came from China.
53. The little girl asked which way she should go.
54. Alladin asked the magician what he had done to deserve so severe a punishment.
55. I asked her if she did not know the way home.
56. The teacher asked the student if he wrote a good hand.
57. Uma asked little bird if it had something to tell her.
58. He asked me if I could solve that problem.
59. She said that he worked in a bank.
60. He told me that he had gone out the previous night.
61. Kavita said that she was coming.
62. Kaushal told Anu that he had been waiting for the bus when she had arrived.

63. Anil told Anita that he had not gone to the party.
64. He said that Lucy would come later.
65. Karuna told me that she had not eaten breakfast.
66. Aruna said that she could help the next day.
67. She told me that I should go to bed early.
68. She said that she would not see me the next day.
69. Harsh told me that he had visited his parents at the weekend.
70. He asked me what I was doing then.
71. Anita asked Naman why he had gone out the previous night.
72. Sandip asked Sudha what she was going to do at weekend.
73. Harsh asked Jigar where he would live after graduation.
74. Hetal asked Mishita what she had been doing when she had seen her.
75. She asked me if he had arrived on time.
76. Dhara asked Hardik if he was working that night.
77. Passenger asked the driver if that was the road to the station.
78. Parth asked the students if they had done their homework.
79. Jitendra asked Bachu if he had studied reported speech before.
80. Hardik told Heena that he would come and help her.
81. Anita asked the boy if he could tell her where the post office was.
82. The girl asked Kavya if she usually cooked at home.
83. Atul asked me if I had ever seen ' Lord of the Rings'.
84. Pankti asked Mittal how often she went to the cinema.
85. Kanu asked Manu where he had spent his holidays the previous year.
86. Rama ordered Arjun to go away.
87. He requested him to wait there till he returned.
88. The master ordered his servant to bring him a drink of milk.
89. The teacher told boys to sit down.
90. The teacher advised him not read fast.
91. The principal instructed me to bring my examination fee the next day.
92. Pankti wished Kavya good morning.
93. The saint requested to let him be alone.
94. He suggested to the pupils that they should stop the game.

95. Sunita requested Sunil to let her sit there.
96. He advised my friend to be careful about his study.
97. The teacher advised pupils to write their answers fully.
98. My tutor advised me not to waste my time during my exam.
99. Kavita requested her head mistress to let her go home early that day.
100. Mahesh wished Praful that God might give him the strength to bear that loss.
101. Hetal proposed to her friends that they should go for a picnic the next day.
102. Akshay proposed to Anil that they should go for walk that evening.
103. He advised his children not to quarrel.
104. I requested Mary to lend me a pencil.
105. Atul suggested to Amit that they should wait for the award.
106. I requested my friend to help me to get some job.
107. Nalin advised Nasir to follow his advice and start a factory.
108. He ordered his son to do as he told him.
109. She ordered her maid to go and post that letter.
110. The doctor advised the boy not to be nervous.
111. Mira asked to let her look out of the window.
112. The policeman ordered to show him his license.
113. I proposed to my friends that we should go to Gandhi Park that evening.
114. He requested me to give him my pen.
115. The doctor advised him not to move from his bed.
116. The captain suggested to his team that they should bat first.
117. He proposed to me that we should read together.
118. She advised boys not to play on the grass.
119. The captain proposed that they should have a race.
120. He suggested to people that they should take him to the doctor.
121. The child requested us to let him go home.
122. He suggested to them that they should not quarrel with each other.
123. Atul proposed to his wife that they should go for shopping.
124. The host told the boy to let the guests start the dinner.
125. The nurse requested his relatives to let the patient take rest for some time then.

126. Sonia exclaimed with joy that it was a very beautiful sunset.
127. The old man exclaimed with sorrow that his youth had gone.
128. He exclaimed to him with anger that he was a very stupid fellow.
129. Mona exclaimed to Sonal that she was very smart.
130. Amit exclaimed with sorrow that he was ruined.
131. The boy exclaimed with delight that they had won the match.
132. The old man exclaimed with sorrow that he had lost his purse.
133. Jitendra exclaimed with joy that it was a very pleasant morning.
134. Shila exclaimed to Sanket with praise that he was a very nice child.
135. Kalpna exclaimed to her sister with delight that it was wonderful dress.
136. The principal exclaimed with praise that Amit is a very clever boy.
137. I exclaimed with pleasure that the Taj Mahal looked very wonderful.
138. Kishan exclaimed with surprise that it was a beautiful gift.
139. Hardik exclaimed with sorrow that he had lost all his hopes.
140. Dipti exclaimed to Dipak with delight that he looked smart in that shirt.

Indirect speech. (conversation)

1. The Shopkeeper told Sarladevi politely that he thought that sari would suit her well. Sarladevi replied positively to him and added that she would buy it. Then she asked him how much it was. The shopkeeper replied her that it was only Rs. 1,500. Sarladevi exclaimed with surprise to him that it was very costly and asked him if he would give her some discount.
2. Ahmad wished Zara 'Good morning' and asked how she was. Zara replied to Ahmad that she was not very fine. Ahmad asked Zara what had happens and again asked if he could help her. Zara replied to Ahmad that she had got Geometry test the next day and she could not understand that theorem.
3. Uncle wished Khushboo good evening and congratulated her on her winning a prize in the debate competition Mitali also wished him good evening and thanked him. She added that she had spoken well but she had not been sure that she would win a prize. Uncle replied

her that he had heard that she was then going to take part in the competition at the district level. Mital replied positively and added that she would try her luck. Uncle wished her good luck and good-bye.

4. Ragini asked Nirali how she was that day. Nirali replied to Ragini that she was fine and asked what they would do then. Ragini suggested to Nirali that they should go to the library and borrow some books. Nirali exclaimed with surprised to Ragini that it was a very fine idea.
5. The passenger requested the coolie to take that heavy bag to his office. The coolie replied politely to the passenger that it would cost more. The passenger asked the coolie not to worry and added that he would pay 100 rupees for it. The coolie thanked the passenger and exclaimed with praise that he was very kind.
6. Anand with a little doubt asked Milly if she didn't really want to go out with him. Milly replied that she did and hesitated that she needed some more time to get ready herself. Anand agreed and requested to hurry up. Milly asked where they would go. Anand replied that they would go to the seashore. Milly exclaimed with surprise that it was a very wonderful idea.
7. Nirali asked Akash what he was doing then. Akash replied to Nirali that he was doing his exercises. Nirali requested Akash to help her with her homework. Akash Nirali not to worry and added that he would surely help her that evening.
8. Harsh asked Prem if he would please help him with that word. Pram agreed with him lovingly and asked what it was. Harsh replied to him that it was 'Aklemetize' and added that he even did not know that spelling. Prem told him that it was a special word ad added that it was spelt ACCLIMATIZE. Then he aksed him where he had heard it.
9. Mother asked Keta what she was doing then. Keta replied to her that she was watching a serial on the TV. Mother advised her not to waste time in watching TV serial and added that she was in the S.S.C class. Keta apologized her added that she wanted to relax.
10. Mira asked Meena what she was doing then. Meena replied to her that she was doing her regular exercises and yoga. Mira requested her to teach her some steps in aerobic exercises. Meena asked her

not to worry and added that she was in hurry and she would surely help her that evening.

11. Vatsal asked Nirav where he was going. Nirav replied to him that he was going to play. Vatsal suggested to him that they should go to the library. Nirav exclaimed with surprise to him that it was a very wonderful idea.
12. An angel asked lord why he was taking too much care for creating that creature. Lord replied to him that he was creating a standard model of mothers. An angel advised him not to take too much trouble in a single day. Lord told him that he had completed most of the work then.
13. Lal requested Khan to read out that letter to him. Khan asked him who it was from. Lal replied to him negatively that he did not know and added that the postman had just given it to him.
14. The visitor exclaimed with praise to the guide that the Taj looked very beautiful. The guide told him that they were proud of that historical monument. The visitor asked him who had built that wonder of the world. The guide replied to him that Shahjhan, the great emperor had built that wonder of the world.
15. Rakesh told Meenal that he wanted to give her a nice gift that day. Meenal asked him if he was really thinking so. Rakesh suggested to her that they should visit the 'Suhag Gift Articles' for the gift of her choice. Meenal exclaimed with joy to him that he was very kind.
16. Raju asked Ramila what she was reading there in that magazine then. Ramila requested him not to disturb her while she was reading. Raju exclaimed with praise to her that she was very curious reader and asked her if she would tell him about it.
17. The king asked the beggar that what he was doing there and again asked if he had not gone home. The beggar addressed the king as sir and replied to him that he had lost a rupee and he had been searching it since morning. The king told him angrily that he was a very greedy fellow.
18. Pappu wished Natukaka good morning and asked him how he was and added that he was glad to meet him. Natukaka addressed Pappu as naughty boy and asked what he was doing there. He again

asked him where his parents were. Pappu replied to him that they were at home. Natukaka told him that it was already noon and asked him if he was not hungry and added that he would bring some food for him.

Turn into indirect speech. (Conversation)

1. Nina: Why do you always complain about your parents?
Mark : That's because they never stop criticizing me.
Nina: Why don't you try telling them how you feel about it?
Mark : Do you think I haven't? They just don't care about how I feel.
2. Pritesh: You better go home and take rest.
Anil: No, I'm okay. I can wait until the end of the meeting.
Pritesh: I don't think so. You can't keep your eyes open.
Anil: I guess you're right. I'll see you tomorrow.
3. Pari: I have stopped eating bread.
Dipti: But it's not enough if you want to lose weight.
Pari: I know, but it's only a beginning.
Dipti: Sure, it's better than doing nothing.
4. Shalini: I cannot see the sentences on the board.
Gaurang: Then you should start wearing glasses.
Shalini: I already have contact lenses, but still I can't see clearly.
Gaurang: It's time you changed them, then.
5. Chris: Shall we leave the car here and walk?
Nick: I don't think we should, because the bank is almost five hundred meters from here.
Chris: I agree but the bank will have been closed by then.
Nick: I don't care. I can't walk up to the bank in this weather.
6. Ishita: Are you going to the post office?
Pankaj: Why are you asking?
Ishita: I might come with you. That is why I am asking.
Pankaj: I am not going to the post office. I will go later in the evening

7. Jack: Have you heard about Timmy?
 Pete: No, is there something wrong with him?
 Jake: It could be but I am not sure.
 Pete: Really? I hope it is not too serious.
8. Maria: I am not able to handle the laundry.
 Jenny: Why not find another laundry?
 Maria: I have already done that, but nothing changed.
 Jenny: Then, you should try washing them yourself. That might help.
9. Mother: Why are you studying in the living room?
 Son: The lamp in my room is not working.
 Mother: Then we will ask your father to look at it when he comes home.
 Son: It will be great as I can't concentrate on my lessons thoroughly in this room.
10. Kavita: How much of a tip should we leave?
 Sanjay: No more than a dollar.
 Kavita: Why do you say that? Wouldn't it be too little?
 Sanjay: No, not at all. The service was slow and the soup was cold.
11. Jane: Alice was so angry when the toaster that she bought didn't work.
 Julie: She certainly was.
 Jane: What did she do when she found out?
 Julie: She made the company refund her money.
12. Amit: Were you able to get some sleep last night? I know you were really tired.
 Anu: I was able to sleep only a little bit.
 Amit: Oh, really. What was the problem?
 Anu: I was disturbed by the noisy traffic.
13. Prakash: Have you started your research project for management class?
 Manish: Well, I have decided on a topic, but haven't actually started the research yet.
 Prakash: Didn't you hear what the professor said yesterday?
 Manish: I know. Actually, I went to the library yesterday, but

- wasn't sure where to look.
14. Patient: I have had sleep disorder for nearly 3 months.
 Doctor: Have you done anything about it?
 Patient: No, I wanted to see a doctor first.
 Doctor: You did the right thing. Now I will give you some pills for that.
15. Anup: You haven't been looking so well recently. Anything wrong?
 Sarita: Yes. Yesterday I had to take my mother to hospital due to high blood sugar.
 Anup: Oh God! How is she right now? Anything serious?
 Sarita: Not really. All she has to do is to follow a strict diet.
16. Harsh: Are we supposed to hand in our assignments by Friday?
 Ashita: No, we have time until the end of this month. Have you finished it yet?
 Harsh: No, I haven't. I'm still trying to find some reference books but I haven't found any yet.
 Ashita: Neither have I. I really don't know what to do.
17. Bharat: Do you remember when Lili's birthday is?
 Sumit: Don't tell me you have forgotten to celebrate her birthday.
 Bharat: I hope it is not past yet; she would never forgive us if we forgot it.
 Sumit: You are absolutely right, let me check my calendar.
18. Doctor: Take this medicine for a week and you'll start to feel better.
 Patient: But I've used it before and it did not help at all.
 Doctor: Are you sure? It's the best on the market.
 Patient: Yes I am. Can you please prescribe another one?
19. Jinal: How did you like the movie you saw last night?
 Keta: I can't say it was the best I've ever seen.
 Jinal: Then you wouldn't recommend it, would you?
 Keta: Certainly not. Do not waste your time.
20. Father: What? You crashed the car again?
 Son: But it wasn't my fault. You've got to believe me.
 Father: I'm sure it wasn't. This is the third accident you have had

this year.

Son: You're very angry now, dad. We had better talk about this later on.

21. Chirag: It seems that Martha is still angry with me.

Suman: Why do you think so?

Chirag: Whenever we meet, she pretends not to see me.

Suman: I don't think it's because she hasn't got over her anger. She's having a bad time at work nowadays.

Arranging the jumbled parts.

1. Archana ran fast to catch the train yesterday.
2. Do you know that gentleman?
3. What a brave woman Rani Laxmibai was!
4. What a nice shahnaiwada Bismillah Khan was!
5. If I make mistakes, I should not get upset.
6. While Mr. Johny was crossing the bridge, his hat blew off.
7. You are taking too much care for creating this creature.
8. He decorated ornaments with them and used them as symbol of love and status.
9. The Giant took a big hammer and knocked the wall down.
10. My mother tongue is the sweetest but English links me with the world.
11. I am proud of my country and I love its rich and varied heritage.
12. Let me congratulate the teachers and students on their first excellent performance.
13. People had gathered at the air port to welcome the great pilot.
14. Buntu raced down the road and turned at the corner.
15. I am sorry to hear that my dog has damaged your flowerbed.
16. In six minutes, Blandford was going to see the woman, who had been in his thoughts for the past thirteen months.

17. I should be flexible enough to understand other people's point of view.
18. The diamond has always attracted people because of its sparkling beauty.
19. Everybody likes her because she is helpful.
20. If you are tired, you may take rest.
21. This is the girl, who helped us when we were going home.
22. Vivekanand taught the people the real lesson of hard work and service to humanity.
23. Gandhiji used to write more than twenty letters a day.
24. Nehru was one of the founders of democracy in our country.
25. No man can become rich unless he works hard.
26. The sun is too hot for us to sit outside.
27. We returned home when the function was over.
28. I don't have to be stubborn.
29. The old man, standing near the cross-roads, gave him money.
30. A few years later, my plane landed in Seattle.
31. I went because I was invited.
32. Walk quickly otherwise you will not overtake him.
33. Although he is poor, he is honest.
34. I was tired therefore I returned home.
35. Either listen carefully or take notes.
36. Though he tried hard, he did not succeed.
37. If she does not cry, she will die.
38. I went neither to the theatre nor to the cinema.
39. Atul not only thanked him but also rewarded him.
40. Although Nisha called him, he gave no answer.
41. The girl who has long hair is my cousin.
42. He speaks as if he were a born speaker.
43. She is not more foolish than him.
44. I was reading the book, which I had read before.
45. He has improved a lot because he has been in hospital.
46. That mischievous student will be forgiven by the teacher.
47. The earth is as large as the moon.
48. What a wonderful picture it was!

49. Mruga does not type as well as Kalyani.
50. Though students wanted to copy, the supervisor did not allow them to do so.
51. Unless Rajesh gives out secret, he will be safe.
52. What an ugly creature the camel is!
53. When are you going to return my camera?
54. His uncle had a severe a toothache so he consulted a doctor.
55. Water is not as thick as milk.
56. Kalidas was greater than any other singer of India.
57. Two chairs will be bought by Arjun next week.
58. Bachu is able to read German language.
59. The bicycle will be repaired next Sunday.
60. He does not work hard because he is reach.
61. Either Ruby or Gita is coming.
62. Neither Tony nor his parents came to school.
63. We will take not only tea but also dinner.
64. Noise was being made by Rajesh yesterday 8 pm.
65. The programme was enjoyed by everyone last Monday.
66. You are going to regret when you will do that.
67. Unless you consult a doctor, your pain will increase.
68. Akash ran fast yesterday to catch the train.
69. How beautiful that dress is!
70. Window was broken by Amit yesterday.
71. Atul worked very hard so that he could get the first prize.
72. Don't disturb me while I am reading.
73. Do you know the place, where I lost the keys yesterday?
74. It is so dark that the driver cannot see anything.
75. Virat Kohli batted fast so that India could win the match.
76. Though Aruna was ill, she attended the magic show.
77. If Manish does not invite me, I will not attend his marriage.
78. He went to watch the movie instead of going to school.
79. Hardik is rich so he is very happy.
80. As soon as the teacher came, the students stood up.

EITHER.....OR / NEITHER.....NOR

1. You can eat either ice cream or chocolate.
2. Neither Rahul nor Ravina was in the class.
3. I like neither Michael Jackson nor Madonna.
4. Either Sunil or Sanjay will help you with your children
5. Jigar likes either tea or coffee.
6. Neither bank nor credit union will give you a loan.
7. Neither store owner nor store manager is here today.
8. The team is practicing either in the gym or outdoors.
9. I am watching the movie neither on TV nor on my laptop.
10. Either my mom or my sister will be home.
11. She can have either tea or coffee.
12. He neither came nor called.
13. Kanu will neither come here nor send representative.
14. Either he or his wife may attend the function.
15. Give me either freedom or death.
16. Either Sunil or his brother must have done this.
17. I can find neither my towel nor my glasses.
18. We can either rent an apartment or stay in a hotel.
19. Hardik reads neither newspapers nor magazines.
20. We can pay either cash or with a credit card.
21. Neither Anil's father nor his mother is alive.
22. Ankit is studying either German or French.
23. Either Kavita or Kanak will come for lunch.
24. When I go to the restaurant I either eat Punjabi or Gujarati.
25. I need neither your help nor your sympathy.

APOSTROPHE' S / OF

1. This is the shoe of girl.
2. We are at the room of hotel.
3. This is Julie and Joe's house.
4. Please close the car's door.
5. The flowers of plants are red.

6. The website of college is confusing.
7. I want to ride in the Mayur's car.
8. The principal of the school could not come.
9. Jim's cousin is my best friend.
10. Are you ready to swim in pool of neighbor?
11. The cupboard of actor is very stylish.
12. Lisa's cat was very shy.
13. The leaves of plant are yellow.
14. Books of Karan are lying on the table.
15. This is the National Geographic's show.

PREPOSITIONS

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|----------|----------|
| 1. in | 2. by | 3. of | 4. on |
| 5. of | 6. about | 7. by | 8. in |
| 9. on....on | 10. at | 11. with | 12. in |
| 13. for | 14. of | 15. of | 16. from |
| 17. in | 18. about | 19. in | 20. at |
| 21. at | 22. on | 23. in | 24. at |
| 25. for | 26. to | 27. from | 28. with |
| 29. in | 30. of | 31. on | 32. in |
| 33. at....on | 34. from | | |

IF

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. send, will receive | 2. do, shall improve |
| 3. fid, will give | 4. will go, has |
| 5. will go, gets | 6. does not phone, will leave |
| 7. do not study, will not pass | 8. rains, will not have to |
| 9. are not able to, watch | 10. cannot move, is not |
| 11. can go | 12. might win |
| 13. can improve | 14. may go |
| 15. cannot play | 16. should tell |
| 17. must look | 18. must be |
| 19. should turn | 20. can have |

UNLESS

329

1. Unless you drive carefully, you will meet with an accident.
2. Unless someone shows him way, he will get lost.
3. Unless you practice Russian, you cannot improve it.
4. Unless Shila hurries, she will be late for school again.
5. Unless there is oxygen, fire cannot burn.
6. My parent will be angry unless I pass my exam.
7. You cannot travel abroad unless you have a valid passport.
8. Unless Ramesh finishes his work, he cannot watch TV.
9. Unless they lower the price, I will not buy that computer.
10. Unless I see you tomorrow, I will call you.
11. Unless you finish your work, you cannot go out.
12. Unless Robin has time on the weekend, he will not come to see us.
13. Unless there is traffic, we will not use the subway.
14. Unless Rachana gets cheap ticket, she will not go to Agra.
15. Unless we get good marks in English, teacher will not take us to the cinema.

EXCLAMATORY

1. How obedient he is!
2. What a big city New York is!
3. How well you sing!
4. What a splendid performance it was!
5. How brave he is!
6. How fortunate you are!
7. What a brilliant actor she is!
8. How kind you are!
9. How useful iron is!
10. What a gorgeous young lady Sophia is!
11. What a lovely smile you have!
12. How generous he is!
13. How knowledgeable she is!
14. What a pleasant surprise it was!

15. How precious gold is!
16. What an intelligent boy he is!
17. What a nice bird it is!
18. How exciting this match was!
19. What a beautiful flower the rose is!
20. How nicely he plays!
21. How hot the day is!
22. What a horrible night it was!
23. What a peaceful country India is!
24. How black bird the crow is!
25. How warmly we loved him!
26. What a lovely day it was!
27. What an honest person Mr. Patel is!
28. What a wonderful pen Kavita has!
29. How hotly the sun shines!
30. How fast China grows!

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. somebody | 2. nothing | 3. everyone | 4. Each |
| 5. anyone | 6. nobody | 7. nobody | 8. anything |
| 9. all | 10. many | 11. Someone | 12. everyone |
| 13. the other | 14. someone | 15. anyone | 16. nobody |
| 17. anything | 18. little | 19. few | 20. the rest |
| 21. a little | 22. Each | 23. Each | 24. Nobody |
| 25. Someone | 26. few | 27. anyone | 28. a few |
| 29. anyone | 30. nothing | 31. anything | |

QUESTION TAGS

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. isn't she? | 2. aren't I? | 3. aren't we? | 4. is it? |
| 5. aren't I? | 6. is he? | 7. won't he? | 8. does she? |
| 9. haven't they? | 10. doesn't she? | 11. aren't they? | 12. isn't it? |
| 13. was it? | 14. are you? | 15. don't you? | 16. is she? |
| 17. do you? | 18. doesn't he? | 19. do they? | 20. will he? |
| 21. don't they? | 22. doesn't he? | 23. did she? | 24. hasn't she? |
| 25. was she? | | | |

MODAL AUXILIARIES

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| 1. could | 2. should | 3. could | 4. must |
| 5. can | 6. must | 7. May | 8. can |
| 9. could | 10. has to | 11. should | 12. must |
| 13. have to | 14. can | 15. should | 16. should |
| 17. can | 18. could | 19. should | 20. must |
| 21. could | 22. have to | 23. must | 24. Would |
| 25. should | 26. could | 27. would | 28. can |
| 29. have to | 30. May | 31. must | 32. Can |

WHO / WHOM / WHOSE / WHICH / THAT

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. which | 2. whom | 3. who | 4. that |
| 5. which | 6. whom | 7. who | 8. whose |
| 9. which | 10. whose | 11. that | 12. who |
| 13. who | 14. who | 15. which | 16. which |
| 17. that | 18. which | 19. whose | 20. that |
| 21. which | 22. that | 23. who | 24. whose |
| 25. which | 26. who | 27. which | 28. whose |
| 29. whom | 30. which | 31. whose | 32. who |
| 33. which | 34. who | 35. who | |

SO / THEREFORE

332

1. I am tired so I cannot go out.
2. He did not work hard therefore he failed in the exam.
3. Kanu is out of country so he cannot attend the meeting.
4. Movie was boring therefore I left it in the middle.
5. It began to get dark outside so I decided not to go out.
6. Atul was born in Paris therefore he can speak French like a native .
7. They went away so there was no one.
8. I like reading books therefore I keep buying it.
9. They do not have enough money so they cannot buy the house.
10. All the shops were closed therefore Ketul did not get any milk.
11. This home has a garden so it is a nice home.
12. He wanted promotion therefore he worked hard.
13. Shila wanted to buy fruits so she went to market.
14. We had calculator therefore we could solve all the answers.
15. They do not know English so they do not read English newspaper.

THOUGH / EVEN THOUGH / EVEN IF / ALTHOUGH

1. Though it was raining, we went to beach.
2. Even though we were tired, we continued working.
3. Although it was getting late, we decided to stay and talk little longer.
4. Even though she had to drive twenty minutes to his house, she gave him a ride to home.
5. Although it was very cold out, we decided to go for a walk in the park.
6. Though she was getting impatient and wanted to leave, he stayed at the computer for a little while longer.
7. Although the roads were really bad, many people decided to drive that night.
8. Even though the prices are a little higher at that supermarket, we like to go shopping there anyway.
9. Although they said they were on a diet, they had chocolate cake for dessert.

10. Even though I am sick, I will go to work.
11. Though it is hot outside, I want to go jogging.
12. Even if learning English is hard, I enjoy it.
13. Even if Jack is a vegetarian, he sometimes eats fish.
14. Though I like weekends, I like going to school.
15. Even though it was very hot outside, we went to the market.
16. Even though I studied hard, I did not pass the test.
17. Though mobile was expensive, Kanu bought it.
18. Although Ravina is overweight, she is healthy.
19. Even if Jigar eats only healthy food, he often gets sick.
20. Though I understand English very well, I cannot speak it very well.
21. Although I was late, I did not miss the bus.
22. Though I was in hurry, I did not forget to lock the door.
23. Although she knew the answer, she did not help him.
24. Though he is the boss, he works as hard as his employees.
25. Although it was snowing, they went shopping.

TO BE ABLE TO

1. I am able to remember his name.
2. Diana is able to play the piano.
3. She is not able to come on holiday next month.
4. They are able to play football and cricket.
5. Are you able to lend me some money?
6. You are able solve this problem.
7. If he studied harder, he was able to pass the exam.
8. We were not able to go to the party.
9. Are we able to use our dictionaries?
10. Jim is able to run very fast.
11. Sunita is able to sing very well.
12. Were you able to swim when you were 18?
13. We are able to get to meeting on time.
14. He is able to speak 5 language including Chinese.
15. I was not able to find my glasses anywhere yesterday.

16. She is just 7 years old but she is able to read very fast.
17. John is not able to play tennis really well.
18. I am not able to open this window.
19. Was Kanak able to drive a car?
20. I was not able to go to the party because I was sick.
21. Is Mishita able to cook Italian food?
22. My sister was able to swim last year.
23. They were not able to go shopping yesterday.
24. I am able to ride a bicycle.
25. How many chocolates are you able to eat at one time?

TO BE GOING TO

1. Next week you are going to use computer.
2. We are going to finish at three o'clock.
3. Janki is going to design websites.
4. Harsh is going to be a film director.
5. Hardik is not going to work with the computers.
6. Hetal and Mishita are going to be rich.
7. Sarah is not going to be a writer.
8. Are you going to visit the Taj Mahal?
9. What are you going to do this evening?
10. Are you and your family going to go out this weekend?
11. What are they going to buy for their friends?
12. How are we going to solve this problem?
13. Tonight Kavita is going to cook.
14. This weekend they are going to visit Canada.
15. Jitendra and Harsh are not going to visit a computer shop.
16. Sam is going to visit the town with his friends.
17. Are you going to buy a new phone?
18. My sister is going to leave school next year.
19. She is going to listen to music this afternoon.
20. We are going to watch TV at the weekend.
21. They are going to arrange a party on Saturday.

22. I am not going to visit my best friend tomorrow.
23. He is going to do his homework this evening.
24. Is my brother going to go to a restaurant?
25. Tomorrow Kanu is going to surf the internet.

Already / Yet / Still

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. yet | 2. still | 3. already | 4. already |
| 5. already | 6. yet | 7. already | 8. still |
| 9. yet | 10. already | 11. still | 12. still |
| 13. already | 14. yet | 15. yet | 16. already |
| 17. already | 18. still | 19. yet | 20. already |

USED TO / TO BE USED TO

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. used to | 2. used to | 3. is used to | 4. used to |
| 5. is used to | 6. am used to | 7. is used to | 8. used to |
| 9. used to | 10. is used to | 11. are.....used to | 12. used to |
| 13. used to | 14. am used to | 15. used to | 16. is used to |
| 17. is used to | 18. are used to | 19. used to | 20. am used to |

RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. each other | 2. one another | 3. each other | 4. each other |
| 5. one another | 6. one another | 7. one another | 8. each other |
| 9. one another | 10. one another | 11. one another | 12. each other |
| 13. one another | 14. each other | 15. each other | 16. one another |
| 17. one another | 18. each other | 19. each other | 20. one another |

NOT ONLY..... BUT ALSO

1. There are problems not only with the children but also with their parents.
2. He can not only make people laugh, but also make them cry. / Not only can he make people laugh; but he can also make them cry.
3. She not only writes plays for television but also acts in movies.

4. I not only sent him many letters but also tried to telephone him.
5. We visit our grandfather's house not only in summer but also in winter.
6. She can not only dance but also sing.
7. They need not only food but also medicine.
8. Not only has she been late four times; but she has also not done any work.
9. She was not only upset but also angry.
10. In winter the days are not only short but also cold and dark.
11. She is not only intelligent but also beautiful.
12. They need not only food but also shelter.
13. Kavita is not only rich but also generous.
14. Hardik visited not only France but also Switzerland last year.
15. That place was not only clean but also safe.

BOTH..... AND

1. Both Anil and Anita do not speak French.
2. Susan speaks both German and Italian.
3. He is both clever and good looking.
4. Both Harry and his brother are good swimmers.
5. Both Shila and Sunita did not come to my birthday party.
6. Both Janak and Jayesh are not married.
7. I like both fruits and vegetables.
8. Both my brother and sister do not smoke.
9. He both studies and works in the afternoon.
10. Both Palak and her sister have got blue eyes.
11. I know both his name and address.
12. He did not have both breakfast and lunch.
13. Both fruits and vegetables do not make you fat.
14. I am both tired and ill.
15. Both Jigar and Jigisha like to wear glasses.

1. My native place is not bigger than this town.
2. Mina is not as intelligent as Tina.
3. The cold is not as harmful as the heat.
4. This song is more beautiful than any other song in the world. No other song is as beautiful as this song in the world.
5. The donkeys are not more stubborn than they are.
6. I am not as polite as she is.
7. The boy is faster than any other runner. No other runner is as fast as the boy.
8. A greeting card is not more pleasant than it is.
9. The book was not as interesting as the movie.
10. The ice cream was not sweeter than the cake.
11. Sometimes relatives are not as helpful as friends.
12. Planes are more convenient than any other means of travelling. No other means of travelling is as convenient as planes.
13. These cars are not as expensive as those cars.
14. The jeans were not dirtier than the trousers.
15. That blanket is not as warm as this blanket.
16. Mark is taller than any other boy in the class. No other boy in the class is as tall as Mark.
17. Boys are not stronger than girls.
18. Jigar did not drive as carefully as Hardik.
19. My grandmother is fatter than any other woman in the family. No other woman in the family is as fat as my grandmother.
20. Dogs are not as dangerous as cats.
21. Rita does not dance more beautifully than Richa.
22. That T-shirt is not dirtier than this T-shirt.
23. Vistula is longer than any other river in Poland. No other river is as long as Vistula in Poland.
24. Titanic is sadder than any other film. No other film is as sad as Titanic.
25. Dipak was more talkative than any other person in my class. No

- other person in my class was as talkative as Dipak.
26. Ahmedabad is not as small city as Surat.
 27. Mr. Shah is not more honest than Mr. Patel.
 28. Lions are not as powerful as sharks.
 29. Ramesh is not more selfish than Karan.
 30. This is stronger than any other case in the shop. No other case in the shop is as strong as this.
 31. It was cheaper than any other hotel in the town. No other hotel in the town was as cheap as it is.
 32. Her husband is not as young as she is.
 33. English films are not more popular than Hindi films.
 34. Jim does not run faster than George.
 35. My house is not as beautiful as yours.
 36. This book is more expensive than any other book in the store. No other book in the store is as expensive as this book.
 37. My aunt was not as thin as my mother.
 38. January is not as short as February.
 39. The Narmada is cleaner than any other river in Gujarat. No other river in Gujarat is as clean as the Narmada.
 40. The elephant is bigger than any other animal in the world. No other animal in the world is as big as the elephant.
 41. Antartica is colder than any other place in the world. No other place in the world is as cold as Antartica.
 42. Manchester is not as attractive as our town.
 43. Exercise 15 is not easier than exercise 16.
 44. Father is not always as busy as mother.
 45. Cakes are not as bad as carrots.
 46. Your health is not better than mine.
 47. Winter is better than any other season. No other season is as good as winter.
 48. We have bigger garden than any other garden in our area. No other garden in our area is as big as we have.
 49. Boston is not as big as New York.
 50. China is not more powerful than India.

1. A song is sung by him.
2. The spider was killed by the boy.
3. Is a letter being written by you?
4. A canal was being dug by the workers.
5. The work will be finished by me tomorrow.
6. He has been informed by me about his mother's death.
7. Has your job been finished by you?
8. New projects are begun by many people in January.
9. That shirt must be washed by you for tonight's party.
10. The food is going to be prepared by mummy.
11. Shoes are made by them in that factory.
12. You will have to be examined by them again.
13. The preparation had been finished by us by the time guests arrived.
14. The visitors will be met by the delegation at the airport.
15. Clothes have been produced by us here since 1980.
16. The memo is read by all workers.
17. The stick can be broken by Bhavin.
18. The question must be looked into by us.
19. The newspaper is read by someone to him everyday.
20. Fireworks were discovered by Chinese thousand years ago.
21. Has the book been given back to you by him yet?
22. The criminals were locked up by the police.
23. Keys must have been left behind by them.
24. The story was made up by the robbers.
25. The cake is being eaten by the boy.
26. The Natural History Museum will be shown to us by the guide.
or
We shall be shown Natural History Museum by the guide.
27. The woman's teeth are being cleaned by the dentist.
28. The new house was shown by her to her relatives.
29. The large house has been built by the Browns.
30. A nice present was given to her by them.

31. The new song is being sung by Jinita.
32. How that word is written by you?
33. The show will be directed by Ben.
34. The window has been broken by the dog.
35. The bills must be paid by you first.
36. She was being interviewed by them for the job.
37. He was told by the professor not to talk in the class.
38. Bad words should not be spoken by Vishal.
39. The bicycle is not left by you in the hall.
40. Is shopping liked by us?
41. Can French be learnt by you easily?
42. The book was written by an unknown author.
43. We have been invited by our neighbors to dinner.
44. Why is the movie being watched by them?
45. You would have been told by her.
46. Ideas will be presented by me at the conference.
47. The car is being pushed by them.
48. The news were being discussed by them.
49. You will be contacted by headmaster.
50. Was the truth not told by her to you?
51. All the gold had been stolen by the thieves.
52. The computers are being used by the students right now.
53. The gramophone was invented by Edison.
54. The old man may be taken by them to the hospital.
55. Was the car seen by you?
56. Are songs listened to by Ankit.
57. The lessons should be reviewed by you before the test.
58. Can the stars be counted by anyone?
59. The announcements have been made by the doctors.
60. The book is being read by the publishers.
61. Has the Taj Mahal been seen by them?
62. Has your purse been found by the cleaner?
63. A new road has been built by the government in this area.
64. A note was handed by the assistant to me.

or

I was handed a note by the assistant.

65. The food is still being prepared by them.
66. The new ship will be launched by them next week.
67. The garbage must not be thrown by you in the street.
68. The wall is being decorated by us.
69. Traffic rules must be obeyed by drivers.
70. The safety instructions must be read by people.
71. A meal can be served by you.
72. Apples will be eaten by Riddhi tomorrow.
73. Was homework brought by Karan yesterday?
74. Where was the library found by you?
75. The medicine had been taken by her.
76. By whom will the door be shut?
77. Why is the lies told by him?
78. The letters are delivered by the postman.
79. How are your clothes washed by you?
80. Is a song sung by Ravina everyday?
81. The plants are being watered by her.
82. My work has not been finished by me yet.
83. Is a kite being made by me?
84. A hockey is being played by us.
85. By whom has this letter been torn?
86. Have your clothes been spoiled by Kantilal?
87. Was a noise made by you?
88. A letter was written by Jenny two days ago.
89. When was his homework done by him?
90. Which picture was seen by you last night?
91. His books were being revised by him.
92. Was a lecture being given by her?
93. The flowers were being plucked by her.
94. The window had been broken by the little boy.
95. The key had been lost by me.
96. Had the room been cleaned by Manish?

97. What had been done by you?
98. Why will the bill be paid by him?
99. Will the food be cooked by Mishita?
100. The train will be caught by Amit tomorrow.
101. The toy will be broken by the baby.
102. This book will have been read by her.
103. The lesson will have not been learnt by you.
104. The cow will have been milked by him.
105. The parents should be obeyed by you.
106. Can your umbrella be used by me?
107. Should our parents be respected by us?
108. This sum can be solved by easily.
109. We could not be helped by him.
110. By whom will the chair be broken?

MODAL PERFECT

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. could have bought | 2. should have invited |
| 3. should have been saved | 4. would have joined |
| 5. could have..... arrived | 6. would have finished |
| 7. should have left | 8. could have been eaten |
| 9. could have been passed | 10. should have.....been taken |
| 11. could have gone | 12. should have been bought |
| 13. would have come | 14. must have gone |
| 15. might have caught | 16. could have revised |
| 17. might have been closed | 18. should have told |
| 19. must have happened | 20. would have been given. |

Fill in the blanks (verb forms)

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 1. have been considering | 2. have been thinking | 3. Having heard |
| 4. to spray | 5. was...being hit | 6. does... make....bring |
| 7. Having completed | 8. Having written | 9. had been learnt |
| 10. used to | 11. to be collected | 12. has been teaching |
| 13. were to be taught | 14. is being telecast | 15. had been split |
| 16. would have completed | 17. has been doing | 18. had committed |
| 19. receiving | 20. called out | 21. has...been verified |
| 22. is being telecast | 23. was smiling | 24. had been arrested |
| 25. would have ruined | 26. has been trying | 27. should be made |
| 28. has... running | 29. may have gone | 30. Painted |
| 31. having been finished | 32. doesn't | 33. can be achieved |
| 34. to buy | 35. has....been attending/has... attended | |
| 36. asked | 37. is to be learnt | 38. hitting/having hit |
| 39. have ... checked | 40. will have finished | 41. has been waiting |
| 42. had been stamped | 43. sell | 44. has to be given. |
| 45. to be married | 46. might ... have been broken | |
| 47. must have been saved | 48. was smiling | 49. have...been verified |
| 50. has been raining | 51. having examined | 52. complete |
| 53. have been enjoying | 54. could have secured | 55. is being painted |
| 56. have been living | 57. water | 58. checked |
| 59. don't | 60. having been seen | 61. to be taken |
| 62. to decide | 63. is being cleaned | 64. was being typed |
| 65. have ...been polished | 66. had been stolen | 67. been waiting |
| 68. will have learnt | 69. having visited | 70. get...xeroxed |
| 71. washed | 72. has been doing | 73. Having completed |
| 74. attended | 75. would have got | 76. should have been taken |
| 77. being taken | 78. washed | 79. had... heard |

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 80. lie | 81. have been doing | 82. make, agree |
| 83. will have, cut | 84. will have been declared | 85. have ... do |
| 86. would ... have called | 87. must have left | 88. had been sold |
| 89. is being shifted | 90. was being discussed | 91. having arrived |
| 92. get ...renewed | 93. were to be posted | 94. has been playing |
| 95. would have become | 96. had ... sent | 97. was ... being discussed |
| 98. have ...been informed | 99. might have reached | 100. to get... admitted |
| 101. having been typed | 102. are being served | 103. having been submitted |
| 104. is being played | 105. have been trying | 106. has been cleaned |
| 107. is being prepared | 108. having hit | 109. to write |
| 110. has been | 111. is being repaired | 112. had been stopped |
| 113. would have missed | 114. clean | 115. was being taken |
| 116. have been living | 117. got...watered | 118. has been |
| 119. should have worked | 120. would have been killed | |
| 121. is being served | 122. had been dropped | 123. has been doing |
| 124. had put off | 125. make...dance | 126. Having completed |
| 127. been attending | 128. is being checked | 129. having bought |
| 130. has joined | 131. might have persuaded | |
| 132. Having caught | 133. is being used | 134. had committed |
| 135. would have got | 136. have been enjoying | 137. being taken |
| 138. cook | 139. has been | 140. have been sitting |
| 141. having developed | 142. being taken | 143. was being served |
| 144. had been examined | 145. get...cancelled | 146. shall have completed |
| 147. had...taken | 148. Having referred | 149. carry |
| 150. had been cut off | | |

Complete the sentences. Part-I

345

1. John Milton was one of the greatest epic poets.
2. Pankaj exports such cars as are excellent.
3. The teacher is so old that he cannot teach.
4. In spite of his being strong, he cannot with the game.
5. My father went to Mumbai with a view to meeting his business partner.
6. However true your case may be, you must fight for it.
7. Give the child neither a tricycle nor a rocking horse.
8. A school is a place where pupils get education.
9. He was used to visiting laughing club in the morning.
10. The Amul Dairy is bigger than many other dairies in India.
11. Is this the same cat as was stolen by someone last week?
12. Mr. Modi is one of the most popular chief ministers.
13. As soon as he found me in difficulty, he helped me.
14. This poem is too difficult for them to understand.
15. A soldier and afraid of a gun!
16. You are honest but your work will not be appreciated.
17. This is the same woman as we met at the book-stall.
18. Not only success but failure is also in our hands.
19. As soon as the teacher came in all stood up.
20. Ankit is one of the finest players of the team.
21. Mr. Desai was too to hear anything.
22. Though he was seriously ill, he appeared for the test.
23. My friend teaches in the class as if he were an expert teacher.
24. Very few Indian batsman bat as aggressively as Dhoni.
25. What a creative poet Rabindranath Tagore was!
26. Hardly had Shobhit receiving my message last night, when ran down to the hospital last night.
27. Arun has failed in his business due to his negligence.
28. Gargi went to the court so that she might get justice.
29. One of his legs was injured, wasn't it?
30. The man was too to climb up the leader.

31. My friend rushed to help me as he found me in difficulty.
32. Gandhiji used to say that truth is God.
33. Very few months of the year are so cold as December.
34. He is not only greedy but also dishonest.
35. Injured as Yuvraj was, he continued playing.
36. The bible is one of the holies books in the world.
37. Though she is blind, she can work well.
38. As soon as I returned home, I switched on the T.V.
39. William realized his mistake and felt greatly sorry.
40. The more a person reads, the more information he will gather.
41. I am very glad to know that you have come.
42. Parthiv Patel is one of the youngest cricketers of India.
43. The more he earns the more he saves.
44. Harsh plays cricket as if he were Virendra Sehwag.
45. Though he is intelligent, he is jobless.
46. It is certain that within ten years India will be superpower.
47. The nearest house where people reside is over a mile away.
48. The light went out when an interesting story was being read by him.
49. I have given full satisfaction to you, haven't I?
50. Very few media are as powerful as TV.
51. The lion was so old that it could not jump.
52. I do not know the place, where I lost my pen.
53. What a large river the Ganga is!
54. He could neither buy nor borrow.
55. The Goans are not only exuberant but also traditional.
56. While the teacher was scolding the pupils, the headmaster entered the class.
57. In spite of his blindness, he can cross the road easily.
58. Mr. Trivedi has taught English for thirty years, hasn't he!
59. Not only his father but also his mother was killed.
60. However honest you are, your work will not be appreciated.
61. This is the same woman as we met at the bookstall.
62. The king was so happy that he arranged a function to welcome the great champion.

63. Sardar patel was greater than most other Indian leaders.
64. The teacher is so old that he cannot teach.
65. No sooner did he find me in difficulty than he helped me.
66. Alpa went to America so that she could earn more money.
67. The higher the price of a thing, the better people think it is.
68. This is the same book as I saw in the shop last week.
69. Very few Gujarati writers are as great as Mr. Joshi.
70. They will finish their work, won't they?

Complete the Sentences. Part-II

1. The teacher is so old that he cannot teach.
2. My father went to Mumbai with a view to meeting his business partner.
3. He used to smoke when he was in the college.
4. This poem is too difficult for them to understand.
5. A soldier and afraid of gun!
6. You are honest but your work will not be appreciated.
7. Arun failed in the business because he was careless.
8. Gargi went to the court so that she might get justice.
9. Atul asked Vipul if he would join English Speaking course.
10. May is hotter than most other months.
11. The more he earns the more he saves.
12. He could neither buy nor borrow.
13. Sardar Patel was greater than most other Indian leaders.
14. The teacher is so old that he cannot teach.
15. Alpa went to America so that she could earn more money.
16. They will finish their homework, won't they?
17. Hardik was careless so he failed in the exam.
18. This is the same boy, who stole my watch yesterday.
19. She used to talk more often when she was young.
20. We could meet friends and go for a picnic.
21. She is too weak to talk loudly.
22. Very few dairies are as big as the Amul dairy.

23. Though he is clever, he never gets good marks in exam.
24. Atul went to the market in order to buy some vegetables yesterday.
25. Would you please help me to solve this problem?
26. Let's try to keep this discussion short.
27. I called Shila because I wanted to talk with her.
28. Jitu would like to read either newspaper or magazine.
29. My parents went to my school with a view to meeting the principal.
30. What a wonder idea this is!
31. When I was a kid I used to pray every night.
32. Aruna would eat two eggs everyday when she was in hostel.
33. Join science stream so that you can become an engineer.
34. Karuna writes better than most other students in my class.
35. Books are too expensive for students to buy.
36. Harsh would work very hard during his examination period.
37. Ketan is saving money in order that he can buy a home.
38. In spite of his illness, he went to work.

Jumbling

1. However honest you are, your work will not be appreciated.
2. His homework had not been finished by him.
3. The news that there will be riots in the city in the next week is a rumor.
4. This IS the same cat as was stolen by someone last week?
5. The fact that the plants also can feel as we is accepted by all.
6. On account of his sickness, he did not attend the marriage.
7. This is the same man as I met yesterday.
8. Mr. Patel has riches, yet he is unhappy.
9. It is a fact that Mr. Varma cannot drive a car.
10. None but the brave are selected in the army.
11. Vishal is strong enough not to lose confidence in any critical situation.

12. Letters have not been directed by the manager yet.
13. The H.S.C. examination had been passed before he joined the diploma course.
14. Man is not immortal.
15. Boxing is really a dangerous sport.
16. Lallu was poor yet he was honest.
17. However true your case may be, you must fight for it.
18. That man was so weak that he could not walk.
19. BBC is giving the news now.
20. Her mother is kind enough to forgive anybody.
21. Laxmi is illiterate still she is clever.
22. Both the robber and his companion were punished.
23. Since Socrates had spoken truth, he was punished.
24. Give the child neither a tricycle nor a rocking horse.
25. English language is really important.
26. Mr. Dixit's old parents are being looked after by him.
27. Brown-sugar is dangerous still some youth use it.
28. That novel is short as well as interesting.
29. The truth is supreme was said by Gandhiji.
30. I don't know the reason why Ketki failed in the exam.
31. The kangaroo is one of the fastest animals.
32. If you don't work well, you will be dismissed.
33. I visited the house where Gandhiji was born.
34. Before the sunset, a long distance had been cut by the traveller.
35. He is rich, yet he is polite and gentle.
36. The library is a place where we borrow books.
37. Very few things are as precious as diamond.
38. Please show me the same saris as Rekha wears.
39. Amitabh Bachchan is more popular than most other actors of india.
40. No sooner did I return home than I switched on the TV.
41. The keys have been lost by the watchman.
42. My sister is so clever that she can become a doctor.
43. No sooner did we reach the museum than it was closed for the day.
44. By whom are flowers being offered to the guests?
45. It is a fact that the earth is round.

46. As the boy was disobedient, he was punished.
47. Hardly had the thief seen the policeman in the corner when he ran away.
48. They are selling oil here.
49. By whom is the song being sung now?
50. Shakespeare was a very great dramatist.
51. That is the same scooter as we saw in the show-room yesterday.
52. I had to take a drop in the final test on account of my illness.
53. The policeman went to Bombay with a view to catching the notorious criminal.
54. Mitali signs as if she were a good playback signer.
55. This tea is so hot that I cannot drink.
56. This is one of the strongest buildings all over the city.
57. Mayank is so strong that he cannot lose confidence in any critical situation.
58. Priti dressed up as if she were a model.
59. You are going to Nepal so that you can see the famous temple of Pashupatinath?
60. She has not been invited to the party by you?
61. The young people like such film songs as have more rhythm and less meaning.
62. It is strange that a student is afraid of books.
63. The more he speaks, the less he works.
64. Hardly had the plane hit the world Trade Center when it turned into flames.
65. The new Chief Minister is too sincere to take anything for granted.
66. Very few administrators in India are as honest as Mr. Patel.
67. Many patriots laid down their lives so that they could make India free.
68. In olden days people made animals carry heavy loads.
69. The higher Viral jumps, the lighter he feels.
70. Sachin Tendulkar is one of the greatest cricketers all over the world.

1. Addressing the hermits as 'wise man' the king plead that for the last time he prayed him to answer his question. The hermit replied to the king that he had already been answered. The king asked the hermit in confusion how he had been answered. The king also asked him to explain what he meant.
2. The teacher asked Dinesh why he was disturbing the class. Dinesh replied to the teacher politely that he had not done anything. Calling him a bloody boy the teacher angrily ordered him to stand up and get out. He also told him that he was telling a lie. Reaching to his insulting order Dinesh asked him the reason for his going out. Then he rudely asked the teacher to do whatever he liked to do.
3. I asked Schatz why he didn't try to sleep. Then I assured him that I would wake him up for the medicine. Schatz told me that he would rather stay awake. Then he told me lovingly that I didn't have to stay with him if it bothered me. I explained to him that it didn't bother me.
4. Schatz father asked him worried what the matter was. Schatz replied to his father that he had got a headache. His father suggested him to go back to bed. Schatz refused and said that he was all right. His father insisted on his going to bed. Then he told Schatz that he would see him he was dressed.
5. Informing the Happy Prince that he was just starting (for Egypt), the Swallow asked if he had any commissions for Egypt. The Happy Prince pleased to the Swallow to stay with him one night longer. The Swallow answered to the Happy Prince that he was waited for in Egypt by his friends. Then addressing the Swallow lovingly the Happy Prince pointed at a direction that far away across the city he could see a miserable young man in his garret leaning over his desk.
6. Pointing to the sky Ali asked the clerk what he saw up there. The clerk replied to him that he saw the Heaven up there. Then Ali told him that Allah was there and taking Him to his witness he told the clerk that he was giving him that money. Ali also explained to him the reason that when it (the letter) came, he must forward his

Miriam's letter to him. The clerk asked Ali in confusion where he was to send it. Ali replied to him that he was to send it to his grave.

7. The Mayor exclaimed to his Town councilors sadly that he Happy Prince looked very shabby. The town councilors, who always agreed with the Mayor favoured him by exclamation that it indeed looked shabby. To support his statement the Mayor described that the Ruby had fallen out of his sword, his eyes were gone, and he was golden no longer. Then he commented scornfully that in fact he was little better than a beggar.
8. The Swallow cried to the Happy Prince that he was going to Egypt. Then he told the Prince that he had come to bid him good bye. The Prince however, calling by his name, lovingly pleased him to stay with him one night longer. The Swallow answered fearfully that it was winter and the chill snow soon be there.
9. I asked the accountant politely if I could see the manager. The accountant replied without smiling that I could certainly see the manger. Then I asked the man in his chamber if he was the manger. He replied affirmatively and requested me to go in and take my seat. In return I thanked him very much (for offering me the seat).
10. The father told his son that it was their duty to help the poor. The son asked him how he would like to help them. The father answered that he would like to help them not by giving alms but by giving them work. The son remarked that it was a very fine idea and asked him what they could give them in the village.
11. Natalia Begged pardon of Lomov, for interruption and told that he had said his meadows and asked him if they were theirs, Lomov told affirmatively that they belonged to him. Hearing that Natalia got annoyed and told loudly that the meadows belonged to them and not to him. Lomov denied and told firmly that they belonged to him.
12. Jayesh asked Neha how she found their new scheme of English and again asked if it was tougher. Neha replied in negative but added that only the translation from Gujarati into English was definitely beyond her capacity. Jayesh asked her what was about the prose

and poetry section. Neha exclaimed with pleasure that both the sections were very nice and added that she liked all the lessons as well as poems.

13. Vipul exclaimed to Devyani that she was wearing a very fine dress and asked her if she had bought it from there. Devyai replied in negative and added that she had bought it from Bombay. Vipul asked her how much she had paid for it. Devyani laughingly replied that she had paid only sixteen hundred rupees for it.
14. Nayana said praisingly to Vipa that dish was really delicious. She then asked her (Vipa) if she liked it. Vipa replied that she certainly liked it and asked Nayana who had prepared that for them. Nayana replied that her mother had prepared it. Vipa suggested that they should go and thank her.
15. The sales-girl asked the young man to look at the radio admiring it that it was a very beautiful piece. The young man asked her how much it. The girl replied that it was only six hundred and ninety-nine rupees. The young man told her that it was a big amount and that he could not buy it. He expressed his sorrow for having troubled her.
16. Sudha proposed to her brother that they should visit Abu next week. Sunil at once exclaimed with surprise that it was an excellent idea, and added that they would enjoy the scenery there. Sudha suggested whether they should go by bus or by train. Sunil replied that they would go neither by bus nor by train but would go by a car.
17. Maharaja asked Uncle Ken if he played tennis. Uncle Ken replied positively and told that he had played a little bit at school. Maharaja appreciated him and told him that the job was his and advised him to get ready and asked him if he had been at Cambridge. Uncle Ken replied negatively and told that he was at Oxford.
18. The stranger requested me to lend him my pen for a moment. I refused and explained that I didn't like to give my pen to anybody. The stranger asked me the reason and demanded my explanation if I thought I wouldn't get it back. I told him that his guess was right and explained that I had forgotten to take it back ad many times the borrower forgot to return.

19. The man told the girl that all that time he had been waiting to take some work from her hands. The girl asked the man what kind of work he would like. The man requested her to give him one of her pitchers and added to give him one that she could spare. The girl exclaimed to him that he really wanted pitcher and asked him if he wanted to draw water from the torrent.
20. Himali requested the salesman to show her some new fashion purses. The salesman asked her if she wanted to see foreign purses or Indian purses. Himali told him that she wanted to see both types of the purses. The salesman requested her to wait a minute.
21. Pooja asked Abhishek how he was. Abhishek replied to her that he was not well. Pooja again asked him why he was not so well and further asked him if she might know the reason. Abhishek asked her with anger if it was necessary for him to tell her everything and requested her to leave him alone.
22. Rina asked Ruchir if he was free that evening. Ruchir replied positively and asked her why she was asking him. Rina told her that she wanted to take him to a movie and she suggested him that they should go to multiplex theatre and enjoy window-shopping there. Ruchir positively told her that they should certainly go there and added that they should go at least two hours earlier.
23. Lily exclaimed with unhappiness that it was stuffy there and added that she could not stay there even for a moment. Mr.Patil told her that they would to wait there till Mr. Bhatt returned. Remembering God she remarked that she would die there. She suggested him that they should go to the garden and wait for him.
24. The young man proposed to the old lady that he should help her. The old lady thanked him and remarked with wonder that he was very kind. He told her that he considered it his duty to help her.
25. Nirmal proposed to Nikita that they should visit the science exhibition. Nikita exclaimed happily that it was a very nice suggestion, and told that they would surely go. Nirmal thanked for accepting his proposal. Nikita asked him if it was worth-visiting. Nirmal replied positively and told that it was certainly worth-visiting.

SUCH.....AS / SAME.....AS

1. Buy such apples as are sweet.
2. Is he the same person as saved your father?
3. That is the same cycle as we saw at the temple yesterday.
4. Such persons as having command over English will be selected.
5. This is not the same magazine as he wanted.
6. I want such a grammar book as increase my knowledge.
7. Mr. Patel is such a teacher as can work for ten hours a day.
8. This is the same car as we had seen in front of the mall.
9. Atul gave me the same pen as I had seen in the shop.
10. We had such a bad meal as we didn't like.
11. Hindi is such language that can be learnt easily.
12. People like such films as are amusing.
13. He is the same teacher as respected by all the students.
14. Kala sang the same song as Kavita had sung in the party.
15. You should buy such clothes as suit your personality.

REMOVE TOO

1. It is so hot that we cannot go outside.
2. These books are so expensive that students cannot buy it.
3. The king was so perfect that he could not make mistake.
4. Kavita is so tired that she cannot think anything.
5. He spoke so fast that it could not be understood.
6. The chief minister was so busy that he could not give us an appointment.
7. It becomes so dark that we cannot read easily.
8. The place was so noisy that I could not hear anything.
9. Manu earns so little that he cannot keep his family in comfort.
10. The thief ran so fast that the police could not catch him.
11. The tea is so hot that Kishan cannot drink it.
12. The bag was so heavy that Hardik could not lift it.
13. The task was so difficult that she could not solve it.
14. Kavita is so weak that she cannot come on foot.
15. The result was so bad that it could not be published.

16. The language is so difficult that it could not be understood.
17. The luggage is so heavy that Karuna cannot carry it.
18. Mishita is so young that she cannot travel alone.
19. He was so late that he could not catch the train.
20. It is so early that we cannot predict the outcome.
21. Jitendra is so simple minded that he cannot be a successful businessman.
22. He was so proud that he could not accept his mistakes.
23. The news was so bad that it could not be declared.
24. The movie was so boring that we could not see it.
25. The soup is so cold that Tina cannot drink it.

IN ORDER TO / IN ORDER THAT / WITH A VIEW TO

1. I went to his office in order to meet him.
2. She is working hard in order that she can pass.
3. Kanti did everything in order that he could get the prize.
4. I am going to London with a view to meeting my family.
5. Sunil went to the post office in order to buy some stamps.
6. I phoned Bhavin in order that I could invite him to dinner.
7. Kaushal is saving money so that he can buy a new car.
8. I bought a dictionary with a view to helping with my vocabulary.
9. Kavita waited for an hour in order to meet me.
10. My sister gave me some English lessons in order that she could earn some money.
11. Make sure that your bags are tagged so that you can identify them later.
12. Do exercise regularly in order to have excellent health.
13. I am studying very hard at the moment with a view to passing my exam next month.
14. We went to the principal with a view to proposing a picnic.
15. Be careful while driving in order that you might not meet with an accident.
16. Janakbhai saved a lot of money with a view to becoming very rich.
17. Read the Times of India in order that you can enrich your knowledge.

18. I ran fast so that I could catch the bus.
19. We must eat in order to live.
20. I switched on the television with a view to seeing a comedy program.

HARDLY.....WHEN / NO SOONER....DID / AS SOON AS

1. As soon as she read the letter, she started crying. / No sooner did she read the letter than she started crying.
2. As soon as I closed the door, someone knocked. / Hardly had I closed the door when someone knocked.
3. As soon as I closed my eyes, the phone rang. / No sooner did I close my eyes than the phone rang.
4. As soon as I solved one problem, another popped up. / Hardly had I solved one problem when another popped up.
5. No sooner did I leave my apartment than I dropped my keys. / Hardly had I left my apartment when I dropped my keys.
6. No sooner did Kavita get out from the bed than she got dressed. / Hardly had Kavita got out from the bed when she got dressed.
7. As soon as Samir reached the station, the train left. / No sooner did Samir reach the station than the train left.
8. As soon as Kanu finished reading, he fell asleep. / Hardly had Kanu finished reading when he fell asleep.
9. As soon as they won the match, the coach had a heart attack. / No sooner did they win the match than the coach had a heart attack.
10. As soon as the company launched its new product, it went bankrupt. / Hardly had the company launched its new product when it went bankrupt.
11. No sooner did I arrive home than my phone rang. / Hardly had I arrive home when my phone rang.
12. As soon as the prisoner ran out of the jail, the guard fired at him. / No sooner did the prisoner run out of the jail when the guard fired at him.
13. No sooner did we arrive at station than the announcement started. / Scarcely had we arrived at station when the announcement started.

14. As soon as Jinal finished the book, Anu came in. / No sooner did Jinal finish the book than Anu came in.
15. No sooner did the principal enter the examination hall than the students became quiet. / Hardly had the principal entered the examination hall when the students became quiet.
16. As soon as the last bell rang, the students rushed to the class. / Hardly had the last bell rung when the students rushed to the class.
17. No sooner did the students see the teacher than they entered the class. / Hardly had the students seen the teacher when the students entered the class.
18. As soon as the sun rose, the travelers started their journey. / Scarcely had the sun risen when the travelers started their journey.
19. As soon as we reached the museum, it closed for the day. / No sooner did we reach the museum than it closed for the day.
20. No sooner did I open the cage than the parrot flew away. / Scarcely had I opened the cage when the parrot flew away.
21. No sooner did the guard whistle than the train began to move. / Hardly had the guard whistled when the train began to move.
22. As soon as the cat saw the dog, it ran away. / No sooner did the cat see the dog than it ran away.
23. No sooner did the accident occur, the passengers screamed for help. / Hardly had the accident occurred when the passengers screamed for help.
24. As soon as Manish got the appointment letter, he jumped with joy. / Hardly had Manish got the appointment letter when he jumped with joy.
25. As soon as I entered the house, the light went off. / No sooner did I enter the house than the light went off.

CAUSAL VERB

- | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. made....apologize | 2. had.....check | 3. get.....to read |
| 4. make....wear | 5. have....cleaned | 6. get....checked |
| 7. made....stay | 8. have.....cleaned | 9. got....to do |
| 10. make.....wash | 11. have.....call | 12. get....cut |
| 13. get.....to come | 14. have....call | 15. got....to clean |
| 16. had....explain | 17. makes....work | 18. made....wash |
| 19. have.....bring | 20. has...got...to collect | 21. got....to go |
| 22. does...make...eat | 23. has....deliver | 24. gets...to do |
| 25. make...work | | |

CHANGE THE DEGREE

1. Very few planets in our solar system are as big as Jupiter. / Jupiter is bigger than most other planets in our solar system.
2. Very few rooms in this hotel are as clean as this room. / This room is one of the cleanest rooms in this hotel.
3. Sardar Patel was more honest than most other leaders. / Sardar Patel was one of the most honest leaders.
4. Very few states in Gujarat are as rich as Surat. / Surat is richer than most other states in Gujarat.
5. Akshay Kumar is better than most other actors. / Akshay Kumar is one of the best actors.
6. Very few students of my school are as intelligent as Sunita. / Sunita is one of the most intelligent students of my school.
7. Very few singers in the world are as good as Kavita. / Kavita is better than most other singers in the world.
8. Very few peaks in the world are as high as Mount Everest. / Mount Everest is higher than most other peaks in the world.
9. Very few members in the family are as short as I am. / I am shorter than most other members in the family.
10. Very few boys in my village are as young as Sam. / Sam is one of the youngest boys in my village.
11. Very few persons in my society are as polite as Mr. Patel. / Mr. Patel is more polite than most other persons in my society.

12. The Ganga is one of the holiest rivers in India. / The Ganga is holier than most other rivers in India.
13. Very few players in my team are as good as Kishan. / Kishan is one of the best players in my team.
14. China is one of the largest countries in the world. / China is larger than most other countries in the world.
15. Very few men in the world were as strong as Hercules. / Hercules was one of the strongest men in the world.
16. Vivekananda was one of the most famous Indian saints. / Vivekananda was more famous than most other Indian saints.
17. Very few fruits are as healthy as apples. / Apples are healthier than most other fruits.
18. Very few metals on the earth are as costly as gold. / Gold is costlier than most other metals on the earth.
19. English is one of the easiest languages. / English is easier than most other languages.
20. Very few Indian kings were as great as Ashoka. / Ashoka was greater than most other Indian kings.
21. The cow is one of the most useful animals. / The cow is more useful than most other animals.
22. Very few islands in the world are as large as Greenland. / Greenland is larger than most other islands in the world.
23. Very few persons in the world are as rich as Mukesh Ambani. / Mukesh Ambani is richer than most other persons in the world.
24. Shakespeare's dramas are one of the most popular books. / Shakespeare's dramas are more popular than most other books.
25. Very few flowers in the world are as beautiful as rose. / Rose is more beautiful than most other flowers in the world.
26. Very few countries in the world are as developing as India. / India is more developing than most other countries in the world.
27. February is one of the coldest months of the year. / February is colder than most other months of the year.
28. This dress is one of the prettiest dresses in the shop. / Very few dresses in the shop are as pretty as this dress.

29. Very few continents in the world are as big as Asia. / Asia is bigger than most other continents in the world.
30. Kangaroo is one of the fastest animals. / Kangaroo is faster than most other animals.
31. Very few things are as precious as diamonds. / Diamonds are more precious than most other things.
32. Amitabh is one of the most popular actors in India. / Very few actors in India are as popular as Amitabh.
33. Mr. Dave work more sincerely than most other persons.
34. Very few presidents of India are as great as Mr. Narendra Modi. / Mr. Narendra Modi is greater than most other presidents of India.
35. Somnath is one of the holiest temples in Gujarat. / Very few temples in Gujarat are as holy as Somnath.
36. Very few ways of selling products are as good as advertisement. / Advertisement is better than most other ways of selling products.
37. Very few poets of India were as emotional as Tagore. / Tagore is more emotional than most other poets of India.
38. Simla is one of the coolest hill stations. / Very few hill stations are as cool as Simla.
39. Africa is one of the hottest countries. / Africa is hotter than most other countries.
40. Lalbahadur Shastri was wiser than most other leaders of India. / Very few leaders of India were as wise as Lalbahadur Shastri.
41. Very few birds are as fast as eagle. / Eagle is faster than most other birds.
42. Virat Kohli is one of the most handsome cricketers. / Virat Kohli is more handsome than most other cricketers.
43. Very few birds are as small as sparrow. / Sparrow is smaller than most other birds.
44. Very few birds are as attractive as peacock. / Peacock is more attractive than most other birds.
45. Bombay is one of the most populated cities in India. / Bombay is more populated than most other cities in India.

46. Swimming is one of the most useful exercises. / Very few exercises are as useful as swimming.
47. Very few countries in the world are as advanced as Canada. / Canada is more advanced than most other countries in the world.
48. Electricity is one of the most useful facilities. / Electricity is more useful than most other facilities.
49. Bangalore is one of the costliest cities of India. / Very few cities of India are as costly as Bangalore.
50. Shreya Goshal is one of the best singers. / Shreya Ghoshal is better than most other singers.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. himself | 2. herself | 3. ourselves |
| 4. yourself | 5. myself | 6. himself |
| 7. itself | 8. herself | 9. yourselves |
| 10. themselves | 11. myself | 12. yourself |
| 13. themselves | 14. myself | 15. yourselves |
| 16. herself | 17. ourselves | 18. himself |
| 19. itself | 20. himself | |